

CORTINA METHOD

CONVERSATIONAL
FRENCH
IN 20 LESSONS

Cortina Method Books

FRENCH IN 20 LESSONS
SPANISH IN 20 LESSONS
GERMAN IN 20 LESSONS
ITALIAN IN 20 LESSONS
AMERICAN ENGLISH IN 20 LESSONS
MODERN GREEK IN 20 LESSONS
RUSSIAN IN 20 LESSONS
INGLÉS EN 20 LECCIONES
FRANCÉS EN 20 LECCIONES
INGLÊS EM 20 LIÇÕES
CONVERSATIONAL BRAZILIAN PORTUGUESE
CONVERSATIONAL JAPANESE
SPANISH CONVERSATIONAL GUIDE
SPANISH IN SPANISH
FRANÇAIS EN FRANÇAIS
ENGLISH IN ENGLISH
DEUTSCH AUF DEUTSCH
ITALIANO IN ITALIANO

CORTINA METHOD

CONVERSATIONAL FRENCH IN 20 LESSONS

ILLUSTRATED

Intended for self-study and for use in schools

With a Simplified System of Phonetic Pronunciation

By

R. DIEZ DE LA CORTINA

UNIVERSITIES OF MADRID AND BORDEAUX

AUTHOR OF THE CORTINA METHOD

ORIGINATOR OF THE PHONOGRAPHIC METHOD OF
TEACHING LANGUAGES.

and Revised by

DOUGLAS W. ALDEN

PRINCETON UNIVERSITY



An Owl Book

HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

New York

CORTINA LEARNING INTERNATIONAL, INC.

Publishers • WESTPORT, CT 06880

Copyright © 1954, 1962, 1977 by
Cortina Learning International, Inc.

All Rights Reserved

This material is fully protected under the terms of the Universal Copyright Convention. It is specifically prohibited to reproduce this publication in any form whatsoever, including sound recording, photocopying, or by use of any other electronic reproducing, transmitting or retrieval system. Violators will be prosecuted to the full extent provided by law.

Cataloging Information

Cortina Method French in 20 Lessons, illustrated, intended for self-study and for use in schools; with a new system of phonetic pronunciation to enable the student to speak correct French, by R. Diez de la Cortina and rev. by Douglas W. Alden. New York, R. D. Cortina Co., 1977.
382 p. illus. 21 cm.

1. French language—Grammar. 2. French language—
Conversation and phrase books. I. Title.
PC2111.C715 1977 448.242 55-4890
ISBN 0-8327-0003-7 (hardbound)
ISBN 0-8327-0011-8 (paperback)

Printed in the United States of America
HH Editions 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

*9405-7.5

INTRODUCTION

How a Knowledge of French Can Help You

There are many reasons why forward-looking Americans should want to know French at this time.

French is truly the “international language.” No matter where you go in the world—you can converse with cultured people if you speak French. French is the universal language of translation at the United Nations. It is the only sure means of communication in Europe, the Orient and Africa. It is the recognized medium of diplomatic intercourse. It is the mark of social polish . . . the language of etiquette in all countries.

Because it has been the “second language” of cultured people for so long a time—French has found its way into many parts of our own language. Our literature and polite conversation is often sprinkled with French expressions. French dishes are on the menus of most of our fine restaurants. French is an important part of the vocabulary in the world of fashion, art, science, theatre, opera, etc.

No trip abroad would be complete without some time spent *in the most visited of foreign countries* . . . France. And when you visit France, you will find your knowledge of the native tongue a source of unending satisfaction and pleasure. You will be able to become more intimate with the French people. You will be welcomed as a cultured friend—not merely a tourist.

6 THE CORTINA METHOD

You will be invited into French homes. Instead of finding your trip a dull procession of monument-visiting—you will have many thrilling experiences to relate when you return home. And you will find that your knowledge of French saves you money when you deal with tradespeople, hotel-keepers, ticket-sellers, and so on.

And even though you may not be planning a trip abroad at this time, you never know when you will have the opportunity. But apart from traveling, there are many other ways in which a knowledge of French can add to your happiness. You can dine in a charming restaurant and order from the elaborate menu without the slightest hesitation. Then suppose you have seats for the opera—*Thais*, *Faust*, *Manon*, or *Louise*? All these beautiful operas (whether you see them or hear them on radio, television, or recordings) become twice as enjoyable. And at home, in your easy chair, you can read French newspapers and fascinating Parisian magazines. Or you can enjoy the classics of French literature—Hugo, Moliere, de Maupassant, Balzac, etc.—*in the original French*, with all its sauce, humor and deep, human understanding. Discover these literary treasures for yourself and have *the real fun* of learning French as you do!

PREFACE

In 1882, The Cortina Academy of Languages was founded in the United States by Count Cortina. Besides engaging professors for all the modern languages (French, Spanish, German, Italian, Portuguese and English) Count Cortina himself gave language instruction for many years.

From this actual teaching experience, Professor Cortina developed a new simplified method that became an instant success. It has never been surpassed since. For the past 95 years the method has been constantly refined and improved from the Academy's long experience in teaching languages, and in terms of the changing needs of the present-day language student. It is now known all over the world as **THE CORTINA METHOD**.

Because of the success and the demand for the Cortina instruction from students who could not attend classes, The Academy was forced to publish Cortina lessons in book form. Well over two million Cortina books have been sold, and they are a clear testimonial to the ease with which students have learned a new language through **THE CORTINA METHOD**.

Many thousands of students have learned a new language by this method at home, in their spare time. Many others have used **THE CORTINA METHOD** in schools and colleges throughout the United States and South America.

You may ask: "What is the secret of THE CORTINA METHOD's success? How is it different from other ways to learn a language?" One of the main reasons is that the lessons are devoted to intensely interesting and every-day topics which encourage the student to learn. The lessons begin with subjects that we all used as children when we learned our native tongue. For instance, right from the start, the first lessons teach you the same words that a child first speaks: *Mother, father, brother, sister*, as well as every-day words relating to meals, drinks, clothing, footwear and so on. Not only are these words easily put to use at once; not only are they much more interesting than the usual abstract and academic words a student is asked to learn—but they also strike a deeply primeval chord in all of us. This adds color and excitement and arouses in the student a desire to learn the language.

Features of this New Edition

The Editors have included two new features in this edition which will also be found of great help to the student:

First, the format of the lessons has been changed to allow for carefully chosen illustrations which have been drawn by an excellent artist. The drawings have been arranged to highlight the subject matter of the lessons and thus will greatly aid the student in memorizing the foreign words through the graphic representation.

Second, a complete REFERENCE GRAMMAR has been appended at the back of the book so that the student may refer to any part of speech he wishes as he advances in his studies. The necessary grammar for the lessons is included in the footnotes, lesson by lesson, for the student's convenience.

HOW TO STUDY

Language is habit. We are constantly expressing thoughts and ideas in speech, from habit, without paying any particular attention to the words, phrases or idioms we use. When we say "How do you do," "I've had a wonderful trip," "All right, let's go," we do so spontaneously. We are merely repeating a speech pattern that we have used so many times before it has become automatic, or, a habit. Repetition, therefore, is the basis of language learning, and so it is extremely important that the student acquire a correct pronunciation at the very beginning so that he learns *the right speech habits*.

For this purpose THE CORTINA METHOD provides a *Guide to French Pronunciation* on page 19. It explains how to pronounce French sounds, words and phrases through simplified English spelling (phonetic symbols) and also how to articulate those sounds which occur only in the French language. In Lesson 1 the entire French vocabulary and conversations are transcribed in these symbols. Using them as a guide the student will be able to read the entire lesson aloud, and he should do so as many times as necessary to read the French text aloud *easily and correctly*. Through this practice, not only will the student attain fluency, but he will eventually express his *ideas* in French just as easily and effortlessly as he does in English. Should any student wish to accelerate his progress and master spoken French in the easiest possible manner, the Cortina Company has recorded the French text of this book. The vocabularies and conversations are spoken by native French instructors whose voices have been chosen for their excellence of accent, clarity of speech and pleasing tonal quality. In classroom study too, *the phonograph method of learning languages* (originated by Cortina) has been found an invaluable aid to both student and teacher for oral practice and ear training.

LESSON ARRANGEMENT. The lessons are arranged so that the student can follow them easily. For each lesson there is (a) a vocabulary of important words of a general character, (b) a specific vocabulary covering the topic of the lesson and (c) conversations showing how these vocabularies are used in everyday conversations. To the right of

10 THE CORTINA METHOD

each word or sentence is given the phonetic spelling so that the student can pronounce them correctly, and in the next column is given the English translation of the French text.

The student should start each lesson by memorizing as much of the general (active) vocabulary as possible. Then, in turning to the conversation that follows, he will complete his mastery of these words by actually using them *to express thoughts*. The CONVERSATION sentences should be read *aloud* using the pronunciation guide for this purpose, and at the same time making general reference to the translation of each sentence. *Learn the thoughts* that the French sentence conveys rather than a word for word translation. The lesson has been mastered when the student can read the lesson aloud without reference to either the PRONUNCIATION OR TRANSLATION columns.

The special arrangement of columnizing the TEXT, PRONUNCIATION and TRANSLATION is for the student's convenience in checking his own progress. This is done by merely covering the TRANSLATION with a piece of paper to test if he knows what the French words and sentences mean, and in reverse, by covering the French text and translating aloud the English words into French. It cannot be emphasized too strongly that the student should read the French *aloud*. *Speak out clearly* and don't be embarrassed by the sound of your own voice. Let a friend take part in the conversation with you. *Go to a French restaurant*—or pretend you do—*do anything* just as long as it helps you to keep *speaking* French.

The grammatical explanations in the FOOTNOTES are of great importance to the student and close attention should be paid to them. They also clear up many of the idiomatic difficulties and are very helpful because they give other illustrations of the language in actual use. For more elaborate grammatical explanation of any particular lesson the student can refer to the cross-reference table (on page 190) which precedes the *Complete Reference Grammar*.

In conclusion there is no better way to learn a language than the way children learn *by speaking it*. THE CORTINA METHOD is based upon this principle with a few modifications to adjust *this natural method* to the adult mind. The first words a child learns are those necessary to satisfy his instinctive interests and desires. What are these first words? *Mother, father*, something to eat and drink, and after that something to wear and protect the body. After these wants are satisfied he grows in stature until he gradually builds up a vocabulary and speech patterns covering every conceivable subject, but his primary wants must be satisfied first. The Cortina lessons begin exactly this way, *mother, father, eatables, clothing, footwear, etc.* With a little application you will have a lot of fun learning French this way and what a satisfaction it will be to have *this important second language* at your command.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
Introduction	5
Preface	7
How to Study	9
Guide to French Pronunciation <i>Part I</i>	19
Guide to French Pronunciation <i>Part II</i>	306
French Alphabet	23
Accents	24

VOCABULARIES AND CONVERSATIONS

FIRST LESSON *The Family • Nationalities • Languages*






Vocabularies	26
Conversation	28


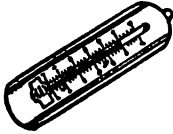



SECOND LESSON *Meals and Beverages*



Vocabularies	34
Conversation	36

12 THE CORTINA METHOD

THIRD LESSON	<i>Clothing and Footwear</i>	PAGE
	Vocabularies	42
	Conversation	44
FOURTH LESSON	<i>Traveling: By Ship, Train and Airplane</i>	
	Vocabularies	50
	Conversation	52
FIFTH LESSON	<i>Numbers • Fractions • Counting</i>	
	Vocabularies	56
	Conversation	58
SIXTH LESSON	<i>Days • Months • Seasons</i>	
	Vocabularies	62
	Conversation	64
SEVENTH LESSON	<i>Telling Time:</i>	
	<i>The Watch • The Watchmaker</i>	
	Vocabularies	68
	Conversation	70
EIGHTH LESSON	<i>About Business</i>	
	Vocabularies	76
	Conversation	78
NINTH LESSON	<i>At the Restaurant</i>	
	Vocabularies	82
	Conversation	84

TENTH LESSON	<i>The House and Furniture</i>	PAGE
	Vocabularies	88
	Conversation	90
ELEVENTH LESSON	<i>About the Weather</i>	
	Vocabularies	94
	Conversation	96
TWELFTH LESSON	<i>The Tailor • The Dressmaker • Styles</i>	
	Vocabularies	100
	Conversation	102
THIRTEENTH LESSON	<i>Visiting the City</i>	
	Vocabularies	108
	Conversation	110
FOURTEENTH LESSON	<i>A Visit to the Doctor</i>	
	Vocabularies	116
	Conversation	118
FIFTEENTH LESSON	<i>Renting a Room • Toilet Articles</i>	
	Vocabularies	122
	Conversation	124
SIXTEENTH LESSON	<i>Commercial Relations</i>	
	Vocabularies	128
	Conversation	130

14 THE CORTINA METHOD

SEVENTEENTH LESSON *Arrival at Paris*



Dialogue 134

Vocabulary 143

EIGHTEENTH LESSON *Meeting Madame Nédélec*

Dialogue 148

Vocabulary 158

NINETEENTH LESSON *Visiting Versailles*



Dialogue 162

Vocabulary 172

TWENTIETH LESSON *Dinner Conversation*



Dialogue 176

Vocabulary 186



REFERENCE GRAMMAR

	PAGE
Plan for Study	190
Analytical Table of Contents	192

THE ARTICLE

*§1 The Definite Article	197
§2 Contractions of Definite Article	197
§3 Special Uses of Definite Article	197
§4 Omission of Definite Article	199
§5 The Indefinite Article	199
§6 The Partitive Article	200
§7 Omission of Indefinite Article	201

THE NOUN

§8 Gender of Nouns	201
§9 Plural of Nouns	202

THE ADJECTIVE

§10 Agreement of the Adjective	204
§11 Position of the Adjective	206
§12 Indefinite Adjectives	207
§13 Use of the Adjective as a Substantive	208
§14 Comparison of Adjectives	209
§15 The Demonstrative Adjective	210
§16 The Possessive Adjective	210
§17 The Interrogative Adjective	211
§18 Cardinal and Ordinal Numbers. <i>See Lesson 5.</i>	

* (§) is the symbol for paragraph.

THE ADVERB

§19	Formation of the Adverb	212
§20	Comparison of the Adverb	213
§21	Position of the Adverb	213
§22	Adverbs of Quantity	215
§23	Negation	216

THE PRONOUN

§24	Personal Pronoun Subjects	221
§25	Personal Pronoun Objects	221
§26	The Disjunctive Personal Pronoun	225
§27	The Reflexive Pronoun	227
§28	The Demonstrative Pronoun	229
§29	The Impersonal Pronoun	231
§30	The Relative Pronoun	232
§31	The Interrogative Pronoun	235
§32	The Possessive Pronoun	236
§33	The Pronoun <i>tout</i>	237
§34	The Pronoun <i>on</i>	237

THE PREPOSITION

§35	The Preposition <i>à</i>	238
§36	The Preposition <i>chez</i>	239
§37	The Preposition <i>dans</i>	240
§38	The Preposition <i>de</i>	240
§39	The Preposition <i>en</i>	241
§40	Repetition of Prepositions	241
§41	Compound Prepositions	242
§42	Position of the Preposition	242

THE CONJUNCTION

§43	Coördinating Conjunctions	243
§44	Subordinating Conjunctions	243

THE VERB

§45	The Nature of the French Verb	245
§46	Transitive and Intransitive Verbs	245
§47	The Infinitive	246
§48	The Present Participle	249
§49	The Past Participle	251
§50	The Present Indicative	252
§51	The Imperfect Indicative	254
§52	The Future Tense	257
§53	The Conditional Tense	258
§54	The Preterit	260
§55	The Compound Tenses of the Indicative	261
§56	The Imperative	267
§57	The Subjunctive	268
§58	The Reflexive Verb	276
§59	The Passive Voice	278
§60	Inversion of the Verb	279
§61	Uses of the Verb <i>avoir</i>	280
§62	The Verb <i>devoir</i>	282
§63	The Verb <i>faire</i>	283
§64	The Verb <i>pouvoir</i>	283
§65	Orthographical Changing Verbs	284
§66	Irregular Verbs	286

FRENCH PRONUNCIATION

Guide to French Pronunciation <i>Part II</i>	306
--	-----

DICTIONARIES

French-English Dictionary	329
English-French Dictionary	359

GUIDE TO FRENCH PRONUNCIATION

Part I

The following discussion of French pronunciation is divided into two parts. The first describes the articulation of the sounds of the French language in terms of similar English sounds. The second part relates this information to the conventional spelling of the French language. Part II is on page 306.

GUIDE TO FRENCH SOUNDS

Although more "phonetic" than English, the French language still has a somewhat complicated spelling system. For this reason we shall indicate pronunciation by a system of simplified spelling and diacritical markings based as much as possible on the spelling of English. This Guide to Pronunciation generally follows the French word and is in parentheses.

Les Voyelles

THE VOWELS

(lay vwayèl)

In comparing French and English vowels, the basic principle to follow is that *all vowels in French are pure vowels*. Pronounce, for example, the English word *day*. It can easily be prolonged into *day-ee*, and even when the vowel is not prolonged you will realize *if you listen carefully* that the *ee* is actually present at all times. The normal English vowel is a diphthong, not a *pure vowel*. If you are to pronounce the corresponding French vowel correctly, you must strive to eliminate the second half of the diphthong; that is, you must say *day* with as short a vowel as possible and not *day-ee*. For English speaking people the problem of eliminating the diphthong arises in the case of most French vowels. How to pronounce French vowels will be described in the following pages.

In the study of phonetics (the science of human speech), it has been possible to observe scientifically the articulation of the vowels in the mouth. From these observations the following chart has been devised to show the relative position of the crest of the tongue as it moves about in the mouth. We shall study these vowels first in the order in which they occur naturally in the mouth.

Where Sounds Occur in Mouth

FRONT OF MOUTH	ee	ü	oo	BACK OF MOUTH
	ay	e^o	ô	
	è	e	o	
	a	e^o		
		â		

- ee** Similar to *ee* in *tree*. But the English vowel is not pure since it has a slight "eh" sound coming off the end. To make the French vowel pure, stretch corners of lips further back than in English.
- ay** Similar to *ay* in *day*, or better *a* in *ate*. Stretch corners of lips further back than in English; avoid saying "ay-ee."
- è** Similar to *e* in *met*. Stretch corners of lips back slightly more than in English. This is a short vowel, shorter than *ee* and *ay* in French (which themselves are shorter than their English equivalents).
- a** Between *a* in *fat* and *a* in *father*. A shorter sound than in English and not as "flat."
- â** Like *a* in *father* or exclamation *ah!* Mouth is opened maximum amount. A simple sound to produce.
- o** As in *awe* or *ou* in *ought*. A shorter vowel sound than in English. Has slight rounding of lips not present in English vowel.
- ô** As *o* in *note*. French vowel has more lip-rounding than English. A pure vowel: avoid saying *ô-oo* as in English.
- oo** As *oo* in *poop*. French vowel has more lip-rounding than English.
- ü** This vowel has no English equivalent. It is similar to *ü* in the German word *über*. The following exercise is useful in pronouncing the French sound: pronounce *oo*, then *ee*; now pronounce *ee* but round lips as though for *oo*; the result is the sound *ü*.
- e** Same as *e* in *the man*, if said normally with no stress on article. This is the easiest vowel to pronounce since it requires no force or muscular tension.
- e^o** Another vowel with no English equivalent. The following exercise will teach the articulation: Pronounce with force the vowel **e** and with the same lip-rounding as for **ô**. A second exercise will have the same result: pronounce *ay*, then **ô**; then pronounce *ay* while gradually rounding lips in the direction of **ô**; the final position will be the sound **e^o**.
- e^o** Another vowel with no English equivalent. The following exercise

will teach the articulation: pronounce e^o but open mouth wide with same opening as for o . A second exercise will have the same result: pronounce \hat{e} , then o ; now pronounce \hat{e} but round lips in direction of o ; the final position will be the sound \hat{e}^o .

Les Voyelles Nasales

THE NASAL VOWELS

(lay vwayèl nazal)

Nasal vowels are vowels which have absorbed the nasal vibrations of an adjacent m or n when these consonants follow the vowel and are in the same syllable. Only four vowels in French are nasalized. To nasalize a vowel pronounce it through the nose. If you have difficulty doing this, squeeze the bridge of the nose slightly as you pronounce the simple vowel from which the nasal is derived.

\hat{a}^n No English equivalent. Pronounce vowel \hat{a} through nose.

\hat{o}^n No English equivalent. Pronounce vowel \hat{o} through nose. Note that \hat{o}^n has more lip-rounding than \hat{a}^n .

\hat{e}^n No English equivalent. Pronounce vowel \hat{e} through nose.

e^n No English equivalent. Pronounce vowel e^o through nose.

Les Demi-Voyelles

THE SEMI-VOWELS

(lay d'mee vwayèl)

Certain vowels lose their full force when they precede another vowel in the same syllable. These vowels then become semi-vowels which are really a type of consonant.

y Same as y in yes.

w Same as w in wet.

ü No English equivalent. Pronounce \ddot{u} rapidly in combination with another vowel as, for example: $\ddot{u}ee$. The sound may also be described as a w with greater compression of lips.

Les Consonnes

THE CONSONANTS

(lay kôn'son)

b Like English. Press lips tighter together and release more explosively in order to eliminate aspiration (the "huh" sound) of English.

22 THE CORTINA METHOD

- d** Like English. Bring tip of tongue further down towards base of teeth.
- f** Same as English.
- g** Same as *g* in *guide* or *get*.
- k** Same as *k* in *keen* or *c* in *cat*.
- l** A more distinct sound in French. It is same as *l* in *low*, but it is not the *l* in English *bill*.
- m** Same as English.
- n** Same as English.
- ny** French phoneticians consider this to be a single sound. It is same as Spanish *ñ* or *ny* in the English *canyon* which is borrowed from the Spanish.
- p** Like English. Press lips tighter together and release more explosively in order to eliminate aspiration of English.
- r** This sound is only remotely like English *r*. It is a gargling sound made by causing the uvula, an appendage in the back of the throat, to vibrate.
- s** Same as *s* in *soap* or *c* in *city*.
- sh** As in English, this is in reality a simple consonant sound. Same as *sh* in *ship*, or *ch* in *machine*.
- t** Like English. Bring tip of tongue lower down towards base of teeth.
- v** Same as English.
- z** Same as *z* in *zipper* or *s* in *rose*.
- zh** This diacritical spelling has been adopted to designate the simple consonant sound which is present in *z* of English *azure*. This sound can also be derived by vocalizing *sh*.
-

Part II of *Guide to French Pronunciation* appears in the Appendix (page 306) and it relates French sounds to *conventional (normal) French spelling*.

ORTHOGRAPHE NORMALE

NORMAL SPELLING

(ortograf normal)

Alphabet Français

FRENCH ALPHABET

(alfabè frânsè)

The following are the letters, capital and small, of the French alphabet, with their French names and their pronunciation according to the diacritical system described on preceding pages:

<i>Lettres Majuscules</i> (lètr ^e mazhüskül) Capital Letters	<i>Lettres Minuscules</i> (lètr ^e meenüskül) Small Letters	<i>Prononciation</i> (pronô ⁿ syasyô ⁿ) Pronunciation
A	a	â
B	b	bay
C	c	say
D	d	day
E	e	e ^o , ay
F	f	èf
G	g	zhay
H	h	ash
I	i	ee
J	j	zhee
K	k	ka
L	l	èl
M	m	èm
N	n	èn
O	o	ô
P	p	pay
Q	q	kū
R	r	èr
S	s	ès
T	t	tay
U	u	ū
V	v	vay
W	w	doobl ^e vay
X	x	eeks
Y	y	eegrèk
Z	z	zèd

ACCENTS FRANÇAIS

The accents in French are: the acute accent (*l'accent aigu*) (´), the grave accent (*l'accent grave*) (`) and the circumflex accent (*l'accent circonflexe*) (^).

L'ACCENT AIGU (´)

Is used only on the *e* and gives it a short, acute sound, as indicated by its name. The use of this accent cannot be defined by any particular rule.

L'ACCENT GRAVE (`)

1. It is used on the *a* and *u* in order to make the distinction between words which are spelled in the same way though having widely different meanings, as for instance:

a (a) (he) has **à** (a) to or at **ça** (sa) that **çà** (sa) here
la (la) the (fem.) **là** (la) there **ou** (oo) or **où** (oo) where

2. It is used on the *e* of a penultimate syllable whenever immediately followed by a final combination of letters the first of which is a consonant and the second a silent *e*, as in:

père (pèr) father **frère** (frèr) brother

3. Also in adverbs and substantives the singular of which ends in *es*; e. g.:

progrès (progrè) progress **après** (aprè) after

L'ACCENT CIRCONFLEXE (^)

This accent is always applied whenever a prolonged open and marked sound is to be given to a vowel. It is used:

1. As a substitute for a letter which may have been eliminated from a form of the word now obsolete, as in:

tête (tèt) head, instead of **teste** (obsolete)

2. Also to determine the difference of meaning between two words spelled in the same way:

du (dü) of the (masc.)

sur (sür) upon

dû (dü) owed

sûr (sür) sure

3. And lastly, in the first and second persons plural of the preterit of all verbs and in the third person singular of the imperfect tense in the subjunctive mood:

nous finîmes (*noo feeneem*) we finished

vous finîtes (*voo feeneet*) you finished

qu'il parlât (*keel parlâ*) that he should speak





PREMIÈRE LEÇON

First Lesson

NOUVEAU VOCABULAIRE POUR CETTE LEÇON

(Noovô vocabulêr poor sèt l^esôⁿ) • New Vocabulary for this Lesson

je désire ¹ (zh ^e dayzeer)	I desire, I wish
désirez-vous (dayzeeray voo)	do you wish? do you want?
il désire (eel dayzeer)	he wishes; he wants
beaucoup ² (bôkoo)	much, very much
parfaitement (parfêtmâ ⁿ)	perfectly
une automobile ³ (ünôtomobeel)	an automobile
à quelle heure (a kèlè ⁰ r)	at what time
un avion (e ⁿ navyô ⁿ)	an airplane
un voyage (e ⁿ vwayazh)	a trip
un ⁴ bateau (e ⁿ batô)	a boat
demain (d ^e mè ⁿ)	tomorrow
seul (sè ⁰ l)	alone
avec (avèk)	with
un peu , adv. (e ⁿ pe ⁰)	a little
prenez-vous (pr ^e nay voo)	do you take
je prends (zh ^e prâ ⁿ)	I take
le ⁵ train (l ^e trè ⁿ)	the train
partir (parteer)	to leave
bientôt ⁶ (byè ⁿ tô)	soon
seulement (sè ⁰ lmâ ⁿ)	only

les affaires ⁷ (<i>layzafer</i>)	business
intéressant (<i>èⁿtayrèsâⁿ</i>)	interesting
monsieur ⁸ (<i>m^esye^o</i>)	mister, sir
un Français (<i>frâⁿsè</i>)	a Frenchman
mais (<i>mè</i>)	but
aussi (<i>ôsee</i>)	also
très (<i>trè</i>)	very
bien (<i>byèⁿ</i>)	well
le parler (<i>l^e parlay</i>)	to speak it
pourquoi (<i>poorkwa</i>)	why
parce que (<i>parsk^e</i>)	because
ou (<i>oo</i>); où (<i>oo</i>)	or; where
apprendre (<i>aprâⁿdr</i>)	to learn
habiter (<i>abeetay</i>)	to live, to dwell
mon , masc. (<i>môⁿ</i>)	my
ma , fem. (<i>ma</i>)	my
votre (<i>vo^{tr}</i>)	your
aller (<i>alay</i>)	to go
le matin (<i>l^e matèⁿ</i>)	the morning
qui (<i>kee</i>); que (<i>k^e</i>)	who; what

THE CORTINA METHOD

LA FAMILLE

(la fameey) • The Family

l'homme ⁹ (lom)	the man
le mari (maree)	husband
la femme ¹⁰ (fam)	woman, wife
les parents (parâ ⁿ)	parents, relatives
la mère (mèr)	mother
le père (pèr)	father
le fils (fees)	son
la fille (feey)	daughter
le frère (frèr)	the brother
la soeur (sè ⁰ r)	sister
l'oncle (lô ⁿ kl)	uncle
la tante (tâ ⁿ t)	aunt
le cousin (koozè ⁿ)	cousin (m.)
la cousine (koozeen)	cousin (f.)
le beau-frère (bôfrèr)	brother-in-law
la belle-soeur (bèlse ⁰ r)	sister-in-law
un ¹¹ enfant (e ⁿ nâ ⁿ fâ ⁿ)	a child (m.)

un garçon (garsô ⁿ)	boy
une enfant (ünâ ⁿ fâ ⁿ)	child (f.)
une jeune¹² fille (zhè ^o n feey)	girl
une petite fille (p ^e tet feey)	little girl

LES NATIONALITÉS ET LES LANGUES

(lay nâsyonaleetay ay lay lâⁿg) • The Nationalities and the Languages

un Italien (eetalyè ⁿ)	an Italian
un Anglais (â ⁿ glè)	an Englishman
un Russe (rüis)	a Russian
un Espagnol (èspanyol)	a Spaniard
un Suisse (süees)	a Swiss
un Belge (bèlzh)	a Belgian
un Américain¹³ (amayreekè ⁿ)	an American (masc.)
une Américaine (amayreekèn)	an American (fem.)
le français (frâ ⁿ sè)	the French language
l'anglais (lâ ⁿ glè)	the English language

FOOTNOTES: 1. The INFINITIVE of this verb is *désirer*, a regular verb of the "first" -er conjugation. The French verb is more complicated than the English verb. The verb endings to express present time correspond to the subjects as

CONVERSATION

1 Je désire . . .

2 Que désirez-vous,¹⁴ monsieur?

3 Je désire parler¹⁵ français.

4 Qui désire parler français?

5 Il désire parler français.



6 Désirez-vous parler la langue anglaise?

7 Oui, monsieur, je désire la¹⁶ parler.

8 Parlez-vous espagnol?

9 Je parle français et espagnol aussi.

10 Désirez-vous me¹⁷ parler en français?

11 Je désire beaucoup vous parler,
mais je ne parle pas¹⁸ très bien¹⁹
le²⁰ français.

12 Parlez-vous anglais parfaitement?

13 Non, monsieur, je le parle seule-
ment un peu.

14 Pourquoi désirez-vous apprendre le français?

15 Parce que²¹ je désire habiter en France.²²

follows: *je* (I) *désire*; *tu* (thou) *désires*; *il* (he, it), *elle* (she, it) *désire*; *nous* (we) *désirons*; *vous* (you) *désirez*; *ils* (they, masc.), *elles* (they, fem.) *désirent*. Note that there is only one *present* tense in French, *je désire*, etc., whereas we say, "I wish," "I am wishing," "I do wish," etc. 2. *Beaucoup* means *much* or *very much*. Never place the word *très* (very) before it. 3. Also pronounced *otomobee*. 4. The INDEFINITE ARTICLE is also an adjective and has the form *un* (masc.), *une* (fem.), *des* (masc. and fem. plural). 5. NOUNS in French are either masculine or feminine; there is no neuter. ADJECTIVES agree with their nouns in number and gender, that is to say, the form of the adjective varies according to the noun modified. For example, the ARTICLE *the* is an adjective and takes the forms *le* (masc.), *la* (fem.), or *les* (masc. and fem.

PRONUNCIATION	TRANSLATION
1 <i>zh^e day-zeer . . .</i>	I wish . . .
2 <i>k^e day-zee-ray voo, m^e-sy^e°?</i>	What do you wish (<i>literally</i> what wish you), sir?
3 <i>zh^e day-zeer par-lay frâⁿ-sè.</i>	I wish to speak French.
4 <i>kee day-zeer par-lay frâⁿ-sè?</i>	Who wishes to speak French?
5 <i>eel day-zeer par-lay frâⁿ-sè.</i>	He wishes to speak French.
6 <i>day-zee-ray voo par-lay la lâⁿg âⁿ-glèz?</i>	Do you wish (<i>lit.</i> wish you) to speak the English language?
7 <i>wee, m^e-sy^e°, zh^e day-zeer la par-lay.</i>	Yes, sir, I want to speak it.
8 <i>par-lay voo(z) ès-pa-nyol?</i>	Do you speak Spanish?
9 <i>zh^e parl frâⁿ-sè ay ès-pa-nyol ô-see.</i>	I speak French and Spanish also.
10 <i>day-zee-ray voo m^e par-lay âⁿ frâⁿ-sè?</i>	Do you wish to speak to me in French?
11 <i>zh^e day-zeer bô-koo voo par-lay, mè zh^e n^e parl pâ trè byèⁿ l^e frâⁿ-sè.</i>	I want very much to speak French to you but I do not speak French very well.
12 <i>par-lay voo âⁿglè par-fèt-mâⁿ?</i>	Do you speak English perfectly?
13 <i>nôⁿ, m^e-sy^e°, zh^e l^e parl sè^ol-mâⁿ eⁿ pe^o.</i>	No, sir, I speak it only a little.
14 <i>poor-kwa day-zee-ray voo(z) a-prâⁿ-dr^e l^e frâⁿ-sè?</i>	Why do you wish to learn (<i>lit.</i> the) French?
15 <i>pars-k^e zh^e day-zeer a-bee-tay âⁿ frâⁿs.</i>	Because I wish to live in France.

plural) to agree with the noun modified. 6. This is actually two words, *bien* and *tôt*; therefore *en* keeps pronunciation it had before being combined and does not become *âⁿ*. 7. Note that *business* in French is plural. 8. Note unusual pronunciation of first syllable. 9. Observe elision of article *le* which becomes *l'* before vowel or *h* mute. Examples: *l'enfant, l'homme, l'heure*. 10. Note unusual pronunciation. 11. Normally the pronunciation of an "n" in linking after a nasal vowel destroys nasalization; monosyllables *un, en, and on* are exceptions. 12. The word *fille*, when used to mean *girl* instead of *daughter*, must be modified either by *jeune* (young) or *petite* (little). 13. As a true adjective the adjective of nationality is not capitalized. However, when used as a noun to designate a person of that nationality, it is capitalized. In the masculine the adjective of nationality is also used as a noun to designate the language of that nationality; in

16 Est-ce que²³ votre²⁴ famille habite aux²⁵ États-Unis?

17 Non, monsieur, ma famille habite au²⁵ Canada.

18 Où est-ce que²³ votre sœur habite?

19 Ma sœur et mon frère habitent²⁶ en Belgique.

20 Est-ce que votre femme est française?²⁷

21 Non, monsieur, ma femme est américaine.²⁷

22 Est-ce que votre fils est français?

23 Oui, monsieur, mon fils est français.

24 Qui est italien?

25 Mon cousin est italien.

26 Est-ce qu'il désire aller en Italie?

27 Non, il désire aller en Suisse.

28 Prenez-vous le train pour²⁸ aller en France?

29 Non, pour aller en France, je prends²⁹ un bateau ou un avion.

30 Est-ce que votre père désire faire³⁰ un voyage en automobile?



31 Oui, monsieur, le voyage en automobile est très intéressant.

that case it is not capitalized. 14. Note that with pronoun subjects other than *je* interrogative order is simple: the pronoun subject is placed after the verb and joined by a hyphen. 15. *Parler* means *to speak*. No preposition is used after many verbs (example: *désirer*) to introduce a dependent infinitive; some verbs require *à* or *de* in sense of *to*. 16. Most PRONOUN OBJECTS go before the verb of which they are the object. Third person pronoun objects have same form as definite article (see note 5 above). 17. Another pronoun object before verb; *me* means "me" or "to me." 18. A verb is made negative in French by placing *ne* directly in front of the verb and *pas* after it. 19. Normal place for ADVERBS is after the verb. Note literal translation. 20. Up to sentence 11 notice that the article is omitted before the name of the language. The article is *always used in*

- 16 ès-k^e vo-tr^e fa-meey a-beet ô-zay-ta-zü-nee? Does your family live in (*lit. is it that your family lives to*) the United States?
- 17 nôⁿ, m^e-sye^o, ma fa-meey a-beet ô ka-na-da. No, sir, my family lives in (*lit. to the*) Canada.
- 18 oo ès-k^e vo-tr^e sè^or a-beet? Where does your sister live (*lit. where is it that your sister lives*)?
- 19 ma sè^or ay môⁿ frèr a-beet âⁿ bèl-zheek. My sister and my brother live in Belgium.
- 20 ès-k^e vo-tr^e fam è frâⁿ-sèz? Is your wife French?
- 21 nôⁿ, m^esye^o, ma fam è-ta-may-ree-kèn. No, sir, my wife is American.
- 22 ès-k^e vo-tr^e fees è frâⁿ-sè? Is your son French?
- 23 wee, m^esye^o, môⁿ fees è frâⁿ-sè. Yes, sir, my son is French.
- 24 kee è-tee-ta-lyèⁿ? Who is Italian?
- 25 môⁿ koo-zèⁿ è-tee-ta-lyèⁿ. My cousin is Italian.
- 26 ès-keel day-zeer a-lay âⁿ-nee-ta-lee. Does he want to go to Italy?
- 27 nôⁿ, eel day-zeer a-lay âⁿ süees. No, he wants to go to Switzerland.
- 28 pr^e-nay voo l^e trèn poor a-lay âⁿ frâⁿs? Do you take the train to (*lit. in order to*) go to France?
- 29 nôⁿ, poor a-lay âⁿ frâⁿs, zh^e prâⁿ eⁿ batô oo eⁿ-na-vyôⁿ. No, to go to France, I take a boat or an airplane.
- 30 ès-k^e vo-tr^e pèr day-zeer fèr eⁿ vwa-yazh âⁿ-nô-to-mo-beel? Does your father want to take an automobile trip (*lit. in automobile*)?
- 31 wee, m^esye^o, l^e vwa-yazh âⁿ-nô-to-mo-beel è trè-zèⁿ-tay-rè-sâⁿ. Yes, sir, the trip by automobile is very interesting.

French with the name of the language (contrary to English use) *except* when the name of the language is preceded by the preposition *en*. After the verb *parler* the use of the article is optional; generally it is omitted. 21. Note that CONJUNCTION *parce que* (because) is in two parts. 22. Countries ending in *e* are feminine. As in the case of languages, you expect to use the article before the name of the country. But with feminine countries the word for "in" is *en* after which the article is omitted. 23. The simplest way of formulating a question is to place *est-ce que* (is it that) before normal declarative word order. If the sentence already contains an interrogative word, place *est-ce que* in same position that *is it that* would occupy if the English sentence were reorganized. 24. This is a POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE, agreeing with its noun; some of its forms are *mon*

32 Quand est-ce que le train part?³¹

33 Le train part le³² matin.

34 Pourquoi désirez-vous aller en³³ Angleterre?

35 Je désire y³⁴ aller pour affaires.

36 Quand est-ce que votre mère part?

37 Ma mère désire partir bientôt.

38 Désirez-vous y aller seul?

39 Non, je désire y aller avec ma famille.

40 Pourquoi voulez-vous aller avec votre famille?



41 Parce que je ne désire pas voyager seul.

42 Mon oncle habite en Angleterre.

43 Est-il anglais?

44 Non, monsieur, il est espagnol.

45 Ma tante est russe.

46 Est-ce qu'elle parle la langue russe.

47 Oui, elle la parle. Parlez-vous la langue russe?

48 Non, monsieur, mais elle est très intéressante.

49 Je désire apprendre l'anglais.

(my, masc.); *ma* (my, fem.); *mes* (my, masc. and fem. pl.); *votre* (your, masc. and fem. sing.); *vos* (your, masc. and fem. pl.). 25. Contraction of *à + les* = *aux* and *à + le* = *au*. With masculine countries the preposition *à* (normally meaning *at*) is used in sense of *in* and article remains. 26. As a verb ending *-ent* is unpronounced. 27. Adjectives form their feminine by the addition of an *e* to the masculine singular. 28. If *to* can be replaced by *in order to* without changing sense of English, use *pour* (*lit.* for) with the infinitive. 29. The infinitive of this verb is *prendre*, the ending *-re* being the sign of the *third* conjugation. But it is an *irregular* verb of this conjugation; that is, it does not always follow the normal pattern of such verbs. *Prendre* is conjugated in the following manner in the present tense: *je prends, tu prends, il prend, nous prenons, vous*

- 32 *kâⁿt ès-k^e l^e trèⁿ par?* When does the train leave?
 33 *l^e trèⁿ par l^e ma-tèⁿ.* The train leaves (in) the morning.
- 34 *poor-kwa day-zee-ray voo(z) a-lay âⁿ-nâⁿ-gl^e-tèr?* Why do you wish to go to England?
 35 *zh^e day-zeer ee a-lay poor a-fèr.* I wish to go there for business.
- 36 *kâⁿ-tès-k^e vo-tr^e mèr par?* When is your mother leaving?
 37 *ma mèr day-zeer par-teer byèⁿ-tô.* My mother wishes to leave soon.
- 38 *day-zee-ray voo ee a-lay sè^ol.* Do you wish to go there alone?
 39 *nôⁿ, zh^e day-zeer ee a-lay a-vèk ma fa-meey.* No, I wish to go there with my family.
- 40 *poor-kwa voo-lay-voò-za-lay a-vek vo-tr^e fa-meey?* Why do you wish to go with your family?
- 41 *pars^e-k^e zh^e n^e day-zeer pâ vwa-ya-zhay sè^ol.* Because I do not wish to travel alone.
 42 *mo-nôⁿ-kl a-beet âⁿ-nâⁿ-gl^e-tèr.* My uncle lives in England.
 43 *èt-eel âⁿ-gl^e?* Is he English?
 44 *nôⁿ, m^esye^o, eel èt ès-pa-nyol.* No, sir, he is Spanish.
 45 *ma tâⁿt è rüs.* My aunt is Russian.
- 46 *ès-kèl parl la lâⁿg rüs?* Does she speak the Russian language?
 47 *wee, èl la parl. par-lay voo la lâⁿg rüs?* Yes, she speaks it. Do you speak the Russian language?
 48 *nôⁿ, m^esye^o, mèz-èl è trèz èⁿ-tay-rò-sâⁿt.* No, sir, but it is very interesting.
 49 *zh^e day-zeer a-prâⁿdr^e lâⁿ-glè.* I wish to learn English.

prenez, ils prennent. The endings are the same as for a regular verb of the third conjugation, but it is obvious that the stem changes. Compare this with the regular verb *vendre* which is conjugated as follows in the present tense: je vends, tu vends, il vend, nous vendons, vous vendez, ils vendent. 30. Another irregular *-re* verb (3rd conj.). 31. An irregular verb of *-ir* (2nd conjugation). 32. With days of the week or parts of the day no word is used for "in": *le matin*, "the morning" or "in the morning." 33. With feminine countries *en* not only means *in* but also *into* or *to*. 34. This is called an ADVERBIAL PRONOUN because of its various functions. It is most often translated by English "there." Note that, like pronoun objects *le* and *me*, it also precedes verb.



DEUXIÈME LEÇON

Second Lesson

NOUVEAU VOCABULAIRE POUR CETTE LEÇON

(Noovô vocabülèr poor sèt l^esôⁿ) • New Vocabulary for this Lesson

la salle à manger ¹ (sal a mâ ⁿ zhay)	the dining room
de bonne heure ² (d ^e bon è ^o r)	early
généralement (zhaynayralmâ ⁿ)	ordinarily
accompagner (akô ⁿ panyay)	to accompany
il y a (eelya)	there is, there are
par contre ³ (par kô ⁿ tr)	on the other hand
merci (mèrsee)	thanks, thank you
je suis désolé (zh ^e süee dayzolay)	I am sorry
voulez-vous (voolay voo)	will you, do you want
je dois (zh ^e dwa)	I must, I have to
tard (tar)	late
le théâtre (tayâtr)	the theater
je bois ⁴ (zh ^e bwa)	I drink
manger (mâ ⁿ zhay)	to eat
le verre (vèr)	the glass
la rue (rü)	the street
vendre (vâ ⁿ dr)	to sell
le chapeau (shapô)	the hat
plus (plü)	more

aimer (èmay)	to like, to love
avant (avâ ⁿ)	before
après (aprè)	after
maintenant (mè ⁿ tnâ ⁿ)	now
offrir (ofreer)	to offer
préférer (prayfayray)	to prefer
tendre (tâ ⁿ dr)	tender
assez (asay)	enough
sucré (sükray)	sweet
amer ⁵ (amèr)	bitter
la tasse (tâs ⁶)	the cup
le goût (go)	the taste
acheter (ashtay)	to buy
bon , masc. (bô ⁿ)	good
bonne , fem. (bon)	good
au lieu ⁷ de (ô lye ^o d ^e)	instead of
d'abord (dabor)	at first
je peux (zh ^e pe ^o)	I can, I may
le prix (pree)	the price

THE CORTINA METHOD

LA NOURRITURE ET LES REPAS

(la nooretür ay lay r^epâ) • Food and Meals

le bœuf ⁸ (bè ⁰ f)	the ox, beef
le pain (pè ⁿ)	bread
le petit pain ⁹	roll
le dessert (day ^s èr) ¹⁰	dessert
un fruit ¹¹ (früee)	a fruit
le petit déjeuner ¹²	breakfast
le déjeuner (dayzhè ⁰ nay)	lunch
le souper (soopay)	supper
le repas (r ^e pâ)	meal
le poulet (poolè)	chicken
le veau (vô)	the veal
la viande (vyâ ⁿ d)	meat
l'agneau (lanyô)	lamb
le mouton (mootô ⁿ)	sheep, mutton
la côtelette (kôtlèt)	chop
le jambon (zhâ ⁿ bô ⁿ)	ham
le porc (por)	pork
le petit lard (p ^e tee lar)	bacon
le rôti (rôtee)	roast
rôti	roasted
un oeuf (à la coque) ¹³ (è ⁰ f a la kok)	an egg (soft-boiled)

la poule au riz (pool ô ree)	chicken fricassee
à des prix raisonnables (a day pree rëzonabl)	reasonably priced
de très bonne qualité (d ^e trè bon kaleetay)	of very good quality
le potage (potazh)	the soup
le dîner (deenay)	dinner
le beurre (bê ^o r)	butter
les légumes (laygüm)	vegetables
le poisson (pwasô ⁿ)	fish
le gâteau (gâtô)	cake
frit (free)	fried
bien cuit (byè ⁿ küee)	well cooked
dur (dür)	tough
la tarte (tart)	the pie
le fromage (fromazh)	cheese
l'eau , fem. (lô)	water
le café (kafay)	coffee
le thé (tay)	tea
le vin (vè ⁿ)	wine
le chocolat (shokola)	chocolate
le lait (lè)	milk
la confiture (kô ⁿ feetür)	jam

FOOTNOTES: 1. Lit. *the hall for eating*. 2. Idiom. (An *idiom* is an expression which is unique and to which the general rules of grammar do not apply.)

CONVERSATION

1 Je prends mon petit déjeuner.



2 A quelle heure prenez-vous votre petit déjeuner?

3 Je le prends de bonne heure.

4 En¹⁴ quoi¹⁵ consiste¹⁶ votre petit déjeuner généralement?

5 Mon petit déjeuner consiste généralement en une tasse de café au¹⁷ lait ou de chocolat, et un petit pain avec de la¹⁸ confiture.

6 Allons¹⁹ dans²⁰ la salle à manger.

7 Désirez-vous manger maintenant ou avant de²¹ partir?²²

8 Je préfère²³ manger plus²⁴ tard.

9 Que prenez-vous pour dîner?²⁵

10 Généralement, le mardi,²⁶ je prends deux côtelettes de veau bien cuites.

11 Pour le déjeuner je préfère un œuf à la coque et du²⁷ jambon avec de la salade.

12 Est-ce que vous n'aimez pas le²⁸ porc?

Generally an idiom makes little or no sense when translated literally). 3. Idiom: *Contre* means *against*. 4. From irregular verb *boire*. 5. Note that final consonant "r" is pronounced. 6. Note that "a" is long. 7. Lit. *in place of*. 8. Both *bœuf* and *œuf* pronounce the "f" in the singular but not in the plural. 9. Lit. *the little bread*. 10. Note unusual pronunciation of first syllable. 11. Collectively *the fruit* in French is plural: *les fruits*. 12. *Déjeuner* means *to break fast*, but, since the noon meal also bears this name, the first meal of the day is called *the little breakfast*. 13. Lit. *in the shell*. 14. Idiom: *consister en*, to consist of (lit. *in*). 15. After prepositions a special form of the pronoun is required called the DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUN. The word *what* as an interrogative pronoun, direct object, is *que*, but after a preposition, it becomes *quoi*.

PRONUNCIATION	TRANSLATION
1 <i>zh^e prâⁿ môⁿ p^(e)tee dayzhè^o. nay.</i>	I take my breakfast.
2 <i>a kèl è^or pr^enay voo votr^e ptee dayzhè^onay?</i>	At what time do you take your breakfast?
3 <i>zh^e l^e prâⁿ d^e bonè^or.</i>	I take it early.
4 <i>âⁿ kwa kôⁿseest votr^e ptee dayzhè^onay zhaynayralmâⁿ?</i>	Of (<i>lit.</i> in) what does your break- fast consist (<i>lit.</i> of what consists your breakfast) generally?
5 <i>môⁿ ptee dayzhè^onay kôⁿseest zhaynayralmâⁿ âⁿnün tâs d^e kafay ô lè oo d^e shokola ay eⁿ ptee pèⁿ avèk d^e la kôⁿfeetür.</i>	My breakfast consists generally of a cup of coffee with milk, or chocolate and a roll with jelly (<i>lit.</i> , some chocolate . . . some jelly).
6 <i>alôⁿ dâⁿ la sal a mâⁿzhay.</i>	Let us go into the dining-room.
7 <i>dayzeeray voo mâⁿzhay mèⁿt- nâⁿ oo avâⁿ d^e parteer?</i>	Do you want to eat now or before leaving?
8 <i>zh^e prayfèr mâⁿzhay plü tar.</i>	I prefer to eat later (<i>lit.</i> more late).
9 <i>k^e pr^enay voo poor deenay?</i>	What do you take for dinner?
10 <i>zhaynayralmâⁿ, l^e mardee, zh^e prâⁿ dè^o kôtlèt d^e vô byèⁿ küet.</i>	Ordinarily, on Tuesdays, I take two veal chops well done (<i>lit.</i> cooked).
11 <i>poor l^e dayzhè^onay zh^e prayfèr eⁿnè^of a la kok ay dü zhâⁿbôⁿ avèk d^e la salad.</i>	For lunch (<i>lit.</i> the lunch) I prefer a soft-boiled egg (<i>lit.</i> an egg in the shell) and ham with salad (<i>lit.</i> some ham . . . some salad).
12 <i>èsk^e voo nèmay pâ l^e por?</i>	Don't you like (<i>lit.</i> is it that you do not like) pork (<i>lit.</i> the pork).

16. After certain interrogative words such as *quoi* or *où* (where), inversion may occur even with a noun subject. Compare with lesson 1, footnote 23. 17. The ingredients of which a food is made are generally put in a phrase beginning with "à." 18. The PARTITIVE CONSTRUCTION or PARTITIVE ARTICLE *du* (m.), *de la* (f.), *des* (m. and f. plural), meaning *some*. Frequently English does not use the word *some* where the French requires it. If, starting with the English, the noun is not modified by a definite or an indefinite article, try to insert the word *some*; if it fits in English, the French requires the *partitive construction*. The partitive consists of *de* + *definite article* (*le, la, les*). In some cases it will also help to consider the partitive as the *plural of the indefinite article*. If the sentence reads: *Frenchmen are men*, test this by reducing it to a singular: *The Frenchman is a*

13 Oui, monsieur, mais je préfère le²⁸ mouton.

14 Est-ce que je peux²⁰ vous offrir du poulet rôti? Ce⁸⁰ poulet est très tendre.

15 Merci, mais je prendrai³¹ d'abord du potage au lieu de hors-d'œuvre.



16 Ce rôti de bœuf n'est pas très tendre.

17 Par contre le poisson est délicieux.

18 Que désirez-vous pour dîner?

19 De la viande, de la salade, du pain et du beurre.

20 Et ensuite?

21 Ensuite je prendrai du dessert.

22 Que préférez-vous comme dessert, du fromage, des fruits ou des gâteaux?³²

23 Je préfère du fromage avec du pain.

24 Désirez-vous du thé?

25 Non, je préfère prendre du café après le repas.

26 Prenez-vous du vin avec vos repas?

27 Généralement je bois un verre de vin et un verre d'eau.

man. It is clear that the second half of the sentence requires an indefinite article in the singular; hence it also requires one in the plural. Example: *Les Français sont des hommes.* 19. IMPERATIVE form of the verb. The imperative *Go!* in French is *allez*, with the same personal ending as would be necessary if the unexpressed subject *vous* actually were expressed. The French also has a FIRST PERSON PLURAL IMPERATIVE *allons* corresponding to *nous* which must be translated *let us go.* 20. This is the common word for *in* or *into.* *En* is used only in special cases: for example, before feminine countries and before languages. 21. When *avant* is used before an infinitive it requires *de* also. 22. After a preposition (other than *en*), the INFINITIVE form of the verb is required, not the present participle as in English. Examples: *avant de prendre*, before taking; *pour manger*, in order to eat. 23. Note change from "é" to "è" whenever the verb

- 13 *wee, m^esye^o, mè zh^e prayfèr l^e mootôⁿ.* Yes, sir, but I prefer mutton (*lit.* the mutton).
- 14 *èsk^e zh^e pe^o voozofreer dü poolè rôtee? s^e poolè è trè tâⁿdr.* May I offer you (*lit.* is it that I am able to offer to you) some roast chicken? This chicken is very tender.
- 15 *mèrsee, mè zh^e prâⁿdray dabor dü potazh ô lye^o d^e ordè^ovr.* Thank you (*lit.* thanks), but I shall take some soup first instead of (*lit.* in the place of) hors d'oeuvre.
- 16 *s^e rôtee d^e bè^of nè pâ trè tâⁿdr.* This roast beef (*lit.* roast of beef) is not very tender.
- 17 *par kôⁿtr l^e pwasôⁿ è daylee-sye^o.* On the other hand the fish is delicious.
- 18 *k^e dayzeeray voo poor deenay?* What do you want for dinner?
- 19 *d^e la vyâⁿd, d^e la salad, dü peⁿ ay dü bè^or.* Meat, salad, bread, and butter (*lit.* some meat, some salad . . . etc.).
- 20 *ay âⁿsüeet?* What next?
- 21 *âⁿsüeet zh^e prâⁿdray dü daysèr.* Next I will take some dessert.
- 22 *k^e prayfayray voo kom daysèr, dü fromazh, day früee, oo day gâtô?* What do you prefer for (*lit.* as) dessert, some cheese, some fruit (*lit.* some fruits) or some cakes?
- 23 *zh^e prayfèr dü fromazh avèk dü pèⁿ.* I prefer some cheese with bread.
- 24 *dayzeeray voo dü tay?* Do you want some tea?
- 25 *nôⁿ, zh^e prayfèr prâⁿdr dü kafay aprè l^e r^epâ.* No, I prefer to take some coffee after the meal.
- 26 *pr^enay voo dü vèⁿ avèk vô r^epâ?* Do you take wine with your meals?
- 27 *zhaynayralmâⁿ zh^e bwâ eⁿ vèr d^e vèⁿ ay eⁿ vèr dô.* Ordinarily I drink a glass of wine and a glass of water.

ends in mute *e* (including the mute ending *-ent*). Example: *préférer*, but *je préfère*. 24. Comparative form of adjectives or adverbs is made by placing *plus* (more) in front of them. Example: *plus tard*, later; *plus intéressant*, more interesting. 25. Like *languages*, *meals* generally require the article; but this article is omitted after *pour*. 26. To express *regular occurrence* with days of the week, the singular form of the noun is used with the definite article. 27. Rules of CONTRACTION apply to the PARTITIVE. *De + le = du* and *de + les = des*. Contraction occurs only with *articles*, not with *pronoun objects*. 28. *A noun in a general sense takes definite article* whereas the English has no article. Compare this with note 18 above. Example: *Frenchmen are men*; that is, "Frenchmen in general—all Frenchmen are men." The French therefore reads: "*Les*

28 Le café est-il³³ à votre goût, ou est-il amer?

29 Non, monsieur, il est assez sucré.

30 Voulez-vous³⁴ m'accompagner au théâtre après le dîner?



31 Je suis désolé de³⁵ vous quitter, mais je dois acheter un chapeau.

32 Dans cette rue il y a une bonne chapellerie.

33 Est-ce qu'on³⁶ y vend de³⁷ bons chapeaux?

34 Oui, monsieur, les chapeaux sont de très bonne qualité et on³⁸ les vend à des prix raisonnables.³⁹

Français sont des hommes." 29. *Je peux* is from *pouvoir* (to be able). It also translates English auxiliary *can* or *may*; since the French has no such auxiliaries, *can* and *may* become the main verb *pouvoir* and the main verb of the English becomes a DEPENDENT INFINITIVE. Example: *I can go*; that is, *I am able to go*: *je peux aller*. 30. DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE: *ce*, masc. (this, that) becoming *cet* before vowel or *h* mute; *cette*, fem. (this, that); *ces*, masc. and fem. plural (these, those). 31. FUTURE TENSE. Formed with endings (*je*)...*ai*; (*tu*)...*as*; (*il*)...*a*; (*nous*)...*ons*; (*vous*)...*ez*; (*ils*)...*ont* added to *entire* infinitive except in third conjugation where *e* of infinitive drops before future endings. Example: *j'aimerai* (1st conjugation); *je vendrai* (3rd conjugation). Future in English is expressed with auxiliary "*shall*" or "*will*." Observe again that French verb is in one piece. 32. Nouns ending in "*eau*" form their plural

- 28 *l^e kafay èteel a votr^e goo, oo èteel amèr?* Is the coffee (*lit.* the coffee is it) to your taste, or is it bitter?
- 29 *nôⁿ, m^esyè^o, eel ètasay sükray.* No, sir, it is sweet enough (*lit.* enough sweet).
- 30 *voalay voo makôⁿpanyay ô tayâtr aprè l^e deenay?* Do you wish to accompany me to the theater after dinner?
- 31 *zh^e süee dayzolay d^e voo keetay, mè zh^e dwazashstay eⁿ shapô.* I am sorry to leave you, but I must buy a hat.
- 32 *dâⁿ sèt rü eelya ün bon sha-pèlree.* On (*lit.* in) this street there is a good hat shop.
- 33 *èskôⁿnee vâⁿ d^e bôn shapô?* Do they sell (*lit.* is it that one sells there) good hats there?
- 34 *wee, m^esyè^o, lay shapô sôⁿ d^e trè bon kaleetay ay ôⁿ lay vâⁿ a day pree rézonabl.* Yes, sir, the hats are of very good quality and they are sold (*lit.* one sells them) at reasonable prices.



by adding "x." 33. Unless *est-ce que* is used (see lesson 1, note 23), apply the following formula to form a question by inverting with a noun subject: *noun subject + verb + pronoun subject repeating noun subject*. See literal rendering in translation above. 34. Distinguish *désirez-vous* (do you want) and *voulez-vous* (do you want and also are you willing). 35. Infinitives depending on adjectives are most commonly introduced by *de*. 36. The INDEFINITE PRONOUN *on* (*lit.* one) frequently translates English *they*, or even *you*, in an impersonal sense. 37. When an adjective precedes a noun in a partitive construction the partitive consists only of *de* without an article. 38. The *on* construction (see note 36 above) is also used in French to avoid a passive. Note normal English translation given for this sentence. 39. The normal place for the adjective in French is *after the noun*; but certain short adjectives (example: *bon*) precede.



TROISIÈME LEÇON

Third Lesson

NOUVEAU VOCABULAIRE POUR CETTE LEÇON

(Noovô vocabülèr poor sèt l^esôⁿ) • New Vocabulary for this Lesson

le feutre ¹ (fe ⁰ tr)	the felt, the felt hat
avoir besoin de ² (avwar b ^e zwè ⁿ d ^e)	to need
la soirée ³ (swaray)	the evening, evening party
bien entendu ⁴ (byè ⁿ nâ ⁿ tâ ⁿ dü)	of course
cher , masc. (shèr)	dear, expensive
chère , fem. (shèr)	dear, expensive
n'est-ce pas ⁵ ? (nèspâ)	is it not so?
bon marché ⁶ (bô ⁿ marshay)	cheap
l'argent , masc. (larzhâ ⁿ)	the money
coûter (kootay)	to cost
combien (kô ⁿ byè ⁿ)	how much
bonjour (bô ⁿ zhoor)	good-day, hello
bonsoir (bô ⁿ swar)	good evening
la nuit (nüee)	the night
le magasin (magazè ⁿ)	the store
la semelle (s ^e mèl)	the sole
le talon (talô ⁿ)	the heel
assorti (asortee)	matching
la couleur (koolè ⁰ r)	the color
le soir ³ (swar)	the evening

la marche (<i>marsh</i>)	walking
étroit (<i>aytrwa</i>)	narrow, tight
haut (<i>ô</i>)	high, tall
bas (<i>bâ</i>)	low
court (<i>koor</i>)	short
le coton (<i>kotôⁿ</i>)	the cotton
la laine (<i>lèn</i>)	the wool
long, masc. (<i>lôⁿ</i>)	long
longue, fem. (<i>lôⁿg</i>)	long
pareil (<i>parèy</i>)	same
différent (<i>deefayrâⁿ</i>)	different
élégant (<i>aylaygâⁿ</i>)	elegant
quelques-uns (<i>kèlk^ezeⁿ</i>)	some (masc.)
quelques-unes (<i>kèlk^eziün</i>)	some (fem.)
dedans (<i>d^edâⁿ</i>)	inside
trop (<i>trô</i>)	too much
il faut (<i>eel fô</i>)	it is necessary
foncé, masc. (<i>fôⁿsay</i>)	dark, deep
foncée, fem. (<i>fôⁿsay</i>)	dark, deep

THE CORTINA METHOD

VÊTEMENTS ET CHAUSSURES

(vètmâⁿ ay shôsur) • Clothing and Footwear

le costume (kostüm)	the suit
le veston (vèstô ⁿ)	coat (suit)
le manteau (mâ ⁿ tô)	coat
le gilet (zheelè)	vest
le pantalon (pâ ⁿ talô ⁿ)	trousers
le pardessus (pard ^e sü)	overcoat
le chapeau (shapô)	hat
la casquette (kaskèt)	cap
la cravate (kravat)	the necktie
la chemise (sh ^e meez)	shirt
la manche (mâ ⁿ sh)	sleeve
la manchette (mâ ⁿ shèt)	cuff
le mouchoir (mooshwar)	handkerchief
la chaussette (shôset)	sock
une paire (pèr)	a pair
le jupon ^s (zhüpô ⁿ)	petticoat
le tissu (teesü)	the cloth (heavy material)
l'étoffe , fem. (aytof)	cloth (light material)
la soie (swâ)	silk

le gant (gâ ⁿ)	the glove
le sac à main ⁹ (sakamè ⁿ)	handbag
la robe (rob)	dress
la jupe (zhüp)	skirt
la blouse (blooz)	blouse
la gaine (gèn)	the girdle
le bas (bâ)	stocking
le soulier (soolyay)	shoe
la pantoufle (pâ ⁿ toofl)	slipper
le cuir (küeer)	leather
le porte-monnaie ¹⁰ (portmonè)	the change purse
le linge de corps ¹¹ (lè ⁿ zh d ^e kor)	underwear
le caleçon (kalsô ⁿ)	underdrawers, shorts
la combinaison (kô ⁿ beenèzô ⁿ)	slip
le tailleur, le costume tailleur (kostüm tayè ⁰ r)	suit (for a woman)
la jaquette (zhakèt)	coat (of a woman's suit)
le soutien-gorge ¹² (sootyè ⁿ gorzh)	brassière

CONVERSATION

1 Bonjour, monsieur.—Bonsoir, madame.—Bonne nuit,¹⁸ mon enfant.

2 De quoi parliez-vous¹⁴ quand je suis entré?¹⁵

3 Nous parlions de vêtements et de chaussures.



4 Vous avez là un costume qui vous va^{10, 17} très bien.

5 Oui, c'est¹⁸ du¹⁰ bon tissu, mais le veston est trop long et le gilet trop court.

6 Est-ce que le pantalon vous va?¹⁷

7 Oui, le pantalon me va très bien.

8 J'ai besoin d'un pardessus, d'un chapeau et d'une paire de gants.

9 Dans ce magasin vous pouvez²⁰ acheter tout ce²¹ qu'il vous faut:²² cravates, mouchoirs, chemises et chaussettes.

10 Avez-vous besoin aussi de linge de corps?

11 Oui, j'ai besoin de linge de corps.

12 Les manchettes de cette chemise de soie dépassent trop.

FOOTNOTES: 1. Note *close* vowel instead of *open* vowel. 2. Idiom. Lit. *to have need of*. 3. *Soir* is used to indicate the time of the day known as *the evening*. *Soirée* is used in the sense of the duration of the evening, the events which take place in the evening. Example: *toute la soirée* (all evening). 4. *Entendre* means *to hear*. In "passive" it also means *agreed*. 5. Lit. *is it not?* Can be placed after any declarative sentence to make it interrogative. 6. Idiom. *Marché* means literally *market*. 7. Adjectives ending in *é* form feminine by adding *e* which does not change pronunciation. 8. The "on" ending is frequently a diminutive ending in French. 9. Lit. *bag for the hand*. 10. *Monnaie* means *change*, whereas *argent* (money) is a broader term. 11. Lit. *linen of (for) body*. 12. *Soutenir* means *to hold up*. 13. Said only to people

PRONUNCIATION

TRANSLATION

- 1 *bôⁿzhoor, m^esy^e. bôⁿswar, madam. bon nüee, monâⁿfâⁿ.* Good-day, sir. Good evening, madame. Good night, my child.
- 2 *d^e kwa parlyay voo kâⁿ zh^e süeezâⁿtray?* What were you talking about (*lit.* of what were you talking) when I entered (*lit.* am entered)?
- 3 *noo parlyôⁿ d^e vètmâⁿ ay d^e shôsür.* We were speaking of clothes and footwear.
- 4 *voozavay la eⁿ kostüm kee voo va trè byèⁿ.* You have a suit there which fits you very well.
- 5 *wee, sè dü bôⁿ teesü, mè l^e vèstôⁿ è trô lôⁿ ay l^e zheelè trô koor.* Yes, it is good material, but the coat is too long and the vest too short.
- 6 *èsk^e l^e pâⁿtalôⁿ voo va?* Do the trousers fit you (*lit.* is it that the trouser goes to you)?
- 7 *wee, l^e pâⁿtalôⁿ m^e va trè byèⁿ.* Yes, the trousers fit me very well.
- 8 *zhay b^ezwè deⁿ pard^esü, deⁿ shapô ay dün pèr d^e gâⁿ.* I need (*lit.* have need of) an overcoat, a hat and a pair of gloves.
- 9 *dâⁿ s^e magazèⁿ voo poovay-zashtay tooskeel voo fô: kravat, mooshwar, sh^emeez ay shôsèt.* In this store you can buy everything you need (*lit.* all that which *it is necessary* to you): neckties, handkerchiefs, shirts and socks.
- 10 *avay voo b^ezwèⁿ ôsee d^e lènzh d^e kor?* Do you need underwear also?
- 11 *wee, zhay b^ezwèⁿ d^e lènzh d^e kor.* Yes, I need underwear.
- 12 *lay mâⁿshèt d^e sèt sh^emeez d^e swâ daypâs trô.* The cuffs of this silk shirt (*lit.* shirt of silk) are too long.

going to bed at bedtime. 14. Example of IMPERFECT TENSE (French: *imparfait*). In first conjugation remove infinitive ending -er and add endings italicized in the following example: je donnais, tu donnais, il donnait, nous donnions, vous donniez, ils donnaient. *The imperfect tense expresses a state of being in the past, or an action in the past that was continuous, habitual, or repeated, or going on when another action took place.* Examples: I was speaking when he arrived: je parlais quand il est arrivé; I used to go to France every year: j'allais en France tous les ans. 15. Example of COMPOUND PAST TENSE (French: *passé composé* or *passé indéfini*). In conversation this indicates a completed action in the simple past. It is composed of the auxiliary to have (*avoir*) or to be (*être*) plus a past participle. Example: j'ai donné (*I have given*

13 Je désire acheter un tailleur²³ pour ma femme.

14 Quel tissu préférez-vous?

15 Un bon tissu et pas²⁴ trop cher.

16 Désirez-vous une jupe et une blouse assorties?

17 Bien entendu. Je préfère une seule couleur foncée.

18 Nous avons des robes de soirée et des robes de ville qui²⁵ sont très élégantes.

19 Combien coûte ce feutre?

20 Ce chapeau est cher mais cette casquette est bon marché.

21 Mademoiselle Martin désire acheter une combinaison et des bas, n'est-ce pas?

22 Oui, et j'ai besoin aussi d'une gaine et d'un soutien-gorge.

23 Savez-vous où je peux acheter des souliers?

24 Au magasin de chaussures on trouve tout ce qu'il faut comme chaussures.²⁶

25 Madame Blanc désire acheter des souliers de bal à talons²⁷ hauts et à semelle mince.

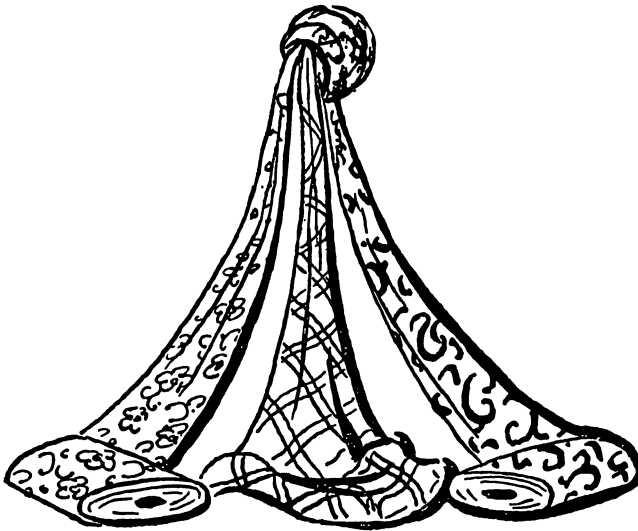


and also *I gave, I did give*). Most verbs use the auxiliary *avoir*. Reflexive verbs and a few other verbs like *entrer* are conjugated with *être* (for a complete list of such verbs see lesson XVIII, note 1). 16. From irregular verb *aller*: *je vais, tu vas, il va, nous allons, vous allez, ils vont*. 17. Idiom. Note special use of *aller* in sense *to fit*. The pronoun before it is an *indirect object*. 18. *Ce* is used for *it* with indefinite antecedent or when, after verb *to be*, there is a *modified noun*, a *pronoun* or a *superlative*. 19. Observe exceptional use of *complete partitive* even though adjective precedes noun. 20. From *pouvoir* (to be able): *je peux, tu peux, il peut, nous pouvons, vous pouvez, ils peuvent*. See lesson 2, note 29. 21. Idiom: *tout ce que*: all that (*lit.* all that which). After *tout, ce*

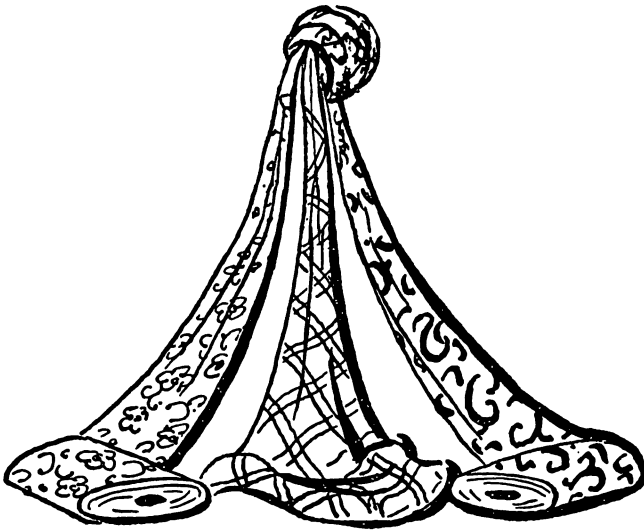
- 13 *zh^e dayzeer ashtay eⁿ tayè^r* I wish to buy a tailored suit for
poor ma fam. my wife.
- 14 *kèl teesü prayfayray voo?* What material do you prefer?
- 15 *eⁿ bôⁿ teesü ay pâ trô shèr.* A good material and not too ex-
 pensive.
- 16 *dayzeeray voo ün zhüp ay ün* Do you want a matching skirt and
blooz asortee? blouse?
- 17 *byèⁿnâⁿtâⁿdü. zh^e prayfèr ün* Of course. I prefer one (*lit.* a
sé^{ol} koolè^r fôⁿsay. single) deep color.
- 18 *noozavôⁿ day rob d^e swaray ay* We have evening dresses and street
day rob d^e veel kee sôⁿ trèzay- dresses (*lit.* town dresses) which
laygâ^t. are very elegant.
- 19 *kôⁿbyèⁿ koot s^e fe^otr.* How much does this felt hat cost
 (*lit.* how much costs this felt) ?
- 20 *s^e shapô è shèr mè sèt kaskèt è* This hat is expensive but this cap
bôⁿ marshay. is cheap.
- 21 *madmwazèl martèⁿ dayzeer* Miss Martin wishes to buy a slip
ashtay ün kôⁿbeenèzôⁿ ay day and some stockings, doesn't she
bâ, nés^pâ? (*lit.* is it not so) ?
- 22 *wee, ay zhay b^ezwèⁿ ôsee dün* Yes, and I need also a girdle and
gèn ay deⁿ sootyèⁿ gorzh. a brassière.
- 23 *savay voo oo zh^e pe^ozashtay* Do you know where I can buy
day soolyay? some shoes?
- 24 *ô magazèⁿ d^e shôsür ôⁿ troov* In the shoe store one finds all that
tooskeel fô kom shôsür. one needs in the way of shoes.
- 25 *madam blâⁿ dayzeer ashtay day* Mrs. Blanc wishes to buy some
soolyay d^e bal a talôⁿ ô ay a dancing slippers (*lit.* ball shoes)
s^emèl mèⁿs. with high heels and a thin sole.

que must be used in sense of *that*. 22. Idiom. Note this construction: *il vous faut un chapeau*: there is necessary to you a hat, i.e., you need a hat. 23. Short for *costume tailleur*, tailored suit. 24. Without a verb *not* is merely *pas* in conversation, *non* in literary style. 25. RELATIVE PRONOUN: subject *qui* (who, which, that); object *que* (whom, which, that). 26. Observe literal translation of this idiom. 27. Descriptive phrase beginning with "with" in English begins with "à" in French. Note absence of partitives. 28. Adverb. Do not confuse with adjective *petit*. 29. CONDITIONAL TENSE (French: *conditionnel*). Formed with stem of *future* (see lesson 2, note 31) and endings of *imperfect* (see note 14 above). Example: *j'aimerais*: I should or would like; *je vendrais*: I should or would sell. Equivalent English tense has auxiliaries *should* and *would*. In case of *vouloir*, note irregular future stem *voudr-*.

- 26 Et nous voulons acheter aussi une paire de souliers pour la marche et des pantoufles.
- 27 Ces souliers sont un peu²⁸ trop étroits.
- 28 Désirez-vous un sac à main en cuir?
- 29 Oui, je voudrais²⁹ un sac avec un porte-monnaie pour mon argent.



- 26 *ay noo voolôⁿzash^{tay} osee ün pèr d^e soolyay poor la marsh ay day pâⁿtoofl.* And we also wish to buy a pair of walking shoes and some house-slippers.
- 27 *say soolyay sôⁿteⁿ pe^o trôpay-trwa.* These shoes are a little too tight.
- 28 *dayzeeray voo eⁿ sak a mèⁿ âⁿ küeer?* Do you want a leather handbag?
- 29 *wee, zh^e voodrè(z)eⁿ sak avèk eⁿ portmonè poor monarzhâⁿ.* Yes, I should like a bag with a change purse for my money.





QUATRIÈME LEÇON

Fourth Lesson

NOUVEAU VOCABULAIRE POUR CETTE LEÇON

(Noovô vocabülèr poor sèt l^esôⁿ) • New Vocabulary for this Lesson

voici ¹ (vwasee)	here is, here are
faire ² enregistrer (fêr â ⁿ r ^e zheestray)	to check
demain matin (d ^e mè ⁿ matè ⁿ)	tomorrow morning
retenir (r ^e tneer)	to retain, reserve
s'il vous plaît ³ (seel voo plè)	if you please
voulez-vous bien (voolay voo byè ⁿ)	will you be kind enough
se trouver (s ^e troovay)	to be, to be located
s'embarquer (sâ ⁿ barkay)	to embark, to sail
le départ (daypar)	the departure
visiter (vezeetay)	to visit
vraiment (vrèmâ ⁿ)	really, truly
vite (veet)	quickly
alors ⁴ (alor)	then
peser (p ^e zay)	to weigh
déjà (dayzha)	already
pas encore (pâzâ ⁿ kor)	not yet
le temps (tâ ⁿ)	the time
à temps (a tâ ⁿ) ⁵	on time
le boulevard (boolvar)	the boulevard
atterrir (atèreer)	to land
décoller (daykolay)	to take off (aviation)

un avion (avyô ⁿ)	an airplane
valable (valabl)	valuable, valid
savoir (savwar)	to know (how)
la place (plas)	the seat, the square
il y a (eelya)	there is, there are
y a-t-il? (yateel)	is there? are there?
un kilo, un kilogramme (keelogram)	a kilogram
monter (mô ⁿ taɣ)	to go up, to get (into)
le nord (nor)	the north
premier, mas. (pr ^e myay)	first
première, fem. (pr ^e myêr)	first
tôt (tô)	soon
je sais ⁶ (zhe say)	I know
le jour (zhoor)	the day
l'arrivée, fem. (lareevay)	the arrival
le pays (payee)	the country
puisque (püeesk ^e)	since
prêt (prè)	ready
autre (ôtr)	other
une aile (èl)	a wing

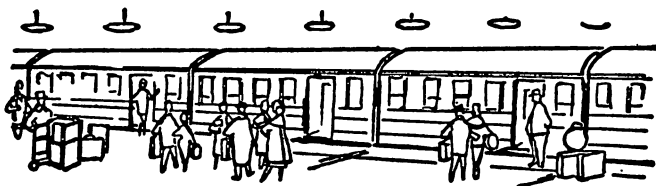
THE CORTINA METHOD

MOYENS DE TRANSPORT

(mwayèⁿ d^e tràⁿspor) • Means of Transportation

la malle (mal)	the trunk
la gare (gar)	station
le billet (beeyè)	ticket
le guichet (geeshè)	ticket window
le wagon (vagô ⁿ)	railroad car
l'horaire , masc. (lorèr)	time table
le vapeur (vapè ^o r)	the steamboat
le bateau (batô)	the boat
la cabine (kabeen)	cabin
le pilote (peelot)	pilot
le moteur (motè ^o r)	motor
le quai (kay)	pier
le fuselage (fuzlazh)	fuselage
le port (por)	port
le chemin de fer ⁷ (sh ^e mè ⁿ d ^e fèr)	the railroad
le train (trè ⁿ)	train
la valise (valeez)	suitcase

les bagages , masc. (<i>bagazh</i>)	the baggage
le bulletin (<i>bültèⁿ</i>) de bagages	baggage check
la salle (<i>sal</i>) des bagages	baggage room
le compartiment (<i>kôⁿpartemâⁿ</i>)	compartment
aller et retour ⁸ (<i>alay ay r^etoor</i>)	round-trip
un aérodrome (<i>aayrodrom</i>)	an airport
les hélices , fem. (<i>layzaylees</i>)	propellers
une agence (<i>azhâⁿs</i>) de voyages	a travel agency



FOOTNOTES: 1. Lit. *vois-ici*, see here. 2. Lit. *to cause to be registered*. Example of causal use of *faire*. 3. Lit. *if it to you is pleasing*. 4. Compare with *ensuite* which means exclusively *next* or *then* in sense of *next*. 5. Note that "p" is unpronounced. 6. Note unusual pronunciation. 7. Lit. *the road*

CONVERSATION



- 1 Où est la gare, s'il vous plaît?
- 2 Il y en⁹ a une rue de Rennes et Boulevard du Montparnasse et une autre Place Denfert-Rochereau.
- 3 A quelle gare devez¹⁰-vous aller?
- 4 Pour aller à Bruxelles nous devons partir par¹¹ la Gare du Nord.
- 5 A quelle heure part le premier train?
- 6 Le premier train part très tôt le matin.
- 7 Alors il faudra¹² prendre un taxi pour aller plus vite.
- 8 Est-ce que vos bagages sont prêts?
- 9 Oui, les valises et les malles sont déjà à la gare.
- 10 Voulez-vous bien me dire où se¹³ trouve le guichet?
- 11 Combien coûte un billet de troisième classe aller et retour pour Strasbourg?
- 12 Pour combien de temps est-ce que ce billet est valable?
- 13 Un aller et retour est valable pour dix jours.
- 14 Où est la salle des bagages? Je veux faire enregistrer mes malles.

of iron. 8. Lit. *going (to go) and return.* 9. The PARTITIVE PRONOUN *en* means *some, any, of it, of them.* When a number is used alone in a sentence the *partitive* pronoun is required before the verb. 10. From *devoir.* Compare with lesson 2, note 29. 11. Idiom. French says *by* rather than *from.* 12. Future of *il faut.* 13..Lit. *finds itself.* This is an example of a REFLEXIVE VERB. A

PRONUNCIATION

TRANSLATION

- 1 *oo è la gar, seel voo plè?* Where is the station, please?
- 2 *eel yâⁿ na ün rü d^e rên ay bool-var dü môⁿparnâs ay ün ôtr plas dâⁿfêr rosh^erô.* There is one (at the corner of) Rennes Street and Montparnasse Boulevard and another (at) Denfert-Rochereau Square.
- 3 *a kèl gar d^evay vooz alay?* To what station must you go?
- 4 *poor alay a brüsèl noo d^evôⁿ parteer par la gar dü nor.* To go to Brussels we must leave from the North Station.
- 5 *a kèl è^or par l^e pr^emyay trèⁿ?* At what time does the first train leave?
- 6 *l^e pr^emyay trèⁿ par trè tô l^e matèⁿ.* The first train leaves early in the morning.
- 7 *alor eel fôdra prâⁿdr eⁿ taksee poor alay plü veet.* Then it will be necessary to take a taxi to go more quickly.
- 8 *èsk^e vô bagazh sôⁿ prè?* Is your baggage ready?
- 9 *wee, lay valeez ay lay mal sôⁿ dayzha a la gar.* Yes, the suitcases and trunks are already at the station.
- 10 *voolay voo byèⁿ m^e deer oo s^e troov l^e geeshè?* Will you be kind enough to tell me where the ticket window is located?
- 11 *kôⁿbyèⁿ koot eⁿ beeyè d^e trwazyèm klâs alay ay r^etoor poor strâzboor?* How much does a third class ticket round trip to Strasbourg cost (*lit.* how much costs a third . . .)?
- 12 *poor kôⁿbyèⁿ d^e tâⁿ èsk^e s^e beeyè è valabl?* For how long (*lit.* how much time) is this ticket valid?
- 13 *eⁿnalay ay r^etoor è valabl poor dee zhoor.* A round-trip is valid for ten days.
- 14 *oo è la sal day bagazh? zh^e ve^o fêr âⁿr^ezheestray may mal.* Where is the baggage room? I want to check my trunks.

reflexive verb is any verb with a reflexive pronoun object (reflexive pronoun in English is *myself, yourself, etc.*). Occasionally, as here, the French expression may be reflexive whereas the equivalent English is not. 14. *Retenu*, past participle of irregular verb *retenir*. This is another example of *compound past tense* (see lesson 3, note 15). 15. With present participle *en* means *on* or *by*. (See lesson

15 Voulez-vous bien me donner mon bulletin de bagages?

16 Voici votre bulletin, Madame Blanchard.

17 Combien pèse ma malle?

18 Votre malle pèse cinquante kilos.

19 Montons dans le train puisqu'il va partir.

20 Voici une bonne place dans un compartiment de troisième. Avez-vous l'horaire?



21 Non, mais je sais que le train arrive demain matin.

22 Alors nous arriverons à temps pour prendre le bateau.

23 Avez-vous retenu¹⁴ votre cabine?

24 Pas encore, mais j'en¹¹ louerai une en¹⁵ arrivant¹⁶ au port.

25 Monsieur Bourgeois va à Londres par avion.



26 Vraiment? J'aimerais¹⁷ faire un voyage en avion.

27 J'aimerais voir un aéroport avant de nous¹⁸ embarquer.

28 Très bien, nous visiterons l'aérodrome d'où partent les avions transatlantiques.

2, note 22). 16. With regular verbs the PRESENT PARTICIPLE is formed by adding *ant* to the same stem as for the present plural. The present participle is *never* used to form a tense in French. The only preposition after which it is used is *en*; all other prepositions take the infinitive form of the verb. (See lesson 2, note 22). 17. Example of CONDITIONAL TENSE (French: *conditionnel*), which is

- 15 *voalay voo byèⁿ m^e donay môⁿ bültèⁿ d^e bagazh?* Will you be kind enough to give me my baggage check?
- 16 *wwaseevotr^e bültèⁿ, madamblâⁿ shar.* Here is your check, Mrs. Blanchard.
- 17 *kôⁿbyèⁿ pèz ma mal?* How much does my trunk weigh?
- 18 *votr^e mal pèz sènⁿkâ^{nt} keelô.* Your trunk weighs fifty kilograms.
- 19 *mô^{nt}ôⁿ dâⁿ l^e trènⁿ püeeskeel va parteer.* Let's get on (*lit.* let us go up into) the train since it is going to leave.
- 20 *wwasee ün bon plas dâⁿzeⁿ kôⁿpartemâⁿ d^e trwazyèm. avay voo lorè^r?* Here is a good seat in a third-class compartment. Do you have the timetable?
- 21 *nôⁿ, mè zh^e say k^e l^e trènⁿ areev d^emèⁿ matèⁿ.* No, but I know that the train arrives tomorrow morning.
- 22 *alor noozareev^erôⁿ a tâⁿ poor prâⁿdr^e l^e batô.* Then we shall arrive in time to take the boat.
- 23 *avay voo r^etnü votr^e kabeen?* Have you reserved your cabin?
- 24 *pâzâⁿkor, mè zhâⁿ loo^eray ün âⁿnareevâⁿ ô por.* Not yet, but I shall get (*lit.* rent) one on arriving at the port.
- 25 *m^esye^o boorzhwa va a lôⁿdr par avyôⁿ.* Mr. Bourgeois is going to London by plane.
- 26 *vremâⁿ? zhèm^erè fèr eⁿ vwayzh âⁿnavyôⁿ.* Really? I should like to make a trip by (*lit.* in) plane.
- 27 *zhèm^erè vwar eⁿnaayrodrom avâⁿ d^e noozâⁿbarkay.* I should like to see an airport before sailing.
- 28 *trè byèⁿ, noo veezeet^erôⁿ laayrodrom doo part layzavyôⁿ trâⁿzatlàⁿteek.* Very well, we shall visit the airport from which (*lit.* from where) the Transatlantic planes leave.

expressed in English with auxiliary *should* or *would* (but not *should* in sense of *ought* which is a form of *devoir* nor *would* in sense of *volition* which is *vouloir*). (See lesson 3, note 29). 18. Another reflexive verb with which *nous* means *ourselves*. See note 13 above.



CINQUIÈME LEÇON

Fifth Lesson

NOUVEAU VOCABULAIRE POUR CETTE LEÇON

à (a)	to
de (d ^e)	from
même (mèm)	same
savez-vous? (savay-vo)	do you know?
quel , m. (kèl)	which
quelle , f. (kèl)	which
souvent (soovâ ⁿ)	often
plus (plü)	more
moins (mwè ⁿ)	less
autant (ôtâ ⁿ)	as much
le cahier (kayay)	the notebook
là (la)	there
une fois (fwa)	once
à peu près (a pe ^o prè)	about
une quinzaine (kè ⁿ zèn)	a fortnight
double (doobl)	double
jusqu'à (zhüska)	until, up to, as far as
y (ee)	there (place already mentioned)
une centaine (sâ ⁿ tèn)	about a hundred
compter (kô ⁿ tay)	to count; intend; expect
la première fois	the first time
la dernière fois (dèrnyèr)	the last time

LES NOMBRES ORDINAUX

(Lay nôⁿbr^e zordeenô) • The Ordinal Numbers

1^{er}. premier, m. (pr ^e myay)	first
première, f. (pr ^e myèr)	first
2^e. second ¹ (s ^e gô ⁿ)	second
deuxième (de ^o zyèm)	
3^e. troisième ² (trwazyèm)	third
4^e. quatrième (katreeèm)	fourth
5^e. cinquième (sè ⁿ kyèm)	fifth
9^e. neuvième (nè ^o vyèm)	ninth
21^e. vingt et unième (vè ⁿ tay ünyèm)	twenty-first

LES FRACTIONS

(Lay fraksyôⁿ) • The Fractions

la moitié (mwyatay)	half
un tiers (tyèr)	a third
trois quarts (trwa kar)	three quarters
un douzième (e ⁿ doozyèm)	a twelfth

THE CORTINA METHOD

NOMBRES CARDINAUX

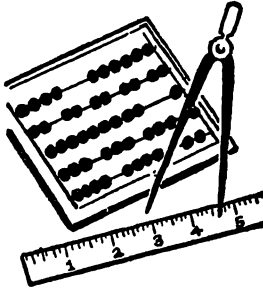
(nôⁿbr^e kardeenô) • Cardinal Numbers

- | | |
|--|---|
| 0. zéro (zayrô) | 19. dix-neuf (deeznè ^o f) |
| 1. un (e ⁿ), une (iün) | 20. vingt ⁵ (vè ⁿ) |
| 2. deux (de ^o) | 21. vingt et un (vè ⁿ tay e ⁿ) |
| 3. trois (trwa) | 22. vingt-deux (vè ⁿ t de ^o) |
| 4. quatre (katr) | 23. vingt-trois (vè ⁿ t trwa) |
| 5. cinq ³ (sè ⁿ k) | 24. vingt-quatre (vè ⁿ t katr) |
| 6. six ³ (sees) | 25. vingt-cinq (vè ⁿ t sè ⁿ k) |
| 7. sept ³ (sèt) | 26. vingt-six (vè ⁿ t sees) |
| 8. huit ³ (üeet) | 27. vingt-sept (vè ⁿ t sèt) |
| 9. neuf ³ (nè ^o f) | 28. vingt-huit (vè ⁿ tüeet) |
| 10. dix ³ (dees) | 29. vingt-neuf (vè ⁿ t nè ^o f) |
| 11. onze ⁴ (ô ⁿ z) | 30. trente (trâ ⁿ t) |
| 12. douze (dooz) | 31. trente et un (trâ ⁿ tay e ⁿ) |
| 13. treize (trèz) | 40. quarante (karâ ⁿ t) |
| 14. quatorze (katorz) | 41. quarante et un
(karâ ⁿ tay en) |
| 15. quinze (kè ⁿ z) | 50. cinquante (sè ⁿ kâ ⁿ t) |
| 16. seize (sèz) | 60. soixante (swasâ ⁿ t) |
| 17. dix-sept ³ (deesèt) | |
| 18. dix-huit ³ (deezüeet) | |
-

70. **soixante-dix**⁶ (swasâⁿt dees)
 71. **soixante et onze** (swasâⁿtay ôⁿz)
 72. **soixante-douze** (swasâⁿt dooz)
 80. **quatre-vingts**⁷ (katr^e vèⁿ)
 81. **quatre-vingt-un**⁸ (katr^e vèⁿ eⁿ)
 90. **quatre-vingt-dix**⁹ (katr^e vèⁿ dees)
 91. **quatre-vingt-onze** (katr^e vèⁿ ôⁿz)
 100. **cent** (sân)
 101. **cent un** (sâⁿ eⁿ)
 150. **cent cinquante** (sâⁿ sèⁿkâⁿt)
 200. **deux cents**¹⁰ de^o sâⁿ)
 222. **deux cent vingt-deux**
 900. **neuf cents** (nè^of sâⁿ)
 1000. **mille** (meel)
 2000. **deux mille** (de^o meel)
 1,000,000. **un million** (meelyôⁿ)
 1949. **dix-neuf cent**¹¹ **quarante-neuf**
 1951. **dix-neuf cent**¹¹ **cinquante et un**

FOOTNOTES: 1. Generally, *second* is used only for the second of two. Example: *le second livre*, the second book (of two); *le deuxième livre*, the second book (of more than two). 2. With the exception of *premier* and *second*, the ordinals are

CONVERSATION

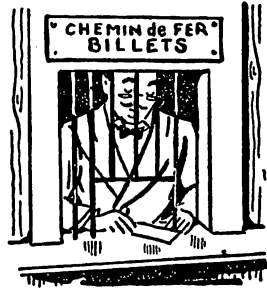
- 1 Savez-vous compter?
 - 2 Oui, je sais compter.
 - 3 Voulez-vous bien compter?
 - 4 Un, deux, trois, quatre, cinq.
 - 5 Vous avez compté de¹² un jusqu'à cinq.
- 
- 6 Est-ce que Mademoiselle Lechevallier sait compter de un jusqu'à cent?
 - 7 Oui, monsieur, je sais compter jusqu'à cent.
 - 8 Quels¹³ sont les nombres ordinaux¹⁴, Monsieur de Sorbier?
 - 9 Les nombres ordinaux sont: premier, deuxième, troisième, quatrième, cinquième, etc.
 - 10 J'ai dix livres. Combien¹⁵ de livres avez-vous?
 - 11 J'en¹⁷ ai la moitié; j'en¹⁶ ai cinq.
 - 12 Alors vous avez autant¹⁵ de livres que moi, n'est-ce pas?
 - 13 Non, j'ai moins¹⁵ de livres que vous.¹⁷
 - 14 Mademoiselle de Gorce a trois chapeaux et je n'en ai qu'¹⁸ un.
 - 15 Elle a plus de chapeaux que moi.¹⁷

formed by adding *ième* to the cardinals. Final *e* is dropped in *quatre*; *u* is inserted after *cinq*; *f* is changed to *v* in *neuf*. 3. If occasion for *linking* arises, normal rules of linking apply, i.e., *six* is pronounced *sez*, etc. But, if these numbers come before a word beginning with a consonant, the final consonant of the number is not pronounced. Example: *six garçons*, (see *garsôn*). 4. There is never any *linking* or *elision* with *onze*. 5. Final *t* is unpronounced when word is used alone or before a consonant. Note that *t* is pronounced in compounds of twenty. 6. Lit. *sixty-ten*, *sixty-and-eleven*, *sixty-twelve*, etc. 7. Lit. *four-twenties*. Observe unpronounced *s* of this number and also fact that the succeeding numbers drop the *s* in

PRONUNCIATION	TRANSLATION
1 <i>savay voo kôⁿtay?</i>	Do you know (how) to count?
2 <i>wee, zh^e say kôⁿtay.</i>	Yes, I know (how) to count.
3 <i>voolay voo byèⁿ kôⁿtay?</i>	Please count.
4 <i>eⁿ, de^o, trwa, katr, sèⁿk.</i>	One, two, three, four, five.
5 <i>voozavay kôⁿtay d^e eⁿ zhüska sèⁿk.</i>	You have counted from one up to five.
6 <i>èsk^e madmwazèl l^{esh}evalyay say kôⁿtay d^e eⁿ zhüska sâⁿ?</i>	Does Miss Lechevallier know how to count from one to one hundred?
7 <i>wee, m^{esy}e^o, zh^e say kôⁿtay zhüska sâⁿ.</i>	Yes, sir, I know how to count up to a hundred.
8 <i>kèl sôⁿ lay nôⁿbr^e(z) ordeênô, m^{esy}e^o d^e sorbyay?</i>	What are the ordinal numbers, Mr. de Sorbier?
9 <i>lay nôⁿbr^e(z) ordeênô sôⁿ: pr^emyay, de^{ozy}èm, trwazyèm, ka-treeèm, sèⁿkyèm, èt sètayra.</i>	The ordinal numbers are: first, second, third, fourth, fifth, etc.
10 <i>zhay dee leevr. kôⁿbyèⁿ d^e leevr avay voo?</i>	I have ten books. How many (<i>lit.</i> of) books have you?
11 <i>zhâⁿnay la mwatyay; zhâⁿnay sèⁿk.</i>	I have half as many (<i>lit.</i> the half of them); I have (<i>lit.</i> of them) five.
12 <i>alor voozavay(z) ôtâⁿ d^e leevr k^e mwa, nè^s pâ?</i>	Then you have as many (<i>lit.</i> of) books as I, don't you (<i>lit.</i> is it not)?
13 <i>nôⁿ, zhay mwèⁿ d^e leevr k^e voo.</i>	No, I have fewer (<i>lit.</i> less of) books than you.
14 <i>madmwazèl d^e gors a trwa shapô ay zh^e nâⁿnay keⁿ.</i>	Miss de Gorce has three hats and I have (<i>lit.</i> of them) only one.
15 <i>èl a plü d^e shapô k^e mwa.</i>	She has more hats than I.

spelling. 8. Observe that *eighty-one, ninety-one, one hundred one* do not have *et* in them as *twenty-one*, etc. Note that *t* of *vingt* is unpronounced here. 9. *Lit. four-twenties-ten.* 10. Note *s* here and absence of *s* in following example. 11. The word *cent* cannot be omitted in a date. 12. Note unusual case of failure to make elision here. 13. In formula *what + to be + noun*, "what" is treated as adjective. 14. Most nouns and adjectives ending in *al* form their plural in *aux*. 15. Example of an ADVERB OF QUANTITY. Corresponding to certain English adjectives (example: *many, much*) the French has only *adverbs of quantity* which, being adverbs, do not agree and also require *de*. This *de* is actually a *short parti-*

- 16 Une fois j'ai acheté une centaine¹⁹ de cahiers.
- 17 La prochaine fois vous ne devriez²⁰ pas en¹⁶ acheter tellement.
- 18 La dernière fois que j'étais au Havre c'était mon troisième voyage à cette ville.
- 19 J'y ai été vingt fois.
- 20 Cette fois j'irai à Genève.
- 21 Un billet de chemin de fer pour la Suisse coûte deux fois plus cher qu'un billet pour Dijon, n'est-ce pas?
- 22 Oui, approximativement, et le voyage à Bordeaux coûte à peu près la même chose qu'un voyage à Toulouse.



tive construction (see lesson II, note 18). 16. With adverbs of quantity, numbers, or other quantitative expressions standing alone in the sentence, the *partitive pronoun* is required before the verb (see lesson IV, note 9). 17. Example of *DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUN*. First person singular disjunctive is *moi* (*me* or *I*, depending on construction); second plural disjunctive is *vous*. After *que* in sense *than* always use disjunctive. 18. Special negative *ne . . . que* meaning *only*. Place *ne* before verb and *que* in same place that *only* occupies in the equivalent English sentence, provided that *only* is correctly placed in English. *Ne . . . que* cannot refer to anything but the predicate of the sentence. 19. A *COLLECTIVE NUMBER*.

- 16 ün fwa zhay ashtay ün sâⁿtèn[·] d^e kayay. Once I bought about a hundred notebooks.
- 17 la proshèn fwa voo n^e d^evreeay pâzâⁿnashtay tèlmâⁿ. The next time you ought not (*lit.* of them) to buy so many.
- 18 la dèrnyèr fwa k^e zhaytè(z) ô avr saytè môⁿ trwazyèm vwayzh a sèt veel. The last time (that) I was at Le Havre (it) was my third trip to that city.
- 19 zhee ay aytay vèⁿ fwa. I have been there twenty times.
- 20 sèt fwa zheeray a zh^enèv. This time I shall go to Geneva.
- 21 eⁿ beeyè d^e sh^emèⁿ d^e fèr poor la süees[·]koot de^o fwa plü shèr keⁿ beeyè poor deezhòⁿ, nè sè pâ? A railroad ticket for Switzerland costs twice as much (*lit.* two times more expensive) as a ticket for Dijon, doesn't it?
- 22 wee, aprokseemateevmâⁿ, ay l^e vwayzh a bordô koot a pe^o prè la mèm shôz keⁿ vwayzh a toolooz. Yes, approximately, and the trip to Bordeaux costs about the same (thing) as a trip to Toulouse.



The ending *aine* can be added to the numbers 8, 10, 12, 15, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 100 to form collective numbers. *Une dizaine* (note unusual spelling), for example, means *about ten*. *Une douzaine*, meaning *twelve things of a kind*, gives us the English *dozen*. Collective numbers, like adverbs of quantity, take partitive *de* when accompanied by a noun. 20. Conditional of *devoir*, the verb of obligation and necessity. Like *pouvoir* (see lesson II, note 29), it is a main verb, not an auxiliary verb, in French. *I must* or *I have to* in the present, it translates *I ought* or *I should* in the conditional (see lesson IV, note 17).



SIXIÈME LEÇON

Sixth Lesson

NOUVEAU VOCABULAIRE POUR CETTE LEÇON

le froid (frwa)	the cold
la chaleur (shalè ⁰ r)	the heat
aujourd'hui (ôzhoordüee)	today
demain (d ^e mè ⁿ)	tomorrow
se diviser (s ^e deevzezay)	to be divided
consister (kô ⁿ seestay)	to consist
commencer (komâ ⁿ say)	to begin
le repos (r ^e pô)	the rest
ni...ni... (nee...nee)	neither...nor
durer (düray)	to last
le soleil se couche ¹ (solêy s ^e koosh)	the sun sets
il fait mauvais ² (eel fè movè)	the weather is bad
cela veut dire ³ (s ^e la ve ⁰ deer)	that means
d'une façon générale (dün fasô ⁿ zhaynayral)	in a general way
une année ⁴ (ünanay)	a year (duration)
dernier, m. (dèrnyay)	last
dernière, f. (dèrnyèr)	last
après-demain (aprè d ^e mè ⁿ)	day after tomorrow
avant-hier (avâ ⁿ tyèr)	day before yesterday
se composer (s ^e kô ⁿ pôzay)	to be composed

un jour de congé (<i>zhoor d^e kôⁿzhay</i>)	a holiday
il fait froid (<i>frwa</i>)	the weather is cold
un après-midi (<i>aprèmedee</i>)	an afternoon
le lever du soleil (<i>l^evay dü solèy</i>)	the sunrise

LES MOIS DE L'ANNÉE⁵

(*Lay mwa d^e lanay*) • The Months of the Year

janvier (<i>zhâⁿvyay</i>)	January
février (<i>fayvreeay</i>)	February
mars (<i>mars</i>)	March
avril (<i>avreel</i>)	April
mai (<i>mè</i>)	May
juin (<i>zhüèⁿ</i>)	June
juillet (<i>zhüeeeyè</i>)	July
août (<i>oo</i>)	August
september (<i>sèptâⁿbr</i>)	September
octobre (<i>oktoabr</i>)	October
novembre (<i>novâⁿbr</i>)	November
décembre (<i>daysâⁿbr</i>)	December

THE CORTINA METHOD

LE JOUR • L'ANNÉE • LES SAISONS

(1^e *zhoor*, *lanay*, *lay sèzôⁿ*) • The Day, the Year, the Seasons

le matin (<i>matèⁿ</i>)	the morning
la nuit (<i>nüee</i>)	the night
la semaine (<i>s^emèn</i>)	the week
le mois (<i>mwa</i>)	the month
un an (<i>eⁿnâⁿ</i>)	a year
le siècle (<i>syèkl</i>)	the century
le coucher du soleil (<i>kooshay dü solèy</i>)	the sunset
le printemps (<i>prèⁿtâⁿ</i>)	the spring
un été (<i>aytay</i>)	a summer
un automne (<i>ôton</i>)	an autumn
un hiver (<i>eevèr</i>)	a winter
l'aube , f. (<i>ôb</i>)	the dawn
midi , m. (<i>meedee</i>)	noon
minuit , f. (<i>meenüee</i>)	midnight
il fait beau (<i>bô</i>)	the weather is good
il fait chaud (<i>shô</i>)	the weather is hot

LES JOURS DE LA SEMAINE⁵

(*Lay zhoor d^e la s^emèn*) • The Days of the Week

lundi (<i>leⁿdee</i>)	Monday
mardi (<i>mardee</i>)	Tuesday
mercredi (<i>mèrkr^edee</i>)	Wednesday
jeudi (<i>zhe^odee</i>)	Thursday
vendredi (<i>vâⁿdr^edee</i>)	Friday
samedi (<i>samdee</i>)	Saturday
dimanche (<i>deemâⁿsh</i>)	Sunday



FOOTNOTES: 1. Lit. *goes to bed*. 2. The impersonal *il fait*, meaning *it makes*, followed by an adjective or a partitive construction, is the preferred expression for the weather. *Il fait mauvais (temps)* translates then literally: *it makes bad (weather)*. Observe that the English, as in sentence 30 of this lesson, occasionally

CONVERSATION

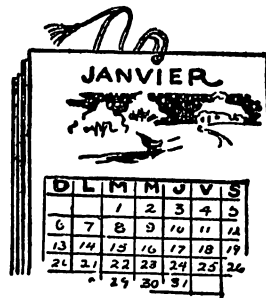
- 1 Comment se divise la journée?
- 2 La journée se compose du matin, de l'après-midi et du soir.
- 3 Le matin dure jusqu'à midi. L'après-midi dure plus ou moins jusqu'à la tombée de la nuit.



- 4 Quand est-ce que le soir commence?
- 5 Le soir commence d'une façon générale après le coucher du soleil.
- 6 Que signifie le terme "aube"?
- 7 L'aube veut dire le lever du soleil.

- 8 Combien de jours y a-t-il^o dans la semaine?
- 9 La semaine se compose de sept jours.
- 10 Quel jour de la semaine est-ce aujourd'hui?

11 Aujourd'hui c'est lundi, qui est le premier jour de la semaine. Le dernier jour de la semaine est dimanche, qui est un jour de congé ou de repos.



- 12 Quel jour serons-nous⁷ demain?
- 13 Demain ce⁸ sera mardi et le jour suivant sera mercredi.
- 14 Est-ce que c'était hier mercredi?
- 15 Non, monsieur, hier c'était dimanche et avant-hier c'était samedi.

uses "it" for the weather. If, however, the English read: *it is cold*, with the word *water* as the antecedent of *it*, the French would read: *elle est froide*. 3. Lit. *that wishes to say*. 4. Roughly the feminine forms *journee* and *année* emphasize duration but actually the use of these words is idiomatic. In the expression *toute*

PRONUNCIATION	TRANSLATION
1 komâ ⁿ s ^e deev ^e ez la zhoornay?	How is the day divided?
2 la zhoornay s ^e kô ⁿ pôz dü matè ⁿ , d ^e laprèmedee ay dü swar.	The day is composed of the morning, the afternoon, and the evening.
3 l ^e matè ⁿ dür zhüska meedee. laprèmedee dür plüzoo mwè ⁿ zhüska la tô ⁿ bay d ^e la nüee.	The morning lasts until noon. The afternoon lasts more or less until nightfall (<i>lit.</i> the falling of the night).
4 kâ ⁿ tèsk ^e l ^e swar komâ ⁿ s?	When does the evening begin?
5 l ^e swar komâ ⁿ s dü ⁿ fasô ⁿ zhaynayral aprè l ^e kooshay dü solèy.	The evening begins in a general way after sunset.
6 k ^e seenyefee l ^e tèrm ôb?	What does the term "dawn" signify?
7 lôb ve ^o deer l ^e l ^e vay dü solèy.	Dawn means sunrise.
8 kô ⁿ byè ⁿ d ^e zhoor ee ateel dâ ⁿ la s ^e mèn?	How many days are there in a week?
9 la s ^e mèn s ^e kô ⁿ pôz d ^e sèt zhoor.	The week is composed of seven days.
10 kèl zhoor d ^e la s ^e mèn ès ô-zhoordüee?	What day of the week is it today?
11 ôzhoordüee sè le ⁿ dee, kee è l ^e pr ^e myay zhoor d ^e la s ^e mèn. l ^e dèrnyay zhoor d ^e la s ^e mèn è deemâ ⁿ sh, kee ètè ⁿ zhoor d ^e kô ⁿ zhay oo d ^e r ^e pô.	Today is Monday, which is the first day of the week. The last day of the week is Sunday, which is a holiday or day of rest.
12 kèl zhoor s ^e rô ⁿ noo d ^e mèn?	What day will it be tomorrow?
13 d ^e mèn s ^e s ^e ra mardee ay l ^e zhoor süeevâ ⁿ s ^e ra mèrkr ^e dee.	Tomorrow will be Tuesday and the following day will be Wednesday.
14 èsk ^e saytè yèr mèrkr ^e dee?	Was yesterday Wednesday?
15 nô ⁿ , m ^e sye ^o , yèr saytè deemâ ⁿ sh ay avâ ⁿ tyèr saytè samdee.	No, sir, yesterday (it) was Sunday and day before yesterday (it) was Saturday.

Fannée (the whole year) duration is clearly emphasized (see lesson III, note 3). 5. The days, the months, and the seasons are not capitalized in French. Study irregular pronunciation. 6. To invert a third person singular verb ending in a vowel, a "t" surrounded by hyphens must be inserted. Historically this *t* is a

- 16 Pouvez-vous me dire comment se divise l'année?
 17 L'année se divise en douze mois.
 18 Dans⁹ quel mois sommes-nous?
 19 Nous sommes maintenant en⁹ septembre, le mois prochain sera octobre et le mois dernier était août.
 20 Quel est le premier mois de l'année?
 21 Le premier mois de l'année est janvier.
 22 Combien de saisons y a-t-il dans l'année?
 23 L'année a quatre saisons: le printemps, l'été, l'automne et l'hiver.
 24 Quels sont les mois de¹⁰ printemps?



25 Les mois de printemps sont mars, avril et mai.

26 Est-ce qu'il fait beau ou mauvais en cette saison?

27 Au printemps il fait beau en général, ni trop froid ni trop chaud.

28 Quels sont les mois d'été?

- 29 Les mois d'été sont juin, juillet et août.
 30 Est-ce qu'il fait froid en cette saison?

- 31 Non, monsieur; en été il fait toujours chaud.
 32 Combien d'années y a-t-il dans un siècle?
 33 Il y a cent ans dans un siècle.

survivor from the times when all third singulars ended in *t*. 7. Idiom (lit. fut. tense: *will we be?*; pres. tense: *are we?*). 8. Example of "it" without antecedent becoming *ce*. See lesson III, note 18. 9. Compare this way of expressing question

- 16 *poovay voo m^e deer komâⁿ s^e deeveez lanay?* Can you tell me how the year is divided?
- 17 *lanay s^e deeveez âⁿ dooz mwa.* The year is divided into twelve months.
- 18 *dâⁿ kèl mwa som noo?* What month is it now (*lit.* in what month are we)?
- 19 *noo som mèⁿtnâⁿ âⁿ sèptâⁿbr, l^e mwa proshèⁿ s^era oktobr ay l^e mwa dèrnyay aytè oo.* It is now September (*lit.* we are now in September), the next month will be October and (the) last month was August.
- 20 *kèl è l^e pr^emyay mwa d^e lanay?* What is the first month of the year?
- 21 *l^e pr^emyay mwa d^e lanay è zhâⁿvyay.* The first month of the year is January.
- 22 *kôⁿbyèⁿ d^e sèzôⁿ ee ateel dâⁿ lanay?* How many seasons are there in the year?
- 23 *lanay a katr^e sèzôⁿ: l^e prèⁿtâⁿ, laytay, lôton ay leevèr.* The year has four seasons: (namely) spring, summer, autumn, and winter.
- 24 *kèl sôⁿ lay mwa d^e prèⁿtâⁿ?* What are the spring months?
- 25 *lay mwa d^e prèⁿtâⁿ sôⁿ mars, avreel ay mè.* The spring months are March, April, and May.
- 26 *èskeel fè bô oo movè âⁿ sèt sèzôⁿ?* Is the weather good or bad at (*lit.* in) this season?
- 27 *ô prèⁿtâⁿ eel fè bô âⁿ zhaynay-ral, nee trô frwa nee trô shô.* In the spring the weather is good in general, neither too cold nor too hot.
- 28 *kèl sôⁿ lay mwa daytay?* What are the summer months?
- 29 *lay mwa daytay sôⁿ zhüèⁿ, zhüeyè ay oo.* The summer months are June, July, and August.
- 30 *èskeel fè frwa âⁿ sèt sèzôⁿ?* Is it cold at this season?
- 31 *nôⁿ, m^esyè^o; âⁿnaytay eel fè toozhoor shô.* No, sir; in summer it is always warm.
- 32 *kôⁿbyèⁿ danay ee ateel dâⁿzeⁿ syèkl?* How many years are there in a century?
- 33 *eelya sâⁿtâⁿ dâⁿzeⁿ syèkl.* There are a hundred years in a century.

with construction in sentence 10. 10. *Spring months*: *lit.*, “months of spring.” In French, a noun cannot function as an adjective, as it can in English. To modify a noun by another noun, the modifying noun is generally used in a prepositional phrase with *de*. *Office manager* is thus translated as “manager of office”: *chef de bureau*.



SEPTIÈME LEÇON

Seventh Lesson

NOUVEAU VOCABULAIRE POUR CETTE LEÇON

quelle heure¹ est-il?? (kèl è ^o r èteel)	what time is it?
à moins (a mwè ⁿ)	for less
nouveau, m. (noovô)	new
nouvelle, f. (noovèl)	new
s'arrêter⁴ (sarètay)	to stop
chez³ Jean (shay zhâ ⁿ)	at John's place
chez³ lui (shay liie)	at his place
un ami, m. (e ⁿ namee)	a friend
une amie, f. (ünamee)	a friend
donner (donay)	to give
un agent de police (azhâ ⁿ d ^e polees)	a policeman (city)
le gendarme (zhâ ⁿ darm)	the state policeman
s'appeler (saplay)	to be called, named
le reste (rèst)	the rest, remainder
encore (â ⁿ kor)	again, still, yet
en effet (â ⁿ ayfè)	in reality, in fact, indeed, to be sure
un état (e ⁿ nayta)	a state, condition

il est une heure (eel ètün è⁰r)

il est deux heures (de⁰zè⁰r)

casser (kasay)

réparer (rayparay)

détraqué (daytrakay)

sale (sal)

indiquer (èⁿdeekay)

examiner (ègzameenay)

remplacer (ràⁿplasay)

pardon (pardêⁿ)

nettoyer (nètwayay)

moins (mwèⁿ)

it is one o'clock

it is two o'clock

to break

to repair

out of order

dirty

to indicate

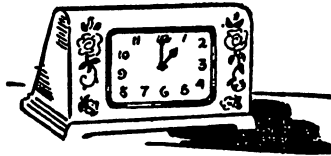
to examine

to replace

pardon (me)

to clean

less



THE CORTINA METHOD

L'HEURE • LA MONTRE • L'HORLOGER

(l^èo_r, la môⁿtr, lorlozhay) • The Time, the Watch, the Watchmaker

une horloge (orlozh)	a (public) clock
la pendule (pâ ⁿ dül)	the (wall) clock
le bracelet-montre (braslay mô ⁿ tr)	the wrist watch
un horloger (orlozhay)	a watchmaker
une heure (è ^o r)	an hour
la minute (meenüt)	the minute
la seconde ⁵ (s ^e gô ⁿ d)	the second
la montre en or (â ⁿ nor)	the gold watch
sonner (sonay)	to ring, strike
le ressort (r ^e sor)	the spring
le mouvement (moovmâ ⁿ)	the movement
le rubis (rübee)	ruby, jewel (of watch)
la montre (mô ⁿ tr)	the watch
une aiguille ⁵ (ègüeeey)	a hand (of a clock), needle
une horlogerie (orlozhree)	a watchmaker's shop
le verre (vèr)	the glass, crystal
avancer (avâ ⁿ say)	to be fast, to gain time
retarder (retarday)	to be slow, to lose time

FOOTNOTES: 1. Time (*lit.* hour). 2. observe that *il est*, in this type of expression, is invariable. 3. The preposition *chez* has no English equivalent. It means *to* or *at a place belonging to someone*, the nature of the place not being



specified. Following the preposition is a noun or a pronoun designating the owner of the place. All prepositions require the *disjunctive* form of the pronoun (see lesson V, note 17). The third singular disjunctive pronoun is *lui* (masc.), *elle*

CONVERSATION

1 Pardon, monsieur, pouvez-vous me dire l'heure?

2 Oui, monsieur, il est deux heures vingt.⁶

3 Est-il encore trois heures?

4 Oui, il est trois heures précises⁷.

5 Il n'est pas encore plus d'⁸une heure moins le quart.⁹

6 En effet, il n'est pas encore trois heures.

7 Est-ce que quatre heures n'ont pas encore sonné?

8 Oui, Pierre, votre montre n'est pas à l'heure.¹⁰ Je crois qu'elle avance de¹⁰ cinq minutes.

9 Au contraire, ma montre retarde d'¹⁰un quart d'heure.

10 Est-elle cassée?



11 Je crois qu'elle est arrêtée; elle doit être détraquée et il me faudra la porter chez³ l'horloger.

12 L'avez-vous remontée?¹¹

13 Oui, mais elle est sale et il faudra la faire¹² nettoyer.

14 Où y a-t-il un bon horloger pas¹³ trop cher?

(fem.). *Chez* is frequently translated *to* or *at the house of*, but it does not mean necessarily *house*; it may be a shop, office, or store. It also has a figurative sense: *chez les Américains* (among the Americans); *chez Balzac* (with Balzac). 4. In the intransitive sense "*to stop*" translates as a reflexive; in the transitive sense it is not reflexive. Example: *L'automobile s'arrête*: the automobile stops; but:

PRONUNCIATION	TRANSLATION
1 pardô ⁿ , m ^e sy ^e °, poovay voo m ^e deer lê ^r ?	Pardon (me), sir, can you tell me the time (<i>lit.</i> the hour)?
2 wee, m ^e sy ^e °, eelè de ^o zè ^o r vè ⁿ .	Yes, sir, it is twenty minutes past two (<i>lit.</i> two hours twenty).
3 èteel â ⁿ kor trwazè ^o r?	Is it three o'clock yet?
4 wee, eelè trwazè ^o r prayseez.	Yes, it is exactly three o'clock.
5 eel nè pâzâ ⁿ kor plü dü ⁿ è ^o r mwè ⁿ l ^e kar.	It is not yet more than a quarter to one (<i>lit.</i> one hour less the quarter).
6 â ⁿ nayfè, eel nè pâzâ ⁿ kor trwa- zè ^o r.	In fact it is not yet three o'clock.
7 èsk ^e katr è ^o r nô ⁿ pâzâ ⁿ kor sonay?	Hasn't four o'clock rung yet?
8 wee, pyèr, votr ^e mô ⁿ tr nè pâza lè ^o r. zh ^e krwa kèl avâ ⁿ s d ^e sè ⁿ meenüt.	Yes, Peter, your watch is not on time. I believe it is five min- utes fast (<i>lit.</i> advances by five minutes).
9 ô kô ⁿ trèr, ma mô ⁿ tr ^e r ^e tard de ⁿ kar dè ^o r.	On the contrary, my watch is a quarter of an hour slow (<i>lit.</i> retards by a quarter hour).
10 ètèl kasay?	Is it broken?
11 zh ^e krwa kèl ètarètay; èl dwatètr ^e daytrakay ay eel m ^e fôdra la portay shay lorlozhay.	I think it has stopped; it must be out of order and I shall have to take it (<i>lit.</i> it will be necessary for me to carry it) to the watch- maker's.
12 lavay voo r ^e mô ⁿ tay?	Have you wound it up?
13 wee, mè(z) èl è sal ay eel fôdra la fèr nètwayay.	Yes, but it is dirty and it will have to be cleaned.
14 oo ee ateel e ⁿ bonorlozhay pâ trô shèr?	Where is there a good inexpensive watchmaker (<i>lit.</i> not too dear)?

J'arrête l'automobile: I stop the automobile. 5. Note exceptional pronunciation. 6. Note literal translation. To subtract minutes from next hour, say *moins* (less). Example: *ten minutes to three:* trois heures moins dix (*lit.* three hours less ten). 7. English uses adverb whereas French uses adjective. 8. When the word *than* occurs before a number or a fraction, it is translated as *de*. 9. For fractions of

15 Au quarante-cinq rue de Vaugirard.

16 Comment s'appelle cet horloger?

17 Il s'appelle¹⁴ Greuzard.

18 Le quarante-cinq est près du Boulevard Raspail, n'est-ce pas?

19 Oui, monsieur, c'est entre le Boulevard Raspail et la rue d'Assas.

20 Monsieur Greuzard est-il là, s'il vous plaît?¹⁰



21 A votre service, monsieur, qu'est-ce que je peux faire pour vous?

22 Un de mes amis m'a donné votre adresse; voudriez¹⁵-vous me¹⁰ réparer cette montre?

23 Oui, monsieur, mais je dois l'examiner d'abord.

24 Quand est-ce qu'elle sera prête? Combien est-ce que cela¹⁷ coûtera?

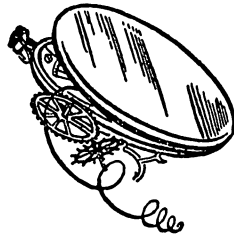
25 Elle sera prête dans cinq jours et cela vous¹⁸ coûtera cent cinquante francs.

26 Cela me semble un peu cher. Ne pourriez-vous pas le faire à moins?

27 Non, monsieur, c'est impossible; le ressort est cassé et je dois le remplacer.

28 Est-ce que le reste du mouvement est en bon état?

29 Oui, monsieur, mais je dois aussi remplacer le verre.

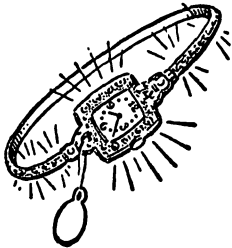


hour, say, for example: *a quarter past three*: trois heures et quart (*lit.* three hours and a quarter); *half past three*: trois heures et demie (*lit.* three hours and a half); *a quarter to four*: quatre heures moins le quart (*lit.* four hours less the quarter). 10. Idiom. 11. In compound tenses, past participles conjugated with *avoir* agree with the *preceding direct object*; past participles conjugated

- 15 ô karâ^{nt} sè^{nk} rü d^e vôzheerar. At (number) forty-five Vaugirard Street.
- 16 komâⁿ sapèl sètorlozhay? What is that watchmaker's name (*lit.* how does that watchmaker call himself)?
- 17 eel sapèl gre^ozar. His name is (*lit.* he calls himself) Greuzard.
- 18 l^e karâ^{nt} sè^{nk} è prè dü boolvar raspay, nè^s pâ? Number forty-five is near Raspail Boulevard, isn't it?
- 19 wee, m^esy^e^o, sètâⁿ^e l^e boolvar raspay ay la rü dasas. Yes, sir, it is between Raspail Boulevard and Assas Street.
- 20 m^esy^e^o gre^ozar èteel la, seel voo plè? Is Mr. Greuzard there, please?
- 21 a votr^e sèrvees, m^esy^e^o, kèsk^o zh^e pe^o fèr poor voo? At your service, sir, what can I do for you?
- 22 eⁿ d^e mayzamee ma donay votr adrès; voodreeay voo m^e ray-paray sèt m^otr? One of my friends gave me your address; would you repair this watch for me?
- 23 wee, m^esy^e^o, mè zh^e dwa lèg-zameenay dabor. Yes, sir, but I must examine it first.
- 24 kâ^{nt}èskèl s^era prèt? k^obyèⁿ èsk^e s^ela kootra? When will it be ready? How much will it cost?
- 25 èl s^era prèt dâⁿ sèⁿ zhoor ay s^ela voo kootra sâⁿ sè^{nk}â^{nt} frâⁿ. It will be ready in five days and it will cost you one hundred and fifty francs.
- 26 s^ela m^e sâⁿbl eⁿ pe^o shèr. n^e pooreeay voo l^e fèr a mwèⁿ? That seems to me a little dear. Couldn't you do it for less?
- 27 n^on, m^esy^e^o, sètèⁿposeebl; l^e r^esor è kasay ay zh^e dwa l^e râⁿplasay. No, sir, it is impossible; the spring is broken and I must replace it.
- 28 èsk^e l^e rèst dü moovmâ ètâⁿ bonayta? Is the rest of the movement in good condition?
- 29 wee, m^esy^e^o, mè zh^e dwa(z)ô-see râⁿplasay l^e vèr. Yes, sir, but I must also replace the crystal.

with *être* agree with the *subject*; past participles of reflexive verbs, although conjugated with *être*, agree with the *preceding direct object*. 12. Causal use of *faire*. See lesson IV, note 2. 13. See lesson III, note 24. 14. *Appeler* means *to call*; *s'appeler* means *to call oneself*. Note English translations given for this expression. This verb doubles the "t" any time it is followed by a mute e verb

30 Très bien. Au revoir, monsieur, et à¹⁰ jeudi.



31 Avez-vous des montres en¹⁹ or?

32 Oui, et ma femme a un bracelet-montre en or.

33 Est-ce que les montres en diamants sont chères?

34 Une montre en diamants est toujours chère.

35 Pouvez-vous me dire combien de minutes il y a dans une heure?

36 Une heure se compose de soixante minutes et une minute de soixante secondes.

37 Qu'est-ce qui indique l'heure dans une pendule?

38 Les deux aiguilles indiquent l'heure, la grande aiguille²⁰ indique les minutes et la petite aiguille les heures.

ending. 15. Conditional of *vouloir*. 16. Indirect object frequently called DATIVE OF REFERENCE. The person *for whom* something is done is commonly expressed as an indirect object pronoun before the verb. 17. Normally *it* with imprecise antecedent is *ce* (see lesson VI, note 8), if it occurs before the verb *to be*. Before other verbs it becomes *cela*. 18. Indirect object since *cent cin-*

- 30 trè byèⁿ. ôr^(e)vwar, m^esyè^o, ay a zhe^odee. Very well. Good day (*lit.* until seeing each other again), sir, and until Thursday.
- 31 avay voo day môⁿtr âⁿnor? Have you any gold watches?
- 32 wee, ay ma fam a eⁿ braslay môⁿtr âⁿnor. Yes, and my wife has a gold wrist watch.
- 33 èsk^e lay môⁿtr âⁿ dyamâⁿ sôⁿ shèr? Are diamond watches expensive?
- 34 ün môⁿtr âⁿ dyamâⁿ è toozhoor shèr. A diamond watch is always expensive.
- 35 poovay voo m^e deer kôⁿbyèⁿ d^e meenüt eelya dâⁿzün è^or? Can you tell me how many minutes there are in an hour?
- 36 ün è^or s^e kôⁿpôz d^e swasâ^{nt} meenüt ay ün meenüt d^e swasâ^{nt} s^egônd. An hour is composed of sixty minutes and a minute of sixty seconds.
- 37 kèskee èⁿdeek le^or dâⁿzün pâⁿ-dül? How does the clock indicate the time? (*lit.* what indicates the hour in a clock?)
- 38 lay de^{oz} ègüey èⁿdeek lè^or, la grând ègüey èⁿdeek lay meenüt ay la p^etet ègüey layzè^or. The two hands indicate the time, the large hand for the minutes and the small hand for the hours.



quante francs is the direct object. Note this important principle: a French verb will not have two direct objects; one of them must be indirect. 19. The material of which a thing is made is put into a prepositional phrase beginning with *en* or *de*. The choice between the two is generally idiomatic. 20. *Grande aiguille* and *petite aiguille* are the technical terms for *hour hand* and *minute hand*.



HUITIÈME LEÇON

Eighth Lesson

NOUVEAU VOCABULAIRE POUR CETTE LEÇON

établir (<i>aytableer</i>)	to establish, draw up
n'importe¹ quel (<i>nèⁿport kèl</i>)	any, no matter which
comment va...? (<i>komâⁿ va</i>)	how is...?
la prouration (<i>prokürasyôⁿ</i>)	the power of attorney
la restriction (<i>rèstreeksyôⁿ</i>)	the restriction
la transaction (<i>träⁿzaksyôⁿ</i>)	the transaction
régler (<i>rayglay</i>)	to settle, regulate
acheter (<i>ashtay</i>)	to buy
au comptant (<i>ô kôⁿtâⁿ</i>)	for cash
vendre (<i>vâⁿdr</i>)	to sell
le crédit (<i>kraydee</i>)	the credit
à crédit (<i>a kraydee</i>)	on credit
importer (<i>èⁿportay</i>)	to import
exporter (<i>èksportay</i>)	to export
signer (<i>seenyay</i>)	to sign
sans doute (<i>sâⁿ doot</i>)	without doubt
un bénéfice (<i>baynayfees</i>)	a profit
le notaire (<i>notèr</i>)	the notary
le témoin (<i>taymwèⁿ</i>)	the witness
une espèce (<i>èspès</i>)	a kind
geler (<i>zh^elay</i>)	to freeze

espérer (èspayray)	to hope
la banque (bâ ⁿ k)	the bank
l'argent , m. (larzhâ ⁿ)	the money
le guichet (geeshay)	pay-window
le tabac (taba)	the tobacco
le sucre (sükr)	sugar
les céréales , f. (sayrayal)	cereals
le pétrole (paytrol)	petroleum
l'étain , m. (aytè ⁿ)	tin
partout (partoo)	everywhere
je vais² bien (mal) (zh ^e vay byè ⁿ – mal)	I am well (ill)
le raisin (rèzè ⁿ)	the grape
la figue (feeg)	fig
la banane (banan)	banana
l'ananas , m. (anana)	pineapple
la cacahuète (kakaiùèt)	peanut
l'huile , f. (lüeel)	oil
le blé (blay)	wheat
le cuir (küeer)	leather

THE CORTINA METHOD

LE COMMERCE

(l^e komèrs) • Trade

le marchand (marshâ ⁿ)	the merchant
le taux (tô)	rate
le change (shâ ⁿ zh)	exchange
la traite (trèt)	draft
le produit (prodüee)	product
les affaires , f. (layzafèr)	business
les valeurs , f. (valè ^{or})	the securities
la viande frigorifiée (freegoreefyay)	frozen meat
l'engrais , m. (â ⁿ grè)	fertilizer
les chapeaux de paille (shapô d ^e pây)	straw hats
le vin (vè ⁿ)	the wine
vin blanc (vè ⁿ blâ ⁿ)	white wine
vin rouge (vè ⁿ roozh)	red wine
la maison (mèzô ⁿ)	the house, firm
la succursale (sükürsal)	branch (of a firm)
le pamplemousse (pâ ⁿ pl ^e moos)	grapefruit
la noix de coco (nwâ d ^e kokô)	cocoanut
un échange (ayshâ ⁿ zh)	an exchange (transfer)

FOOTNOTES: 1. Idiom: *no matter which*. 2. Idiom: *I go well*. 3. See lesson II, note 35. 4. *Longtemps* is an adverb in French. Do not try to put an article in front of it. 5. Idiom. 6. See note 3 above. Nouns also normally introduce dependent infinitives with *de*. 7. Normal expectation would be a partitive before



this adjective. Observe that partitive is not used with *certain*. 8. With *de* in sense of *from* with feminine countries omit the usual article. 9. See lesson II, note 11. 10. Future of *faire*. 11. In spite of verb *être* construction is same as

CONVERSATION

- 1 Comment allez-vous? Je suis très content de³ vous voir.
- 2 Je vais très bien, merci; et vous?
- 3 Pas trop mal, merci.
- 4 Comptez-vous rester longtemps⁴ à Paris?
- 5 Non, monsieur, je suis venu pour quelques mois seulement pour affaires.



- 6 Et comment vont les choses en Afrique du Nord? Vous y serez sans doute avant le printemps.
- 7 Oui, monsieur, d'ici là⁵ j'espère pouvoir régler toutes mes affaires.
- 8 Avez-vous l'intention de⁶ faire de l'importation?⁵

- 9 J'aimerais importer le café, le tabac, le sucre, la laine et certaines⁷ espèces de fruits.
- 10 Est-ce que vous pensez importer ces produits de toutes les régions méditerranéennes?
- 11 De partout; d'⁸Egypte je recevrai du tabac, du coton, du sucre et des céréales, et, de⁸ Grèce, des raisins et des figues.
- 12 Et qu'est-ce que vous recevrez des colonies françaises?
- 13 Eh bien, d'Algérie je recevrai des fruits⁹, c'est-à-dire⁵ des oranges, des bananes, des pamplemousses; de Tunisie, de l'huile d'olive et du blé; du Maroc, du cuir; et du Sénégal des cacahuètes et des noix de coco.



that described in note 6 above. 12. A few cities in French have articles as part of the name: *Le Havre*, *Le Caire*, *La Haye* (The Hague, which has an article in

PRONUNCIATION

- 1 komâⁿtalay voo? zh^e süee trè kôⁿtâⁿ d^e voo vwar.
- 2 zh^e vay trè byèⁿ, mërsee; ay voo?
- 3 pâ trô mal, mërsee.
- 4 kôⁿtay voo rèstay lôⁿtâⁿ a patee?
- 5 nôⁿ, m^esye^o, zh^e süee v^enü poor kèlk^e mwa sè^olmâⁿ poor afèr.
- 6 ay komâⁿ vòⁿ lay shôz âⁿna-freek dü nor? voozee s^eray sâⁿ doot avâⁿ l^e prèⁿtâⁿ.
- 7 wee, m^esye^o, deesee la zhèspèr poovwar rayglay toot mayza-fèr.
- 8 avay voo lèⁿtâⁿsyôⁿ d^e fèr d^e lèⁿportasyôⁿ?
- 9 zhèmèrè(z) èⁿportay l^e kafay, l^e taba, l^e sükr, la lèn ay sèrtèn-zèspès d^e früee.
- 10 èsk^e voo pâⁿsay èⁿportay say produèe d^e toot lay rayzhyôⁿ maydeetèranayèn?
- 11 d^e partoo, dayzheept zh^e r^es^e-vray dü taba, dü kotôⁿ, dü sükr ay day sayrayal, ay, d^e grès, day rèzèⁿ ay day feeg.
- 12 ay kèsk^e voo r^es^evray day kolonee frâⁿsèz?
- 13 ay byèⁿ, dalzhayree zh^e r^es^e-vray day früee, sètadeer dayzorâⁿzh, day banan, day pâⁿplemoos; d^e tünèzee, d^e lüeel doleev ay dü blay; dü marok, dü küeer; ay dü saynaygal day kakauët ay day nwâ d^e kokô.

TRANSLATION

- How are (*lit.* go) you? I am very glad to see you.
- I am (*lit.* go) very well, thanks; and you?
- Quite well (*lit.* not very badly), thanks.
- Do you expect to remain a long time in Paris?
- No, sir, I came for a few months only on (*lit.* for) business.
- And how are things in North Africa? You will doubtless be there before spring.
- Yes, sir, from now until then (*lit.* from here to there) I hope to be able to settle all my business.
- Do you intend to do importing?
- I should like to import coffee, tobacco, sugar, wool and certain kinds of fruit.
- Do you think you will import (*lit.* to import) these products from all the Mediterranean regions?
- From everywhere; from Egypt I shall receive tobacco, cotton, sugar, and cereals, and, from Greece, grapes and figs.
- And what will you receive from the French colonies?
- Well, from Algeria I shall receive fruit, that is to say oranges, bananas, grapefruit; from Tunisia, olive oil and wheat; from Morocco, leather; and from Sénégal peanuts and cocoanuts.

English also). The normal rules of contraction apply to the first two examples, in which case the capitalization of the article disappears. 13. The *long* RELATIVE

- 14 Avez-vous l'intention de vendre au comptant ou à crédit?
- 15 A certains marchands j'ouvrirai un crédit à courte échéance;⁵ ou bien je ferai¹⁰ un échange de produits.
- 16 Comment comptez-vous établir ce commerce?
- 17 Mon idée est d'¹¹établir une succursale de ma maison au¹² Caire, à la tête de laquelle¹³ il y aura un de mes frères.
- 18 Aura-t-il besoin d'une procuration de la part⁵ de votre maison pour légaliser ses transactions?
- 19 Naturellement; il en¹⁴ aura besoin pour acheter¹⁵ et vendre au⁵ nom de la maison.
- 20 Pour établir une procuration à qui¹⁶ faut-il avoir recours?⁵



- 21 Il faut la faire établir par un notaire et devant deux témoins.
- 22 Quel est le taux du change aujourd'hui?
- 23 Le change est assez favorable.
- 24 Est-ce que je pourrais toucher une lettre de change en dollars?
- 25 A présent il y a des restrictions sur les valeurs et monnaies¹⁷ étrangères; mais je crois que vous pourriez toucher en argent français une traite sur n'importe quelle banque française.
- 26 J'aimerais aussi faire de l'exportation en Turquie.

PRONOUN (*pronom relatif composé*): *lequel*, masc.; *laquelle*, fem.; *lesquels*, masc. pl.; *lesquelles*, fem. pl., having numerous functions. It is used to distinguish antecedents in the unusual cases where there is a possibility of ambiguity. Its use is obligatory, as in the example above, when a relative referring to a thing is placed after a preposition. The same forms are also used as the interrogative pronoun with an antecedent, translating the English *which (one)* or *which (ones)*.

- 14 *avay voo lèntâⁿsyôⁿ d^e vâⁿdr ô kôⁿtâⁿ oo a kraydee?* Do you intend to sell for cash or on credit?
- 15 *a sèrtèⁿ marshâⁿ zhoovreeray eⁿ kraydee a koort ayshayâⁿs; oo byèⁿ zh^e f^ray eⁿnaysâⁿzh d^e prodüee.* For certain merchants I shall open up a short term credit; or else I shall make an exchange of products.
- 16 *komâⁿ kôⁿtay voo aytableer s^e komèrs?* How do you expect to establish this business?
- 17 *moneeday è daytableer ün sü-kürsal d^e ma mèzôⁿ ô kèr, a la tèt d^e lakèl eelyôra eⁿ d^e may frèr.* My idea is to establish a branch of my company at Cairo, at the head of which will be (*lit.* there will be) one of my brothers.
- 18 *ôrateel b^ezwèⁿ düⁿ prokürasyôⁿ d^e la par d^e votr^e mèzôⁿ poor laygaleezay say trâⁿzaksyôⁿ?* Will he need a power of attorney on behalf of (*lit.* from the part of) your company to legalize his transactions?
- 19 *natürèlmân; eel âⁿnôra b^ezwèⁿ poor ashtay ay vâⁿdr ô nôⁿ d^e la mèzôⁿ.* Naturally; he will need one to buy and sell in the name of the company.
- 20 *poor aytableer ün prokürasyôⁿ a kee fôteel avwar r^ekoor?* In order to draw up a power of attorney, to whom is it necessary to have recourse?
- 21 *il fô la fèraytableer par eⁿ notèr ay d^evâⁿ de^o taymwèⁿ.* It must be drawn up by a notary and before two witnesses.
- 22 *kèl è l^e tô dü shâⁿzh ôzhoordüee?* What is the rate of exchange to-day?
- 23 *l^e shâⁿzh étasay favorabl.* The exchange is rather favorable.
- 24 *èsk^e zh^e poorè tooshay ün lètr^e d^e shâⁿzh âⁿ dolar?* Could I cash a letter of exchange in dollars?
- 25 *a prayzâⁿ eelya day rèstreeksyôⁿ sür lay valè^r ay monè(z) aytrâⁿzhèr; mè zh^e krwa k^e voo pooreeay tooshay âⁿnarzhâⁿ frâⁿsè ün trèt sür nèⁿport kèl bâⁿk frâⁿsèz.* At present there are restrictions on foreign securities and currencies; but I think you could cash in French money a draft on any French bank.
- 26 *zhèmèrè(z) ôsee fèr d^e lèksportasyôⁿ âⁿ türkee.* I should like also to do some exporting to Turkey.

14. *En* can also mean of one as it does here. 15. See lesson II, note 22. 16. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN. For persons it is *qui*, subject; *qui*, object; *qui*, object of a preposition (translation *who* or *whom*). For things: *qu'est-ce qui*, subject; *que*, object; *quoi* object of preposition (translation *what*). For interrogative with antecedent, see note 13 above. 17. This is a technical use of *monnaie*. See lesson III, note 10.



NEUVIÈME LEÇON

Ninth Lesson

NOUVEAU VOCABULAIRE POUR CETTE LEÇON

mettre le couvert ¹ (mètr ^e l ^e koovèr)	to set the table
saignant ² (sènyâ ⁿ)	rare
tout de suite ³ (tood süet)	immediately
la pomme de terre ⁴ (pom d ^e tèr)	potato
les pommes de terre en purée ⁵ (â ⁿ püray)	mashed potatoes
la bisque de homard ⁶ (beesk d ^e omar)	cream of lobster
le verre (vèr)	the glass
la tasse (tâs)	the cup
le filet (feelè)	the fillet
la carafe (karaf)	decanter
la salade (salad)	salad
la bouteille (bootèy)	bottle
le poivre (pwavr)	pepper
la moutarde (mootard)	mustard
la nappe (nap)	the tablecloth

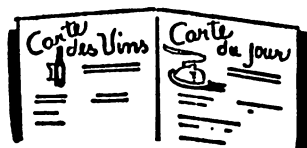
glacé (glasay)	iced
le plat (pla)	the course
le plateau (platô)	tray
la serviette (sèrvyèt)	napkin
le garçon (garsô ⁿ)	waiter
le couteau (kootô)	the knife
la fourchette (foorshèt)	the fork
la cuiller ³ (küeyèr)	the spoon
une assiette (asyèt)	a plate
les poireaux , masc. (pwarô)	the leeks
l'assaisonnement , m. (asèzonmâ ⁿ)	the seasoning
au contraire (ô kô ⁿ trèr)	on the contrary
l'addition , fem. (adeesyô ⁿ)	bill
le café (kafay)	sidewalk restaurant
l'argenterie , fem. (larzhâ ⁿ tree)	silverware
le poulet cocotte (poolè kokot)	chicken cooked in an earthenware dish

THE CORTINA METHOD

LE RESTAURANT • LA TABLE • LA NOURRITURE

(1^e restorân, la tabl, la nooreetür) • The Restaurant, the Table, the Food

le vinaigre (veenègr)	the vinegar
le sel (sèl)	salt
la laitue (lètü)	lettuce
la tomate (tomat)	tomato
le légume (laygüm)	vegetable
une omelette (omlèt)	an omelet
un appétit (apaytee)	an appetite



FOOTNOTES: 1. Lit. *to put the cover*. 2. *Saignant*: here an adjective but actually the present participle of *saigner*, to bleed. 3. Note unusual pronunciation. 4. Lit. *apple of the earth*. 5. Lit. *potatoes in a thick sauce*. 6. *Homard*: note aspirate *h* which is clearly indicated by the failure to make elision. 7. An invariable adjective, i.e. *vit* does not change in feminine. 8. Imperative form of the reflexive verb *s'asseoir*. The *vous* is direct pronoun object. With AFFIRMATIVE IMPERATIVE

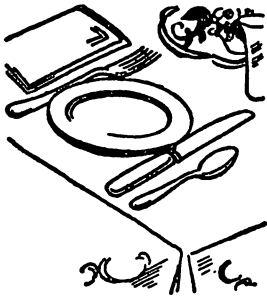
le sucrier (sükreeay)	sugar bowl
le rognon (ronyô ⁿ)	kidney
le pourboire (poorbwar)	tip
la carte du jour (kart dü zhoor)	the menu (for the day)
le menu (m ^e nü)	menu
la carte des vins (kart day vè ⁿ)	wine list



only, pronoun objects come after verb and are attached to it by a hyphen. 9. Very common idiom. *Venir de+infinitive* means *to have just . . .* Example: *Je viens de manger une omelette*: I have just eaten an omelet. 10. In a passive construction many verbs take *de*, rather than *par*, in the sense of *by* or *with* when there is no action involved. 11. Irregular adjective: *blanc*, masc.; *blanche*, fem. Color adjectives always come after their nouns. 12. Observe that *que* is the

CONVERSATION

- 1 Voulez-vous me dire où je pourrai trouver un restaurant?
- 2 Sur le Boulevard Saint-Michel il y a plusieurs⁷ restaurants où on mange bien.
- 3 Voudriez-vous m'accompagner?
- 4 Avec grand plaisir.
- 5 Asseyez-vous⁸ à cette table. Le garçon vient de⁹ mettre le couvert.
- 6 Cette table est couverte d'¹⁰une nappe blanche.¹¹



7 Et qu'¹²est-ce qu'il y a sur la table?

8 Sur la table il y a l'argenterie: des fourchettes, des couteaux et des cuillers. Il y a aussi des serviettes, des assiettes, une carafe d'eau glacée et plusieurs verres.

9 Appelons le garçon.

10 Garçon, le menu et la carte des vins, s'il vous plaît.

11 Je désire une bisque de homard, un filet mignon¹³ avec des pommes de terre en purée et des poireaux, et une salade.

12 Je n'aime pas la viande trop cuite.

13 On dit, n'est-ce pas, que la viande saignante est plus nourrissante?

object of *il y a*, whereas in English it is a predicate nominative. 13. *Mignon*, masc., *mignonne*, fem., means *darling*, *pretty*, *delicate*. The term *filet mignon* is used also in English to designate a specially delicate cut of beef tenderloin. 14. See note 8 above. With AFFIRMATIVE IMPERATIVE, use disjunctive pronoun in first and second person singular. Otherwise pronoun objects have same form as

PRONUNCIATION

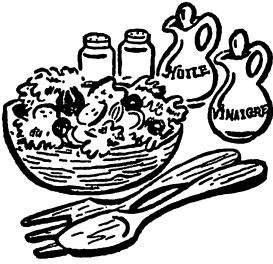
TRANSLATION

- 1 *voalay voo m^e deer oo zh^e pooray troovay eⁿ rèstorâⁿ?* Will you (*lit.* are you willing) tell me where I can (*lit.* shall be able to) find a restaurant?
- 2 *sür l^e boolvâr s^èn meeshèl eelya plüzyè^r rèstorâⁿ oo ôⁿ mâⁿzh byèⁿ.* On Saint-Michel Boulevard there are several good restaurants (*lit.* where one eats well).
- 3 *voodreay voo makôⁿpányay?* Would you like to accompany me?
- 4 *avèk grâⁿ plèzeer.* With great pleasure.
- 5 *asèyay voo a sèt tabl. l^e garsôⁿ vyèⁿ d^e mètr^e l^e koovèr.* Sit down (*lit.* seat yourself) at this table. The waiter has just set it (*lit.* comes from putting the cover).
- 6 *sèt tabl è koovèrt düⁿ nap blâⁿsh.* This table is covered with a white tablecloth.
- 7 *ay kèskeelya sür la tabl?* And what is on the table?
- 8 *sür la tabl eelya larzhâⁿtree: day foorshèt, day kootô ay day küeeyèr. eelya ôsee day sèrvyèt, dayzasyèt, ün karaf dô glasay ay plüzyè^r vèr.* On the table is the silverware: forks, knives, and spoons. There are also napkins, plates, a decanter of ice water and several glasses.
- 9 *aplôⁿ l^e garsôⁿ.* Let's call the waiter.
- 10 *garsôⁿ, l^e m^enü ay la kart day vèⁿ, seel voo plè.* Waiter, the menu and the wine list, please.
- 11 *zh^e dayzeer ün beesk d^e omar, eⁿ feelè meenyôⁿ avèk day pom d^e tèr âⁿ püray ay day pwarô, ay ün salad.* I wish some cream of lobster, a *filet mignon* with mashed potatoes and leeks, and a salad.
- 12 *zh^e nè^m pâ la vyâⁿd trô küeet.* I do not like meat too well done (*lit.* cooked).
- 13 *ôⁿ dee, nè^s pâ, k^e la vyâⁿd sènyâ^{nt} è plü nooreesâ^{nt}?* They say (*lit.* one says), don't they, that rare meat is more nourishing?

conjunctive pronoun objects which occur before verb. 15. In compounds *demi* does not agree. But it does agree in *une heure et demie* where it is an adjective used as a noun. Any adjective used as a noun takes the gender of the noun which it replaces: *the red one* (assuming *one* to refer to *the book*) is in French *le rouge*. Note that in such an expression there is no word corresponding to the English *one*.

14 Apportez-moi¹⁴ un poulet cocotte et une demi¹⁵-bouteille de vin rouge ordinaire.

15 Voulez-vous mettre du sel, de l'huile et du vinaigre sur votre salade?



16 A moins qu'elle ne soit¹⁶ déjà assaisonnée.

17 Je n'ai pas d'¹⁷appétit parce que j'ai déjeuné assez tard, à onze heures, et j'aimerais une omelette aux rognons.

18 Ce plat est un peu salé.

19 Au contraire, je ne le trouve pas assez salé.

20 Voulez-vous bien me passer la cafetière? Je veux me servir du café dans cette tasse.

21 Voici le sucre, dans le sucrier.

22 Garçon, l'addition, s'il vous plaît. C'est combien?

23 Voici, monsieur; deux cent cinquante francs. Je vous apporte¹⁸ la monnaie tout de suite.

24 Très bien. Laissons un pourboire au garçon.



25 Et après ce dîner succulent ne croyez-vous pas que nous devrions faire une promenade?¹⁹

26 Cela me plairait beaucoup.

16. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE of *être*. French subjunctive rarely corresponds to English subjunctive and no general rule governs its use. At the outset it is easier to note the specific cases in which the subjunctive *must* be used *automatically* in French. For example, certain conjunctions: *quoique* (although), *avant que* (before), *à moins que* (unless), *pour que* (so that), automatically take subjunctive. Furthermore *à moins que* requires a pleonastic (*i.e.* superfluous) *ne* which has no meaning whatever. There are several other constructions, not all of them subjunctive, in

- 14 *aportay mwa eⁿ poolè kokot ay ün d^emeebootèy d^e vèⁿ roozh ordeenèr.* Bring me a *poulet cocote* and a half bottle of ordinary red wine.
- 15 *voolay voo mètr dü sèl, d^e lüeel ay dü veenègr sür votr^e salad?* Do you want to put some salt, oil and vinegar on your salad?
- 16 *a mwèⁿ kèl n^e swa dayzha asèzonay.* Unless it is already seasoned.
- 17 *zh^e nay pâ dapaytee parsk^e zhay dayzhèⁿay asay tar, a ôⁿz è^{or}, ay zhèmrè ün omlèt ô ronyôⁿ.* I have no appetite because I breakfasted rather late, at eleven o'clock, and I should like a kidney omelet.
- 18 *s^e pla ètèⁿ pe^o salay.* This course is a little salty.
- 19 *ô kôⁿtrèr, zh^e n^e l^e troov pâz-asay salay.* On the contrary, I don't find it is salty enough.
- 20 *voolay voo byèⁿ m^e pâsay la kaftyèr? zh^e ve^o m^e sèrveer dü kafay dâⁿ sèt tâs.* Will you kindly pass me the coffee pot? I want to serve myself some coffee in this cup.
- 21 *vwasee l^e sükr, dâⁿ l^e sükreeay.* Here is the sugar, in the sugar bowl.
- 22 *garsôⁿ, ladeesyôⁿ, seel voo plè. sè kôⁿbyèⁿ?* Waiter, the bill, please. How much is it (*lit.* it is how much)?
- 23 *vwasee, m^esye^o; de^o sâⁿ sèⁿkâⁿt frâⁿ. zh^e voozaport la monè tood süet.* Here it is, sir; two hundred fifty francs. I will bring you the change immediately.
- 24 *trè byèⁿ. lèsôⁿ eⁿ poorbwar ô garsôⁿ.* Very good. Let's leave a tip for the waiter.
- 25 *ay aprè s^e deenay sükülâⁿ n^e krwayay voo pâ k^e noo d^evreeôⁿ fèr ün promnad?* And after this succulent dinner don't you think that we ought to take (*lit.* to make) a walk?
- 26 *s^ela m^e plèrè bôkoo.* That would please me very much.

which *pleonastic "ne"* is required. 17. SHORT PARTITIVE AFTER NEGATIVE VERB. Review first lesson II, notes 18 and 37 and lesson I, note 9. *New rule:* after negative verb partitive construction consists only of *de*, not the usual *de + article*. 18. Note special force of present here where English uses future. In a promise or a threat the present is used, rather than the future, to give greater vividness and inevitability to the idea. 19. Idiom. *Lit. to make a walk.*



DIXIÈME LEÇON

Tenth Lesson

NOUVEAU VOCABULAIRE POUR CETTE LEÇON

meubler (<i>mè^oblay</i>)	to furnish
choisir (<i>shwazeer</i>)	to choose
parfois (<i>parfwa</i>)	sometimes
quelquefois (<i>kèlk^efwa</i>)	sometimes
confortable (<i>kôⁿfortabl</i>)	comfortable
un invité (<i>èⁿveetay</i>)	a guest
la banlieue (<i>hâⁿlye^o</i>)	the suburbs
laver (<i>lavay</i>)	to wash
la vaisselle (<i>vèsèl</i>)	the dishes
un escalier (<i>èskalyay</i>)	a stairway
un ascenseur (<i>asâⁿsè^or</i>)	an elevator
la clef¹ (<i>klay</i>)	key
le jardin (<i>zhardèⁿ</i>)	garden
la fontaine (<i>fôⁿtèn</i>)	fountain
la cour (<i>koor</i>)	(inner) court
la chambre à coucher³ (<i>shâⁿbr a kooshay</i>)	the bedroom
le rez-de-chaussée² (<i>raydshôsay</i>)	ground floor
l'électricité, fem. (<i>laylèktreeseetay</i>)	electricity
allumer (<i>alümay</i>)	to light, turn light on
éteindre (<i>aytèⁿdr</i>)	extinguish, turn light out

le miroir (<i>meerwar</i>)	the mirror
la table de toilette (<i>tabl d^e twalèt</i>)	dressing table
la glacière (<i>glasyèr</i>)	the refrigerator
la lampe (<i>lâⁿp</i>)	lamp
le tableau (<i>tablô</i>)	picture
la serviette (<i>sèrvyèt</i>)	towel
le matelas (<i>matla</i>)	mattress
le bois (<i>bwa</i>)	wood
un étage (<i>aytazh</i>)	a floor
la pièce (<i>pyès</i>)	room
le salon (<i>salôⁿ</i>)	living room
le cabinet (<i>kabeenè</i>)	the toilet
la baignoire (<i>bènywar</i>)	bath tub
la cuisine (<i>küezeen</i>)	kitchen
un évier (<i>ayvyay</i>)	a kitchen sink
la porte (<i>port</i>)	door
la fenêtr (<i>f^enètr</i>)	window
le rideau (<i>reedô</i>)	curtain
le gaz (<i>gâz</i>)	gas
la lumière (<i>lümyèr</i>)	light

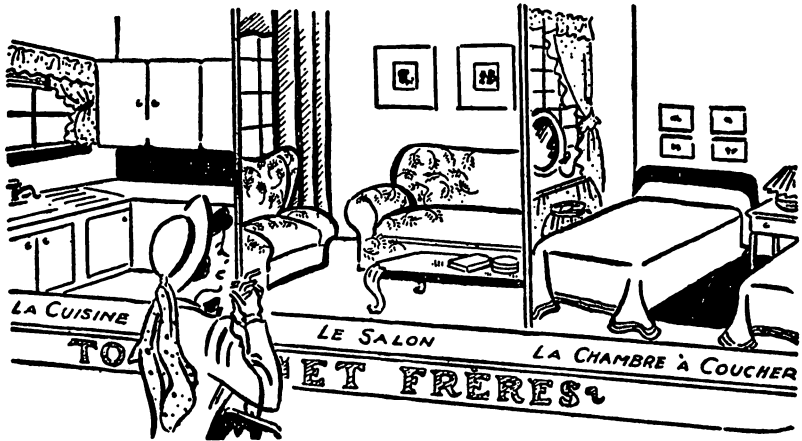
THE CORTINA METHOD

LA MAISON • LE MOBILIER

(la mèzôⁿ, l^e mobeelya) • The House, the Furniture

le canapé (<i>kanapay</i>)	the sofa
la commode (<i>komod</i>)	bureau
le meuble (<i>mè^{obl}</i>)	piece of furniture
une armoire (<i>armwar</i>)	a wardrobe
le tapis (<i>tapee</i>)	the rug
le lit (<i>lee</i>)	bed
la couverture (<i>koovèrtür</i>)	cover, blanket
le drap (<i>dra</i>)	sheet
un oreiller (<i>orèyay</i>)	a pillow
le fauteuil (<i>fôtè^{oy}</i>)	armchair
la chaise (<i>shèz</i>)	chair
la salle de bains (<i>sal d^e bèⁿ</i>)	bathroom
la cuisinière (<i>küeezeenyèr</i>)	kitchen range
la bibliothèque (<i>beebleeotèk</i>)	library

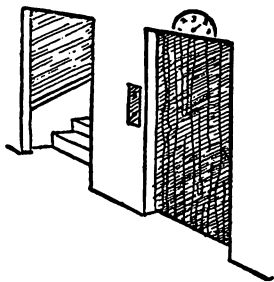
FOOTNOTES: 1. Note unusual pronunciation. 2. Lit. *on a level with the road*. In the European system the *first floor* (*premier étage*) is not the *ground floor* (*rez-de-chaussée*) but the first floor up, that is, the *second floor* in the American system. 3. Lit. *the chamber for going to bed*. 4. *Habiter* is used both transitively and intransitively, that is, with or without the preposition *dans*. *Demeurer*, meaning the



same thing, is intransitive only. 5. Idiom. 6. When the REFLEXIVE PRONOUN is used in apposition to another word, the reflexive is formed by taking the disjunctive pronoun and adding *même*. Observe that the word order is, in this case, the same as in the English. 7. *Aider* takes "à" to introduce a dependent infinitive.

CONVERSATION

- 1 J'habite⁴ dans une ville. Où habitez-vous?
- 2 Nous habitons en banlieue.
- 3 Est-ce que votre maison a beaucoup d'étages?
- 4 Nous habitons⁴ un immeuble à trois étages, c'est-à-dire sans compter le rez-de-chaussée.
- 5 Combien de pièces y a-t-il dans votre appartement?



- 6 Mon appartement est composé de sept pièces: le salon, la salle à manger, deux chambres à coucher, la cuisine, la salle de bains et la bibliothèque.
- 7 Est-ce qu'il faut monter l'escalier pour aller chez vous?
- 8 Pas du tout,⁵ il y a un ascenseur.
- 9 Avez-vous meublé l'appartement vous-même?⁶
- 10 Oui, mais naturellement ma femme m'a aidé à⁷ choisir le mobilier, qui est de style moderne.
- 11 Si cela ne vous dérange pas, j'aimerais beaucoup voir votre installation.
- 12 Au contraire, cela me ferait grand plaisir. Entrons d'abord dans⁸ le salon.
- 13 Voici un canapé, deux fauteuils, plusieurs petites tables avec leurs lampes et une jolie collection de tableaux.

tive. See lesson I, note 15. 8. *Entrer* is an intransitive verb and requires *dans*: *entrer dans*, to enter into. 9. See lesson VII, note 19. 10. In a question *how* is *comment*; but in an exclamatory sentence *how* is *comme* followed by *normal*

PRONUNCIATION

TRANSLATION

- 1 *zhabeet dâⁿzün veel. oo abeetay voo?* I live in a city. Where do you live?
- 2 *noozabeetôⁿ ân bâⁿlye^o.* We live in the suburbs.
- 3 *èsk^e votr^e mèzôⁿ a bôkoo day-tazh?* Does your house have many floors?
- 4 *noozabeetôⁿ eⁿneemè^obl a trwazaytazh, sètadeer sâⁿ kôⁿ-tay l^e raydshôsay.* We live in a three-story apartment house, that is to say, without counting the ground floor.
- 5 *kôⁿbyèⁿ d^e pyès ee ateel dâⁿ votr^e apart^emâⁿ?* How many rooms are there in your apartment?
- 6 *monapart^emâⁿ è kôⁿpôzay d^e sèt pyès: l^e salôⁿ, la sal a mâⁿzhay, de^o shâⁿbr a koo-shay, la küeezeen, la sal d^e bèⁿ ay la beebleeotèk.* My apartment is composed of seven rooms: the living room, the dining room, two bedrooms, the kitchen, the bathroom and the library.
- 7 *èskeel fô môⁿtay lèskalyay poor alay shay voo?* Does one have to go up the stairs to go to your place?
- 8 *pâ dü too, eelya eⁿnasâⁿsè^or.* Not at all, there is an elevator.
- 9 *avay voo mè^oblay lapart^emâⁿ voomèm?* Did you furnish the apartment yourself?
- 10 *wee, mè natürelmâⁿ ma fam ma éday a shwazeer l^e mobee-lyay, kee è d^e steel modèrn.* Yes, but naturally my wife helped me to choose the furniture which is in modern style.
- 11 *see s^ela n^e voo dayràⁿzh pâ, zhèmrè bôkoo vwar votr èⁿ-stalasyôⁿ.* If it is no bother for you, I should like very much to see your establishment.
- 12 *ô kôⁿtrèr, s^ela m^e ferè grâⁿ plèzeer. âⁿtrôⁿ dabor dâⁿ l^e salôⁿ.* On the contrary, that would give me great pleasure. Let's enter the living room first.
- 13 *vwasee eⁿ kanapay, de^o fôtè^oy, plüzyè^or p^(e)teet tabl avèk lè^or lâⁿp ay ün zholee kolèk-syôⁿ d^e tablô.* Here are a sofa, two armchairs, several little tables with their lamps and a pretty collection of pictures.

declarative word order. Note literal translation of this expression. 11. *Couverture* is feminine, but *drap* is masculine. Since, in case of conflict of gender, masculine predominates, *beaux* is masculine plural, inasmuch as it modifies both. 12. If the

14 En effet. Et les meubles, comme vous pouvez voir, sont en° acajou, qui est un bois aussi beau que solide.



15 Quel est l'ameublement de la chambre à coucher?

16 Le lit, la commode, la table de toilette, l'armoire et la petite table de nuit sont en noyer. La table de toilette et la commode ont deux grands miroirs.

17 Est-ce que ce sont des tapis de Perse?

18 Non, ils sont de fabrication française, mais de bonne qualité.

19 Comme¹⁰ le matelas de votre lit est confortable! Et les couvertures et les draps sont si beaux.¹¹

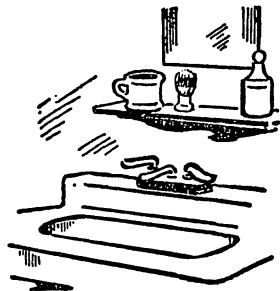
20 Allons dans la salle à manger, s'il vous plaît. La table au centre est grande parce que nous avons parfois des¹² invités. Il y a, en tout, douze chaises et un buffet où¹³ nous mettons le service de table et l'argenterie.

21 Comme votre cuisine est grande!¹⁰ Plus¹⁴ je la regarde, plus je l'aime.

22 Vraiment! Elle est si spacieuse que nous y prenons parfois nos repas. Nous avons une glacière et une cuisinière électriques et un évier pour laver la vaisselle.

23 Est-ce que je peux voir la salle de bains?

24 Faites comme chez vous. Vous y trouverez du savon et des serviettes à gauche de la cuvette et à côté de la baignoire.



English equivalent of this word, *some*, were to be construed as *a few*, the translation would be *quelque*. See lesson VIII, sentence 5. 13. Dans + relative pronoun

- 14 *âⁿnayfè. ay lay mè^obl, kom voo poovay vwar, sôⁿtâⁿnaka-zhoo, kee ètèⁿ bwa ôsee bô k^e soleed.* To be sure. And the furniture, as you can see, is of mahogany, which is a wood both beautiful and strong (*lit.* as beautiful as strong).
- 15 *kèlè lamè^obl^emâⁿ d^e la shâⁿbr a kooshay?* What are the furnishings of the bedroom?
- 16 *l^e lee, la komod, la tabl d^e twalèt, larmwar ay la p^(e)teet tabl d^e nüee sôⁿtâⁿ nwayay. la table d^e twalèt ay la komod ôⁿ de^o grâⁿ meerwar.* The bed, the bureau, the dressing table, the wardrobe and the little night table are of walnut. The dressing table and the bureau have two large mirrors.
- 17 *èsk^e s^e sôⁿ day tapee d^e pèrs?* Are these Persian rugs?
- 18 *nôⁿ, eel sôⁿ d^e fabreekasyôⁿ frâⁿsèz, mè d^e bon kaleetay.* No, they are of French manufacture, but of good quality.
- 19 *kom l^e matla d^e votr^e lee è kôⁿfortabl! ay lay koovèrtür ay lay dra sôⁿ see bô.* How comfortable the mattress of your bed is (*lit.* how the mattress of your bed is comfortable)! And the covers and the sheets are so beautiful.
- 20 *alôⁿ dâⁿ la sal a mâⁿzhay, seel voo plè. la tabl ô sâⁿtr è grâⁿd parsk^e noozavôⁿ parfwa day-zèⁿveetay. eelya, âⁿ too, dooz shèz ay eⁿ büfè oo noo mètôⁿ l^e sèrvees d^e tabl ay larzhâⁿ-tree.* Let's go into the dining room, please. The table in the center is big because we sometimes have guests. There are, in all, twelve chairs and a buffet in which we put the table service and the silverware.
- 21 *kom votr^e küeezeen è grâⁿd! plü zh^e la r^egard, plü zh^e lèm.* How big your kitchen is! The more I look at it, the more I like it.
- 22 *vrèmâⁿ! èlè see spasye^oz k^e noozee pr^enôⁿ parfwa nô r^epâ. noozavôⁿ ün glasyèr ay ün küeezeenyèr aylèktreek ay eⁿ-nayvyay poor lavay la vèsèl.* Truly! It is so spacious that we sometimes take our meals in it. We have an electric refrigerator and range and a sink for washing the dishes.
- 23 *èsk^e zh^e pe^o vwar la sal d^e bèn?* Can I see the bathroom?
- 24 *fèt kom shay voo. voozee troovray dü savôⁿ ay day sèrvyèt a gôsh d^e la küvèt ay a kôtay d^e la bènywar.* Make yourself at home (*lit.* do as in your house). You will find soap and towels to the left of the basin and beside the bathtub.

referring to thing (see lesson VIII, note 13) is generally replaced by *où* (where).

14. Idiom: *plus . . . , plus . . . : the more . . . , the more (the better) . . .*



ONZIÈME LEÇON

Eleventh Lesson

NOUVEAU VOCABULAIRE POUR CETTE LEÇON

le courant d'air (<i>koorâⁿ dèr</i>)	the draft
le souffle d'air (<i>sooffl^e dèr</i>)	the breath of air
il fait du soleil (<i>eel fè dü solèy</i>)	the sun is shining
le temps est couvert (<i>l^e tâⁿ è koovèr</i>)	the weather is cloudy
agréable (<i>agrayabl</i>)	agreeable, pleasant
s'approcher (de) (<i>saproshay d^e</i>)	to draw near (to)
là-bas (<i>labâ</i>)	there, over there
le parapluie (<i>paraplüee</i>)	the umbrella
un imperméable (<i>èⁿpèrmayabl</i>)	a raincoat
les caoutchoucs¹, masc. (<i>kaootshoo</i>)	the rubbers
la tempête (<i>tâⁿpèt</i>)	tempest, storm
l'humidité, f. (<i>lümeedeetay</i>)	humidity
le thermomètre (<i>tèrmomètr</i>)	thermometer
brumeux, mas. (<i>brüme^o</i>)	foggy
brumeuse², fem. (<i>brüme^{oz}</i>)	foggy
il fait froid (<i>frwa</i>)	it is cold

attraper un rhume (atrapay e ⁿ rüm)	to catch a cold
il fait beau (eel fè bô)	it is nice
il fait chaud (eel fè shô)	it is warm
indiquer (è ⁿ deekay)	to indicate
la température (tâ ⁿ payratür)	temperature
centigrade (sâ ⁿ teegrad)	centigrade
ressembler (r ^e sâ ⁿ blay)	to resemble
humide (ümeed)	humid
il fait humide (eel fè(t) ümeed)	it is humid
augmenter (ogmâ ⁿ tay)	to increase, augment
craindre (krè ⁿ dr)	to fear
je crains (zh ^e krè ⁿ)	I fear
fahrenheit (farènhaeet)	Fahrenheit
le souffle (soofl)	breath
le tonnerre (tonèr)	thunder
tonner (tonay)	to thunder

THE CORTINA METHOD

LE TEMPS QU'IL FAIT

(l^e tâⁿ keel fè) • The State of the Weather

il fait doux (doo)	it is mild
il fait du vent (vâ ⁿ)	it is windy
étouffer (aytoofay)	to suffocate
il pleut (eel ple ^o)	it is raining
à torrents (a torâ ⁿ)	pouring
au-dessus (ôdsü)	above
au-dessous (ôdsoo)	below
en hausse (â ⁿ ôs)	rising
en baisse (â ⁿ bès)	dropping
approcher (aproshay)	to approach
le climat (kleema)	climate
la chaleur (shalê ^o r)	heat
les éclairs, mas. (layzayklèr)	the lightning
il fait des éclairs (dayzayklèr)	there are flashes of lightning

FOOTNOTES: 1. French uses the original Indian word. 2. Adjectives ending in *x* in masculine singular form feminine by changing *x* to *s* and adding customary *e*. 3. *Donc*, like *just* in English, is used to intensify the imperative. In other

un orage (orazh)	a storm
la pluie (pliée)	the rain
pleuvoir (ple ^o vwar)	to rain
la neige (nèzh)	the snow
neiger (nèzhay)	to snow
la glace (glas)	the ice
la boue (boo)	mud
la gelée (zh ^(e) lay)	frost
le baromètre (baromètr)	barometer
le degré (d ^e gray)	degree



senses it means *therefore*. 4. The complete preposition is *au-dessous de* or *au-dessus de*. Without the *de* these are adverbs. 5. Another function of the subjunctive (see lesson IX, note 16). After many expressions of *emotion*, and particularly after

CONVERSATION

1 Quel temps fait-il?

2 Il fait un temps délicieux. Il fait très beau.

3 Ouvrez donc³ la fenêtre et voyez le temps qu'il fait.

4 Il fait beaucoup de soleil, mais il fait aussi très froid.

5 Qu'indique le thermomètre? Est-ce que la température est au-dessus⁴ ou au-dessous de zéro?

6 Le thermomètre indique quatre degrés au-dessous de zéro.

7 Je crois que nous allons avoir du mauvais temps; le baromètre indique la pluie.

8 Le baromètre est en hausse; je crains que nous ayons⁵ une tempête de neige.

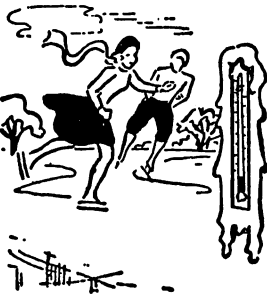
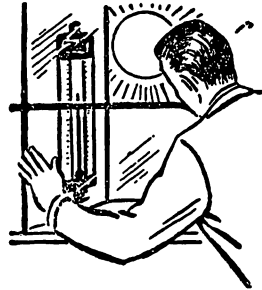
9 Regardez comme il fait des éclairs! L'orage approche; il fait déjà beaucoup de vent. Il y a beaucoup de boue dans les rues.

10 Quelle est la température maximum⁶ en France?

11 D'⁷une façon générale le climat du nord de la France correspond à celui de New-York, mais il est plus doux.

12 Quel est le climat de la Bretagne?

13 En hiver il y fait souvent un temps brumeux comme en Angleterre; mais il ne pleut pas à torrents comme en Amérique.



expressions of *fearing*, noun clauses (a noun clause begins with *que* and serves as the object of a verb) require the subjunctive. 6. Note, exceptionally, all absence of adjectival agreement. 7. Idiom. Note that the preposition is *de* and not what English might suggest. 8. Note use of *de*. A similar expression is: *Le prix est*

PRONUNCIATION	TRANSLATION
1 kèl tâ ⁿ fèteel?	What is the weather (like)?
2 eel fè(t) ^e n tâ ⁿ dayleesye ^o . eel fè trè bô.	The weather is delightful. It is very fine.
3 oovray dô ⁿ k la fènètr ay vwayay l ^e tâ ⁿ keel fè.	Just open the window and see what the weather is like.
4 eel fè bôkoo d ^e solèy, mèzeel fè(t)ôsee trè frwa.	There is a great deal of sun, but it is also very cold.
5 kè ⁿ deek l ^e tèrmomètr? èsk ^e la tâ ⁿ payratür ètòdsü oo ôdsoo d ^e zayrô?	What does the thermometer say? Is the temperature above or below zero?
6 l ^e tèrmomètr è ⁿ deek katr ^e d ^e gray ôdsoo d ^e zayrô.	The thermometer shows four degrees below zero.
7 zh ^e krwa k ^e noozalô ⁿ zavwar dü movè tâ ⁿ ; l ^e baromètr è ⁿ deek la plüee.	I think we are going to have some bad weather; the barometer indicates rain.
8 l ^e baromètr ètâ ⁿ ôs; zh ^e krè ⁿ k ^e noozèyô ⁿ (z)ün tâ ⁿ pèt d ^e nèzh.	The barometer is rising; I am afraid that we may have a snow storm.
9 r ^e garday kom eel fè dayzay-kler! lorazh aprosh; eel fè dayzha bôkoo d ^e vâ ⁿ . eelya bôkoo d ^e boo dâ ⁿ lay rü.	Look how the lightning is flashing! The storm is approaching; there is already much wind. There is a lot of mud in the streets.
10 kèl è la tâ ⁿ payratür maksee-me ^m â ⁿ frâ ⁿ s?	What is the maximum temperature in France?
11 dü ⁿ fasô ⁿ zhaynayral l ^e kleema dü nor d ^e la frâ ⁿ s korèspô ⁿ a s ^e lüee d ^e nooyork, mèzeel è plü doo.	In a general way the climate of the north of France corresponds to that of New York, but it is milder.
12 kèl è l ^e kleema d ^e la br ^e tany?	What is the climate of Brittany?
13 â ⁿ neevèr eel ee fè soovâ ⁿ e ⁿ tâ ⁿ brüme ^o kom â ⁿ nâ ⁿ gl ^e tèr; mèzeel n ^e ple ^o pâza torâ ⁿ kom â ⁿ namayrcek.	In winter it is often foggy there as in England; but the rain does not pour down as in America.

de vingt-cinq francs: The price is twenty-five francs. 9. Ressembler is an INTRANSITIVE VERB and requires "à" to introduce object. 10. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN: celui, masc., celle, fem. (this, this one, that, that one); ceux, masc. pl., celles, fem. pl. (these, those). 11. This is the same impersonal il which is

14 Sur la Côte d'Azur la température est souvent de⁸ vingt ou vingt-cinq degrés centigrade⁶ même en hiver. C'est un climat qui ressemble⁹ à celui¹⁰ de la Floride.

15 En hiver, ce doit être très agréable là-bas.



16 Est-ce que vous croyez qu'il va pleuvoir?

17 Le temps est couvert, mais je crois qu'il fait trop froid pour la pluie. Il¹¹ va geler très probablement et le temps est à l'orage.¹²

18 En effet, il neige déjà. Vous devriez mettre votre imperméable, car un parapluie ne vous serait pas très utile.

19 Avez-vous des caoutchoucs?

20 Il n'a pas fait si froid pendant tout l'hiver.

21 Croyez-vous qu'il fasse¹⁸ trop chaud pour cette saison?

22 La chaleur est étouffante. Il n'y a pas un souffle d'air.

23 Ici il fait très humide et l'humidité ne fait¹⁴ qu'augmenter la chaleur aussi bien que le froid.



found in *il faut*, *il fait mauvais*, *il neige*. Compare this with *ce* in sentence 15 above where the word *it*, although indefinite, still has a vague antecedent. 12. Idiom. Also expressed as *à la pluie*. 13. Present subjunctive of *faire*. This is still another application of the subjunctive. After expression of *doubt* a noun

14 sūr la kôt dazūr la tâⁿpayratūr è soovâⁿ d^e vèⁿ oo vèⁿtsè^p d^egray sâ^tteegrad mèm âⁿnee- vèr. sèteⁿ kleema ke^r r^esâⁿbl a s^eluee d^e la floreed.

On the French Riviera the temperature is often twenty or twenty-five degrees centigrade even in winter. It is a climate which resembles that of Florida.

15 âⁿneeve^r, s^e dwatêr^e trèza- grayabl labâ.

In winter, it must be very pleasant there.

16 èsk^e voo krwayay keel va plè^ovwar?

Do you think it is going to rain?

17 l^e tâⁿ è koovèr, mè zh^e krwa keel fè trô frwa poor la plüee. eel va zh^elay trè probablemâⁿ ay l^e tâⁿ èta lorazh.

It is cloudy, but I think it is too cold for rain. It is going to freeze very probably and it is stormy.

18 âⁿnayfè, eel nèzh dayzha. voo d^evreeay mètr votr èⁿpèrmay- abl, kar eⁿ paraplüee n^e voo s^erè pâ trèzüteel.

In fact, it is snowing already. You ought to put (on) your raincoat, for an umbrella would not be very useful to you.

19 avay voo day kaootshoo?

Have you rubbers?

20 eel na pâ fè see frwa pâⁿdâⁿ too leevèr.

It hasn't been so cold all winter long (*lit.* during all the winter).

21 krwayay voo keel fâs trô shô poor sèt sèzôⁿ?

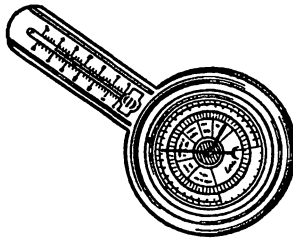
Do you think that it is too hot for this season?

22 la shalè^or ètaytoofâ^t. eelnya pâzeⁿ sooff^e dèr.

The heat is stifling. There is not a breath of air.

23 eesee eel fè trèzümeed ay lümeedeetay n^e fè kôgmâⁿtay la shalè^or ôsee byèⁿ k^e l^e frwa.

Here it is very damp and the dampness only increases the heat as well as the cold.



clause requires subjunctive. *Croire*, in the interrogative, counts as an expression of doubt. 14. Note translation. If, in the English, the word *only* modifies the verb, the verb of the English becomes a dependent infinitive in the formula *il ne fait que + infinitive*. Example: He only goes: *il ne fait qu'aller*.



DOUZIÈME LEÇON

Twelfth Lesson

NOUVEAU VOCABULAIRE POUR CETTE LEÇON

actuel, masc.

actuelle, fem. (aktüèl)

une étoffe (aytof)

la mode (mod)

le ruban (rübâⁿ)

précisément (prayseezaymâⁿ)

porter (portay)

ajuster (azhüstay)

ajusté

étroit (aytrwa)

la couture (kootür)

coudre (koodr)

couper (koopay)

avoir la bonté de

(avwar la bônⁿtay d^e)

neuf, masc. (nè⁰f)

neuve¹, fem. (nè⁰v)

flottant (flotâⁿ)

le patron (patrôⁿ)

la garniture (garneetür)

present

present

a material

the fashion, style

the ribbon

precisely

to carry; to wear; to bear

to adjust

close fitting

tight

the seam, sewing

to sew

to cut

to have the goodness to

new

new

loose

the pattern

the trimming

essayer (<i>aysèyay</i>)	to try, try on
mettre (<i>mètr</i>)	to put, put on
la dentelle (<i>dâⁿtèl</i>)	the lace
la broderie (<i>brodree</i>)	embroidery
la taille (<i>tay</i>)	waist
la ceinture (<i>sèⁿtür</i>)	belt, waist (of body)
les ciseaux , masc. (<i>sezdô</i>)	scissors
le crêpe (<i>krèp</i>)	crepe
la bonté (<i>bôⁿtay</i>)	goodness
le veston (<i>vèstôⁿ</i>)	jacket, lounge coat
le mètre (<i>mètr</i>)	the meter
le tailleur (<i>taye^or</i>)	the tailor
varier (<i>varyay</i>)	to vary
couvrir (<i>koovreer</i>)	to cover
employer (<i>âⁿplwayay</i>)	to use, employ
ajouter (<i>azhootay</i>)	to add
la manche (<i>mâⁿsh</i>)	the sleeve
une variété (<i>varyaytay</i>)	a variety

THE CORTINA METHOD

LE TAILLEUR • LA MODISTE • LA MODE

(l^e taye^{or}, la modeest, la mod) • The Tailor, the Dressmaker, the Style

le coton (kotô ⁿ)	the cotton
la rayonne (rèyon)	rayon
le velours (v ^e loor)	velvet
la soie (swâ)	silk
la flanelle (flanèl)	flannel
le bouton (bootô ⁿ)	button
le corsage (korsazh)	blouse
le col (kol)	collar
la mesure (m ^e zür)	measure
une aiguille (ègüeeey)	a needle
le fil (feel)	the thread
la machine à coudre (masheen a koodr)	the sewing machine

FOOTNOTES: 1. Adjectives ending in *f* change *f* to *v* before adding feminine ending *e*. 2. The adjective *actuel* is usually translated *present*, *present-day*, not as *actual*. Similarly the adverb *actuellement* means *now*, *at present*, and not *actually*. 3. *Dont* takes the place of *de+relative pronoun* referring either to a person or a thing. For that reason it will also frequently translate the English *whose*. 4. As



an ADVERB OF QUANTITY *bien* is interchangeable with *beaucoup*, but normally it takes after it a complete partitive, whereas *beaucoup* takes only *de*. Here, because of the adjective *autres*, *bien* also takes short partitive. 5. *Se connaître en*: idiom: to know all about. Note carefully this reflexive form of the verb. 6. *A l'aide de*;

CONVERSATION

1 Mademoiselle Duchâtel, auriez-vous la bonté de nous dire de combien de pièces se compose une robe de femme?



2 D'ordinaire elle se compose de deux pièces: le corsage et la jupe. Mais il y a aussi des robes en une seule pièce.

3 Très bien, Mademoiselle, et la partie de la robe qui couvre le bras s'appelle comment?

4 Elle s'appelle la manche. Le haut de la robe s'appelle le col et la partie ajustée à la ceinture s'appelle la taille.

5 Quelle est la mode actuelle² pour les manches?

6 Pour les manches la mode varie souvent. Parfois on les porte assez courtes ou bien assez longues; d'autres fois elles sont larges ou bien étroites.

7 De quoi est-ce que les robes sont faites?

8 Il y a une grande variété d'étoffes dont³ on peut les faire, mais les plus employées sont la soie, le crêpe, la rayonne, la flanelle, la toile, le coton, le velours et bien⁴ d'autres encore.

9 Vous vous connaissez⁵ en couture, n'est-ce pas?

10 Oui, monsieur, assez bien pour faire mes robes moi-même à l'aide⁶ d'un patron.

11 Voudriez-vous nous dire comment se fait une robe?

idiom: *with the help of*. 7. See lesson III, note 22. 8. From the irregular verb *coudre*. 9. *Soit . . . soit*: either . . . or. The *soit* is actually present subjunctive of *être* and means *be it*. 10. See lesson VII, note 16. 11. See lesson IX, note

PRONUNCIATION

- 1 *madmwazèl düshâtèl, ôreeay voo la hôⁿtay de noo deer de kôⁿbyèⁿ de pyès s^e kôⁿpôz ün rob de fam?*
- 2 *dordeenèr èl s^e kôⁿpôz de de^o pyès: l^e korsazh ay la zhüp. mëzeelya ôsee day rob âⁿnün sè^ol pyès.*
- 3 *trè byèⁿ, madmwazèl, ay la partee de la rob kee koovr^e l^e brâ sapèl komâⁿ?*
- 4 *èl sapèl la mâⁿsh. l^e ô de la rob sapèl l^e kol ay la partee azhüstay a la sèⁿtür sapèl la tay.*
- 5 *kèl è la mod aktüèl poor lay mâⁿsh?*
- 6 *poor lay mâⁿsh la mod varee soovâⁿ. parfwa ôⁿ lay port asay koort oo byèⁿ asay lôⁿg; dôtr^e fwa èl sôⁿ larzh oo byèⁿ aytrwat.*
- 7 *de kwa èsk^e lay rob sôⁿ fèt?*
- 8 *elya ün grâⁿd vareeaytay daytof dôⁿtôⁿ pe^o lay fèr, mè lay plüzâⁿplwayay sôⁿ la swâ, l^e krèp, la rèyon, la flanel, la twal, l^e kotôⁿ, l^e vëloor ay byèⁿ dôtr âⁿkor.*
- 9 *voovoo konèsay âⁿ kootür, nès pâ?*
- 10 *wëe, m^esyè^o, asay byèⁿ poor fër may rob mwamèm a lèd deⁿ patrôⁿ.*
- 11 *voodreeay voo noo deer komâⁿ s^e fè ün rob?*

TRANSLATION

- Miss Duchâtel, would you be good enough to tell us of how many pieces a woman's dress is composed?
- Ordinarily it is composed of two pieces: the blouse and the skirt. But there are also some dresses in a single piece.
- Very good, Miss (Duchâtel), and the part of the dress which covers the arm is called what?
- It is called the sleeve. The top of the dress is called the collar and the part fitted to the waistline is called the waist.
- What is the present style for sleeves?
- For the sleeves the style often varies. Sometimes they are worn rather short or else rather long; other times they are wide or else narrow.
- Of what are dresses made?
- There is a great variety of materials of which they can be made, but the most used are silk, crepe, rayon, flannel, linen, cotton, velvet and still many others.
- You know all about sewing, don't you?
- Yes, sir, well enough (*lit.* enough well) to make my dresses myself with the aid of a pattern.
- Would you tell us how a dress is made?

14. 12. The SUPERLATIVE FORM of the adjective is made with definite article and *plus*. If the superlative is placed after the noun, as it must be when the adjective is one which must follow, there may even be two articles with the noun. Example:

12 Avec plaisir. D'abord, il vous faut⁷ trois mètres ou plus d'étoffe, que vous coupez avec des ciseaux d'après le patron et les mesures, et ensuite vous la cousez⁸ avec du fil et une aiguille, soit⁹ à la main, soit à la machine.

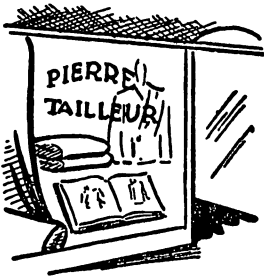
13 Après cela je suppose que vous essayez la robe pour voir si elle vous va.

14 Précisément; et alors vous ajoutez la garniture qui consiste en dentelle, broderie, rubans et boutons de couleur.



15 Quand est-ce que votre mari aura besoin de cet argent?

16 Il en aura besoin immédiatement, car il doit s'¹⁰acheter un costume aujourd'hui.



17 Où a-t-il l'intention de faire faire son costume?

18 Chez le tailleur au coin de l'Avenue de l'Opéra et la rue Molière. Monsieur Clément est un bon tailleur.

19 Alors, allons-y¹¹. Voici votre mari.

20 Bonjour, Monsieur Clément. Je désire me faire faire un costume.

21 Voulez-vous bien me montrer vos tissus les¹² plus neufs?

22 Je veux un costume sur mesure, car les costumes tout¹³ faits ne me vont jamais très bien.

les livres les plus neufs: the newest books. But with a preceding adjective there is only one article. Example: *les plus beaux livres*, *the finest books*. 13. When it modifies an adjective *tout* is an adverb and does not agree except when the adjective is feminine and begins with a consonant (Example: *une réponse toute faite*,

- 12 avèk plèzeer. dabor, eel voo fô trwa mètr oo plü(s) daytof, k^e voo koopay avèk day seezô daprè l^e patrôⁿ ay lay m^ezür, ay âⁿsüet voo la koozay avèk dü feel ay ün ègüey, swa(t) a la mèⁿ, swa(t) a la masheen.
- 13 aprè s^ela zh^e süpôz k^e voozay-sëyay la rob poor vwar see èl voo va.
- 14 prayseezaymâⁿ; ay alor voozashootay la garneetür kee kôⁿseest âⁿ dâⁿtèl, brodree, rübâⁿ ay bootôⁿ d^e koolè^r.
- 15 kâⁿtèsk^e votr^e maree ôra b^ezwèⁿ d^e sètazhâⁿ?
- 16 eel âⁿnôra b^ezwèⁿ eemaydyat-mâⁿ, kar eel dwa sash^tay eⁿ kostüm ôzhoordüee.
- 17 oo ateel lèⁿtânⁿsyôⁿ d^e fèr fèr sôⁿ kostüm?
- 18 shay l^e tayè^r ô kwèⁿ d^e lavnü d^e lopayra ay la rü molyèr. m^esyè^o klaymâⁿ ètèⁿ bôⁿ tayè^r.
- 19 alor, alôⁿzee. vwasee votr^e maree.
- 20 bôⁿzhoor, m^esyè^o klaymâ. zh^e dayzeer m^e fèr fèr eⁿ kostüm.
- 21 voolay voo byèⁿ m^e môⁿtray vò teesü lay plü nè^of?
- 22 zh^e ve^o(z) eⁿ kostüm sür m^ezür, kar lay kostüm too fè n^e m^e vôⁿ zhamè trè byèⁿ.
- With pleasure. First you need three meters or more of cloth, which you cut with scissors according to the pattern and the measurements, and then you sew it with needle and thread (*lit.* some thread and a needle), either by hand or with a machine.
- After that I suppose that you try on the dress to see if it fits you.
- Precisely; and then you add the trimming which consists of lace, embroidery, ribbons and colored buttons (*lit.* buttons of color).
- When will your husband need this money?
- He will need it immediately, for he must buy himself a suit today.
- Where does he intend to have his suit made?
- At the tailor's on the corner of the Avenue of the Opera and Molière Street. Mr. Clément is a good tailor.
- Then, let's go there. Here is your husband.
- Good day, Mr. Clément. I want to have a suit made for myself.
- Will you please show me your newest materials?
- I want a tailored suit (*lit.* a suit according to measure), for ready-made suits (*lit.* all made) never fit me very well.

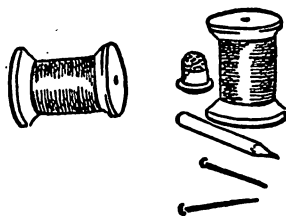
a ready-made answer). 14. Verbs ending *-oyer* and *-uyer* change *y* to *i* anywhere in the conjugation that they occur before a mute *e*. The *e* of the *er* infinitive used as the stem for the future or conditional is considered to be a mute *e* also. In *-ayer* verbs the change from *y* to *i* is optional. 15. Idiom.

23 Permettez-moi¹¹ de prendre vos mesures. Voulez-vous le veston flottant ou ajusté?



24 Je le préfère flottant et confortable, et n'oubliez pas que j'en ai besoin pour la semaine prochaine.

25 J'essaierai¹⁴ de l'avoir prêt pour vous sans faute mardi ou mercredi au plus tard.¹⁵



23 pèrmètay mwa d^e prâⁿdr^e vô m^ezür. voolay voo l^e vèstôⁿ flotâⁿ oo azhüstay?

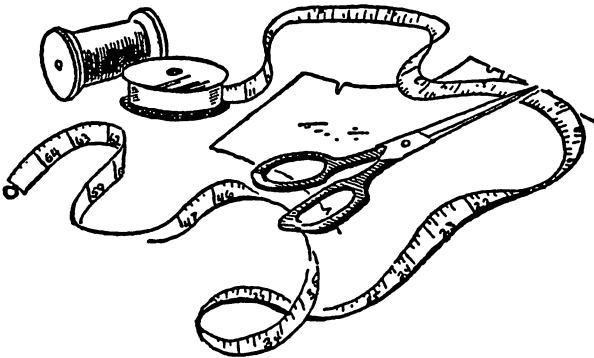
Allow me to take your measurements. Do you want the jacket loose (*lit.* floating) or tight?

24 zh^e l^e prayfèr flotâⁿ ay kôⁿ-fortabl, ay noobleey pâ k^e zhâⁿnay bezwèⁿ poor la s^emèn proshèn.

I prefer it loose and comfortable, and don't forget that I need it for next week.

25 zhaysèray d^e lavwar prè poor voo sâⁿ fôt mardee oo mèr-kr^edee ô plü tar.

I shall try to have it ready for you without fail Tuesday or Wednesday at the latest.





TREIZIÈME LEÇON

Thirteenth Lesson

NOUVEAU VOCABULAIRE POUR CETTE LEÇON

la pellicule (pèleekül)

la voiture (vwatür)

se laver (s^e lavay)

s'habiller (sabeeyay)

se promener (s^e promnay)

tant de (tâⁿ d^e)

la plage (plazh)

le bord de la mer (bor d^e la mèr)

le film (feelm)

le cinéma (seenayma)

le véhicule (vayeekül)

le piéton (pyaytôⁿ)

dormir (dormeer)

s'endormir (sâⁿdormeer)

se coucher (s^e kooshay)

se lever (s^e l^evay)

s'asseoir (saswar)

présenter (prayzâⁿtay)

film (negative)

car (automobile)

to wash (oneself)

dress (oneself)

go for a walk, a ride

so many, so much

the beach

the seashore

the motion picture

the motion picture house

the vehicle

the pedestrian

to sleep

go to sleep

go to bed

get up, rise

sit down

present

le bord (bor)

la place (plas)

le trottoir (trotwar)

le coin (kwèⁿ)

une église (aygleez)

le théâtre (tayâtr)

le courrier (kooryay)

les gens, masc. (lay zhâⁿ)

the edge

the square

the sidewalk

corner

a church

the theater

mail

people



THE CORTINA METHOD

EN VILLE¹ (âⁿ veel) • In Town

une école (aykol)	a school
le parc (park)	the park
un édifice (aydeefees)	a building
un hôpital (e ⁿ nôpeetal)	hospital
le café (kafay)	the sidewalk café
la mairie (mèree)	town hall
la banque (bâ ⁿ k)	bank
le marché (marshay)	market
le douanier (dwanyay)	the customs officer
la douane (dwan)	the customs house
un habitant (e ⁿ nabeetâ ⁿ)	an inhabitant
la connaissance (konèsâ ⁿ s)	the acquaintance
l'amabilité , fem. (lamabeeletay)	kindness
le bureau de poste (bürô d ^e post)	the post office
un agent de police (azhâ ⁿ d ^e polees)	a policeman
un hôtel de ville (e ⁿ nôtèl d ^e veel)	city hall
le palais de justice (palè d ^e zhüstees)	the court house
la préfecture (prayfektür)	departmental capitol
la préfecture de police	police headquarters
la t.s.f. [télégraphic sans fil] (la tayèsèf)	radio
le poste de t.s.f. (post de tayèsèf)	radio set
la télévision (taylayveezyô ⁿ)	television



CONVERSATION

- 1 A quelle heure vous êtes-vous² couché³ hier soir puisque vous dormez encore?
- 2 Je me suis couché très tard et j'ai trop⁴ dormi.
- 3 Je n'ai pas⁵ pu m'endormir avant quatre heures du matin.
- 4 Ma bonne ne m'a pas appelé et je viens⁶ de me réveiller.
- 5 Asseyez-vous, je vous en⁷ prie; je vais me lever, me laver et m'habiller tout de suite.



- 6 Bien, je suis tout prêt, et je suis à vos ordres.
- 7 Partons quand vous voudrez.⁸
- 8 Où voulez-vous que nous allions?⁹
- 9 Si vous voulez, nous irons nous promener¹⁰ au Bois de Boulogne.
- 10 J'aimerais mieux visiter des édifices publics tels¹¹ qu'une école, un bureau de poste, un marché, une église ou l'hôtel de ville.
- 11 Quelle idée magnifique! Et après nous irons au théâtre ou au cinéma. Sur cette place il y a un cinéma où on montre les meilleurs¹² films.
- 12 Plus je visiterai d'¹³ édifices, mieux je connaîtrai la ville.

FOOTNOTES: 1. La ville, *the town, the city*, pronounced *veel*, does not have the usual liquid *ll*. 2. To invert compound tense, place pronoun subject after auxiliary. 3. In all compound tenses reflexive verbs are conjugated with *être*.

PRONUNCIATION

- 1 a kèl è^r voozèt voo kooshay
yèr swar püeesk^e voo dormay
âⁿkor?
- 2 zh^e m^e süee kooshay trè tar ay
zhay trô dormee.
- 3 zh^e nay pâ pü mâⁿdormeer
avâⁿ katr è^r dü matèⁿ.
- 4 ma bon n^e ma pâzaplay ay zh^e
vyèⁿ d^e m^e rayvèyay.
- 5 asèyay voo, zh^e voozâⁿ pree;
zh^e vay m^e l^evay, m^e lavay ay
mabeeyay tood süeet.
- 6 byèⁿ, zh^e süee too prè, ay zh^e
süeeza vôzordr.
- 7 partôⁿ kâⁿ voo voodray.
- 8 oo voolay voo k^e noozalyôⁿ?
- 9 see voo voolay, noozeerôⁿ noo
promnay ô bwa d^e boolony.
- 10 zhèmè^{rè} mye^o veezetay day-
zaydeefees pübleek tèl kün
aykol, eⁿ bürô d^e post, eⁿ
marshay, ün aygleez oo lôtèl
d^e veel.
- 11 kèl eeday manyeefeeek! ay aprè
noozeerôⁿ ô tayâtr oo ô see-
nayma. sür sèt plas eelya eⁿ
seenayma oo ôⁿ môⁿtr lay
mèyè^r feelm.
- 12 plü zh^e veezetray daydeefees,
mye^o zh^e konètray la veel.

TRANSLATION

- (At) what time did you go to bed
last night (*lit.* evening) since
you are still asleep?
- I went to bed very late and I slept
too much.
- I wasn't able to go to sleep before
four o'clock in the morning.
- My maid didn't call me and I have
just awakened.
- Sit down, I beg of you; I am going
to get up, wash and dress im-
mediately.
- Good, I am all ready, and I am at
your orders.
- Let's leave when you wish.
- Where do you wish us to go (*lit.*
that we go)?
- If you wish, we shall go take a
walk in the Wood of Boulogne.
- I should prefer to visit some pub-
lic buildings such as a school, a
post office, a market, a church
or the city hall.
- What (a) magnificent idea! And
afterwards we shall go to the
theater or to the movies. On this
square there is a moving picture
house where the best films are
shown.
- The more buildings I visit (*lit.*
shall visit), the better I shall
know the city.

4. In a compound tense adverb goes after auxiliary. Exception: time adverbs like *demain, aujourd'hui, hier* which follow the past participle. 5. To make a compound tense negative, place *ne . . . pas* around auxiliary. 6. *Venir de* means *to have*

13 C'est merveilleux de voir un agent de police régler¹⁴ la circulation. Il y a tant de véhicules dans les rues et tant de piétons sur les trottoirs et les passages cloutés¹⁵ qu'il¹⁶ doit être difficile de régler tout cela.

14 Paris a beaucoup d'habitants et avec ses larges avenues bordées d'arbres et ses nombreux parcs il rappelle la capitale américaine qui est pourtant moins grande et moins pittoresque.

15 Je dois aller à la banque pour faire changer mes dollars.

16 Le change est très défavorable. Je regrette de¹⁷ ne¹⁸ pouvoir¹⁹ vous accompagner. Je vous attendrai chez le couturier.

17 Est-ce que vous auriez l'amabilité de me présenter à cette dame avant de partir?

18 Avec plaisir; je vais vous présenter tout de suite.

19 Ma chère amie, je voudrais vous présenter Madame Yvonne.

20 Madame, je suis enchantée de faire votre connaissance.

21 Et moi aussi, Madame, car j'ai souvent entendu parler²⁰ de vous.

22 Allez-vous rester longtemps en ville?



just. 7. In this idiom, *en* means *de le faire*: to do it. 8. After *quand* (when) and *lorsque* (when), if the main verb of the sentence is future or imperative, verb of this clause will also be future. 9. Present subjunctive of *aller*. Subjunctive is required in noun clauses depending on an expression of *willing*. 10. *Se promener*

- 13 sê mèrvèye^o d^e vwar eⁿnazhâⁿ d^e polees rayglay la seerkü-lasyôⁿ. eelya tâⁿ d^e vayeekül dâⁿ lay rü ay tâⁿ d^e pyaytôⁿ süir lay trotwar ay lay pasazh kloo^{tay} keel dwatètr^e deefeeseel d^e rayglay too s^ela. It is wonderful to see a policeman control the traffic. There are so many vehicles in the streets and so many pedestrians on the sidewalks and the pedestrian crossings that it must be difficult to control all that.
- 14 paree a bôkoo dabeetâⁿ ay avèk say larzh^ezavnü borday darbr ay say nôⁿbre^o park eel rapèl la kapeetal amayreekèn kee è poortâⁿ mwèⁿ grâⁿd ay mwèⁿ peetorèsk. Paris has many inhabitants and with its broad avenues bordered with trees and its numerous parks it reminds one of (*lit.* recalls) the American capital which is, however, less big and less picturesque.
- 15 zh^e dwazalay a la bâⁿk poor fèr shâⁿzhay may dolar. I must go to the bank to have my dollars changed.
- 16 l^e shâⁿzh è trè dayfavorabl. zh^e r^egrèt d^e n^e poovwar vooza-kôⁿpanyay. zh^e voozatâⁿdray shay l^e kootüryay. The exchange is very unfavorable. I regret that I cannot (*lit.* not being able to) accompany you. I shall wait for you at the dress-maker's.
- 17 èsk^e voozôryay lamabeeletay d^e m^e prayzâⁿtay a sèt dam avâⁿ d^e parteer? Would you be kind enough to introduce me to that lady before leaving?
- 18 avèk plèzeer; zh^e vay voo prayzâⁿtay tood süeet. With pleasure; I am going to introduce you right away.
- 19 ma shèr amee, zh^e voodrè voo prayzâⁿtay madam eevonèk. My dear (friend), I should like to present to you Mrs. Yvonnec.
- 20 madam, zh^e süeezâⁿshâⁿtay d^e fèr votr^e konèsâⁿs. Madame, I am delighted to make your acquaintance.
- 21 ay mwa ôsee, madam, kar zhay soovâⁿ âⁿtâⁿdü parlay d^e voo. And I too, Madame, for I have often heard of you.
- 22 alay voo rèstay lôⁿtâⁿ âⁿ veel? Are you going to remain in town long?

is synonymous with *faire une promenade*. 11. *Such*, in the phrase *such as*, is an adjective and therefore agrees. With the noun, English says *such a*, French *a such: un tel homme*: a such man. 12. The irregular adjective *bon* has the comparative *meilleur* and the superlative *le meilleur*. The adverb *bien* is compared: *bien, mieux*,

- 23 Pas longtemps, car je compte passer l'été au bord de la mer.
On m'a dit que Deauville a de belles plages.
- 24 Et aussi beaucoup de divertissements. J'y vais aussi et cela²¹
me plairait beaucoup de²² vous servir de²³ guide.
- 25 Vous êtes bien aimable et je vous serai très reconnaissante.
- 26 Je serai à votre service et, en attendant,²⁴ je vous souhaite
un bon voyage.
- 27 Au revoir,²⁵ Madame. A bientôt.²⁶



le mieux. 13. The *de* is used here because of the adverb of quantity *plus*. 14. This use of the infinitive is exceptional in French and is possible only after a few verbs such as *voir* and *entendre*. It is impossible to translate with an infinitive: *I want John to come*; this must be expressed: *Je veux que Jean vienne*: I want that John come. With verbs which have an indirect object and which introduce their dependent infinitive with *de*, an infinitive construction must be used; example: *Je demande à Jean de venir*: I ask (to) John to come. 15. *Passage clouté*: literally: a nailed passage. So called because of the French method of marking pedestrian crossings with large brass knobs in the pavement. 16. Generally *il* is used in the formula *it + to be + adjective + de + infinitive + object*. Example: *Il est facile de faire cela*. *Ce* is used in the formula *it + to be + adjective + à + infinitive*. Example: *C'est facile à faire*. Note exceptional usage in: *C'est merveilleux de voir un agent*. 17. *Regretter* takes *de* to introduce a

- 23 pà lôⁿtân, kar zh^e kôⁿt pâsay
laytay ô bor d^e la mër. ôⁿ ma
dee k^e dôveel a d^e bèl plazh. Not long, for I expect to spend the
summer at the seashore (*lit.* at
the edge of the sea). I have
been told that Deauville has
beautiful beaches.
- 24 ay ôsee bôkoo d^e deevèrtees-
mâⁿ. zhee vay ôsee ay s^ela m^e
plèrè bôkoo d^e voo sèrveer d^e
geed. And also many amusements. I am
going there too and it would
give me great pleasure to be a
guide for you (*lit.* to serve you
as a guide).
- 25 voozèt byèⁿnèmabl ay zh^e voo
s^eray trè r^ekonèsâⁿt. You are very kind and I shall be
very grateful to you.
- 26 zh^e s^eray a votr^e sèrvees ay,
âⁿnatâⁿdâⁿ, zh^e voo swèt eⁿ
bôⁿ vwayazh. I shall be at your service and,
meanwhile, I wish you a good
trip.
- 27 ô r(è)vwar, madam. a byèⁿtô. Good-bye, Madame. See you soon.

dependent infinitive. 18. *Pouvoir* can be made negative with only *ne*. Ordinarily an infinitive is made negative by placing both *ne* and *pas* before the infinitive. Example: *Je lui demande de ne pas le faire*: I ask him *not* to do it. 19. English will read: *I regret I am unable*. When subject of noun clause is same as subject of main verb, French will prefer to use an infinitive to avoid repeating same subject. This is especially necessary if a subjunctive is thereby to be avoided. Modern French never uses subjunctive when it can avoid it. 20. Idiom: *entendre parler de quelqu'un*: to hear of someone (*lit.* to hear speak of someone). 21. See lesson VII, note 17. 22. *Plaire* takes *de* to introduce infinitive. 23. *Servir de*: idiom: *to serve as*. Person served is indirect object. 24. Idiom: *meanwhile* (*lit. while waiting*). 25. Idiom. 26. *A bientôt*. Similar to *à demain*, *à lundi*: until tomorrow, until Monday. Means: *until soon*.



QUATORZIÈME LEÇON

Fourteenth Lesson

NOUVEAU VOCABULAIRE POUR CETTE LEÇON

la sonnette (sonèt)	the bell (small bell)
se dépêcher (s ^e daypèshay)	to hurry
se porter bien (s ^e portay byè ⁿ)	to be well
la transpiration (trâ ⁿ speerasyô ⁿ)	perspiration
conduire (kô ⁿ düeer)	to conduct, drive; take
un tout petit peu (e ⁿ too ptee pe ^o)	a very little bit
toutes les heures (toot layzè ^o r)	every hour
descendre (daysâ ⁿ dr)	to go down, get off
la tête (tèt)	the head
avoir mal à la tête	to have a headache
(avwar mal a la tèt)	
le chauffeur (shôfè ^o r)	the driver
la cuillerée (küeer ^e ray)	the spoonful
à domicile (a domeeseel)	at home
loin (lwè ⁿ)	far
libre (leabr)	free
appuyez (apüeeeyay)	press
veuillez (vè ^o yay)	please

attraper (atrapay)	to catch
la portière (portyèr)	the car door
la salle d'attente (sal datâ ^{nt})	the waiting room
aller volontiers (alay volô ^{nt} tyay)	to go willingly
la pharmacie (farmasee)	the pharmacy
une ordonnance (ordonâ ^{ns})	a prescription
combien (kô ⁿ byè ⁿ)	how much
demander (d ^e mâ ⁿ day)	to ask, demand
pour (poor)	for, in order to
habiter (âbeetay)	to live
fermer (fèrmay)	to shut, close
arrêter (arètay)	to arrest, stop
tâter (tâtay)	to feel, touch
tâter le pouls (tâtay l ^e poo)	to feel the pulse
montrer (mô ⁿ tray)	to show, display
la douleur (doole ^{or})	the pain, ache
revenir (r ^e v ^e neer)	to return
le médecin ¹ (mètsè ⁿ)	the doctor

THE CORTINA METHOD

CHEZ LE MÉDECIN

(shay l^e mètsèⁿ) • At the Doctor's

le docteur ¹ (doktè ⁰ r)	the doctor
le pouls (poo)	pulse
le rhume (rüm)	cold
la clinique (kleeneek)	clinic
la langue (lâ ⁿ g)	the tongue
le vertige (vêrteezh)	dizziness
le symptôme (sè ⁿ ptôm)	symptom
la pilule (peelül)	pill
les honoraires (layzonorèr)	the fee
la consultation (kô ⁿ sültasyô ⁿ)	consultation, visit
la fièvre (fyèvr)	fever, temperature
le médicament (maydeekamâ ⁿ)	medicine
la médecine (mètseen)	medicine (profession)
avoir bonne mine (avwar bon meen)	to look well
souffrir (soofreer)	to be unwell

FOOTNOTES: 1. Frequently *médecin* and *docteur* are interchangeable. But only *docteur* may be used with the doctor's name or in addressing him. 2. Cardinal numbers, rather than ordinals, are used in dates. 3. *Special sense of avoir*: to have something wrong. 4. *Aller bien (mal)* and *se porte bien (mal)* are used interchangeably in sense of *to be well* or *to be ill*. 5. *Ne... plus* special nega-



tive meaning *no longer* and functioning same as *ne . . . pas*. 6. Note irregular plural of *monsieur*. Similarly *madame* becomes *mesdames* in the plural. 7. Transitive use of *arrêter*; the term *la voiture* is understood. 8. A somewhat formal way of saying *please*. *Veillez* is one of the two subjunctive forms of *vouloir* used as the imperative; see note on p. 304. 9. Note special use of present with *depuis*. In

CONVERSATION

1 Quel jour du mois sommes-nous?

2 Nous sommes le vingt-deux² septembre.

3 Qu'avez-³vous? Vous n'avez pas très bonne mine.



4 Je ne vais⁴ pas bien. Je n'ai plus⁵ d'appétit et j'aimerais voir un médecin.

5 Combien demande le docteur Bellanger pour une consultation à domicile?

6 Je ne sais pas, mais comme il habite assez loin, ses honoraires seront élevés.

7 Dans ce cas nous prendrons un taxi pour aller à sa clinique.

8 J'irai volontiers avec vous. Voici une voiture.

9 Chauffeur, votre voiture est libre?

10 Oui, messieurs,⁶ où voulez-vous aller?

11 Conduisez-nous au soixante-dix-neuf rue Quentin-Bauchard. Fermez la portière, s'il vous plaît.

12 Dépêchez-vous et vous aurez un bon pourboire.

13 Arrêtez⁷ ici; voici l'adresse et nous allons descendre.

14 Appuyez sur la sonnette.

15 Le docteur Bellanger, est-il là?



French an action begun in the past but continuing in the present is expressed by the present tense with *depuis* (or a similar construction, of which there are several). Example: *I have been here for three days*; but I am still here, so the French says: *I am here since three days* (*je suis ici depuis trois jours*). 10. *Sortir* is conjugated with *être*. 11. This is the same *dativ* of *reference* mentioned in lesson

PRONUNCIATION

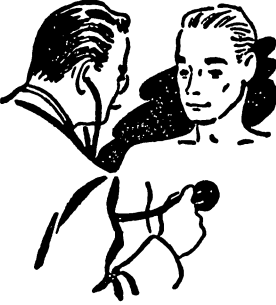
- 1 kèl zhoor dü mwa som noo?
 2 noo som l^e vè^{nt}de^o sèptâ^{nr}br.
 3 kavay voo? voo navay pâ trè bon meen.
 4 zh^e n^e vay pâ byèⁿ. zh^e nay plü dapaytee ay zhèm^{rè} vwar eⁿ mètsèⁿ.
 5 kôⁿbyèⁿ d^emâⁿd l^e doktè^or bèlâⁿzhay poor ün kôⁿsültasyôⁿ a domeeseel?
 6 zh^e n^e say pâ, mè kom eel abeet asay lwèⁿ, sayzonorè^r s^erôⁿ-(t)aylvay.
 7 dâⁿ s^e kâ noo prâⁿdrôⁿ(z)eⁿ taksee poor alay a sa kleeneek.
 8 zheeray volô^{nt}tyay avèk voo. vwasee ün vwatür.
 9 shôfè^or, votr^e vwatür è leebr?
 10 wee, maysye^o, oo voolay voo (z)alay?
 11 kôⁿdüeezay noo ô swasâ^{nt} deeznè^of rü kâ^{nt}tèⁿ bôshar. fèrmay la portyèr, seel voo plè.
 12 daypèshay voo ay voozôray eⁿ bôⁿ poorbwar.
 13 arètay eesee; vwasee ladrès ay noozalôⁿ daysâⁿdr.
 14 apüeeeyay sür la sonèt.
 15 l^e doktè^or bèlâⁿzhay, èteel la?

TRANSLATION

- What day of the month is it?
 It is the twenty-second (of) September.
 What is the matter with you? You don't look well.
 I am not well. I have no more appetite and I should like to see a doctor.
 How much does Dr. Bellanger ask for a house visit?
 I don't know, but as he lives rather far (away), his fees will be high.
 In that case we shall take a taxi to go to his clinic.
 I shall gladly go with you. Here is a car.
 Driver, is your car free?
 Yes, gentlemen, where do you wish to go?
 Drive us to (number) 79 Quentin-Bauchard Street. Please close the door.
 Hurry up and you will have a good tip.
 Stop here; here is the address and we are going to get off.
 Ring (*lit.* press on) the bell.
 Is Dr. Bellanger there?

VII, note 16. When some action is performed to a part of the body, the owner of that part is expressed as an indirect object of reference and not as a possessive adjective as in English. Example: *je me lave les mains*: I wash *my* hands. 12. See lesson XI, note 13. 13. *Fièvre* is used in French in sense of *temperature* and also in stronger sense of *fever*. 14. This idiom can be changed to locate the hurt (*le*

16 Entrez dans la salle d'attente, s'il vous plaît. Le docteur va venir.



17 Bonjour, monsieur, veuillez⁸ passer par ici.

18 Depuis quand souffrez⁹-vous?

19 Depuis hier soir. J'étais en transpiration quand je suis sorti¹⁰ du théâtre et j'ai attrapé un gros rhume.

20 Laissez-moi vous¹¹ tâter le pouls. Montrez-moi votre langue.

21 Croyez-vous, docteur, que les symptômes soient¹² graves?

22 Non, monsieur, le thermomètre montre que vous avez un tout petit peu de fièvre.¹³

23 J'ai très mal à la tête¹⁴ et j'ai des vertiges.¹⁵

24 Prenez ces pilules pour calmer la douleur.

25 Vous vous sentez¹⁶ mieux?

26 Au contraire, cela¹⁷ va plus mal.

27 Dans ce cas faites préparer cette ordonnance à la pharmacie et prenez une cuillerée de ce médicament toutes¹⁸ les deux heures.

28 Si vous n'allez pas mieux, revenez me voir dans trois jours.



mal) in another part of the body. Example: *avoir mal aux dents*: to have a toothache; *avoir mal à la gorge*: to have a sore throat. 15. In singular *vertige* means dizziness due to being on high place; in plural it means dizziness due to physical condition. 16. As transitive verb *sentir* means *to smell* or *to feel*; as intransitive it means *to feel* and, in French, is reflexive. 17. *Cela va mal* means *je vais mal*. It might also mean in another context: *things are going badly*. 18. *Tout*, with

- 16 âⁿtray dâⁿ la sal datâ^{nt}, seel voo plè. l^e doktè^{or} va v^eneer. Enter the waiting room, please. The doctor will be here in a minute (*lit.* is going to come).
- 17 hôⁿzhoor, m^esye^o, vè^oyay pâsay par eesee. How do you do, sir; please come this way (*lit.* pass by here).
- 18 d^epüee kâⁿ soofray voo? How long have you been ill (*lit.* since when suffer you)?
- 19 d^epüee yèr swar. zhaytè âⁿ trâⁿspeerasyôⁿ kâⁿ zh^esüee sor-tee dü tayâtr ay zhay atrapay eⁿ grô rüim. Since last night. I was in a perspiration when I came out of the theater and I caught a bad (*lit.* big) cold.
- 20 lèsay mwa voo tâtay l^e poo. môⁿtray mwa votr^e lân^g. Let me feel your pulse. Show me your tongue.
- 21 krwayay voo, doktè^{or}, k^e lay sèⁿptôm swa grav? Do you think, Doctor, that the symptoms are grave?
- 22 nôⁿ, m^esye^o, l^e tèrmomètr^e môⁿtr k^e voozavay eⁿ too p^(e)-tee pe^o d^e fyèvr. No, sir, the thermometer shows that you have a very slight temperature.
- 23 zhay trè mal a la tèt ay zhay day vèrtèezh. I have a bad headache and I feel dizzy.
- 24 pr^enay say peelül poor kalmay la doolè^{or}. Take these pills to stop (*lit.* to calm) the pain.
- 25 voo voo sâⁿtay mye^o? You feel better?
- 26 ô kôⁿtrèr, s^ela va plü mal. On the contrary, I feel worse.
- 27 dâⁿ s^e kâ fèt prayparay sèt ordonâⁿs a la farmasee ay pr^enay ün küee^eray d^e s^e maydeeka-mâⁿ toot lay de^ozè^{or}. In that case have this prescription filled at the drug store and take a spoonful of this medicine every two hours.
- 28 see voo nalay pâ mye^o, r^evnay m^e vwar dâⁿ trwa zhoor. If you are not better, come back to see me in three days.

basic meaning *all*, occasionally has sense of *every*. As an adjective, *tout* and its variants are always followed by an article in sense of *all*. *Tous les hommes*: all the men, *all of the men*; *toute la leçon*: all the lesson, *the whole lesson*. *Every* in the sense of *each*, is translated in the singular without an article: *toute femme*, every woman. *Every* in a repetitious sense, as first noted, is translated in the plural with an article: *every hour*: *toutes les heures*.



QUINZIÈME LEÇON

Fifteenth Lesson

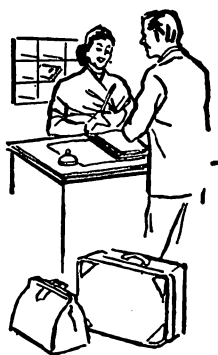
NOUVEAU VOCABULAIRE POUR CETTE LEÇON

l'eau courante , fem. (lô koorâ ^{nt})	the running water
donner sur (donay sûr)	to face, to look out on
quinze ¹ jours (kè ⁿ z zhoor)	two weeks
cela m'est égal ² (s ^e la mètaygal)	that is all the same to me
prévenir (prayvneer)	inform, to warn
dès maintenant (dè mè ⁿ tnâ ⁿ)	beginning now
le confort moderne (kô ⁿ for modèrn)	modern conveniences
déménager (daymaynazhay)	to move away
louer (looay or lway)	to rent
le chauffage (shôfazh)	the heating
par semaine (par s ^e mèn)	per week
la quinzaine (kè ⁿ zèn)	the fortnight
à l'avance (a lavâ ⁿ s)	in advance
aujourd'hui même (ôzhoordüee mèm)	this very day
la vue (vü)	the view
comprendre (kô ⁿ prâ ⁿ dr)	understand

FOOTNOTES: 1. In common parlance, two weeks, exactly fourteen days, are called *quinze jours*. Similarly a week is called *huit jours*, especially in the expression *d'aujourd'hui en huit*: a week from today. 2. *Egal* means literally *equal*. 3. *La pension* means *board* and *boarding house*. 4. This is subjunctive although it is spelled the same as indicative in this person. After *expressions of necessity*

promettre (promètr)
le paiement (pèmâⁿ)
le reçu (r^esü)
la brosse (bros)
s'installer (sèⁿstalay)
munir (müneer)

promise
the payment
receipt
brush
move in
furnish, supply



a noun clause takes the subjunctive. 5. The interrogative pronoun *what* becomes *ce qui* (subject), *ce que* (object) in a declarative sentence. 6. Subjunctive since it is required in a noun clause after *peu m'importe* which vaguely expresses an emotional attitude. 7. Idiom: by the month; by the week. 8. See lesson XII,

POUR LOUER UNE CHAMBRE · ARTICLES DE TOILETTE

(*poor looy ün shâⁿbr, arteekl d^e twalèt*) · To Rent a Room, Toilet Articles

la douche (<i>doosh</i>)	the shower
une éponge (<i>aypôⁿzh</i>)	a sponge
le lavabo (<i>lavabô</i>)	wash basin
la cuvette (<i>küivèt</i>)	wash basin
un bail (<i>bay</i>)	a lease
la pension complète ³ (<i>pâⁿsyôⁿ kôⁿplèt</i>)	board and room
le loyer (<i>lwayay</i>)	the rent
une serviette de bain (<i>sèrvyèt d^e bèⁿ</i>)	a bath towel
la pâte dentifrice (<i>pât dâⁿteefrees</i>)	the tooth paste
le rasoir (<i>râzwar</i>)	razor
la lame (<i>lam</i>)	blade
la brosse à dents (<i>bros a dâⁿ</i>)	tooth brush
la crème (<i>krèm</i>)	the cream, cold cream
le peigne (<i>pèny</i>)	comb
le parfum (<i>parfeⁿ</i>)	perfume
la poudre (<i>poodr</i>)	powder

note 14. 9. See lesson III, note 21, and compare note 5 above. 10. The adjective *tel* discussed in lesson XIII, note 11. French says, "Mr. a Such," for English, "Mr. So and So." 11. Archaic legal terminology. Past participle of *seoir* from which *asseoir* is derived. 12. The twenty-four hour clock is used in official an-



nouncements in France and in time-tables to avoid ambiguity; it is not used much in conversation. 13. Since *voici* means *see here*, the subject of the English becomes the object of the French. Example: *Here it is*: French: See it here: *La voici*. Similarly: *la voilà*, there it is.

CONVERSATION

1 Il faut que je déménage⁴ de cet hôtel aujourd'hui même.



2 Voulez-vous une chambre meublée ou non meublée?

3 J'aimerais mieux trois pièces non meublées: un salon, une chambre à coucher et une salle de bains.

4 Veuillez entrer et je vous montrerai ce que⁵ vous voulez.

5 Aimeriez-vous mieux un salon qui donne sur la rue ou sur la mer?

6 Si c'est possible, je prendrai celui avec la vue sur la mer.

7 Peu m'importe que la chambre à coucher donne⁶ sur la rue ou sur la mer.

8 Quel est le prix de cette chambre?

9 Quel est le prix de cet appartement?

10 Est-ce que vous louez au mois⁷ ou à la semaine?⁷

11 Combien est la pension complète?

12 Est-ce que les repas sont à la carte?

13 Je veux louer une grande chambre meublée.

14 Je dois vous prévenir qu'on paie⁸ à l'avance.

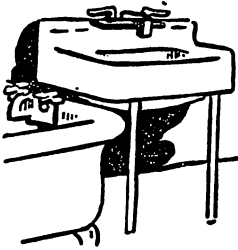
15 Je comprends, mais je préfère vous payer à la semaine.

16 Je suis désolé, mais tous mes arrangements sont au mois, et je ne peux pas louer à d'autres conditions.

17 Dans ce cas je vous paierai⁸ tous les quinze jours à l'avance; c'est tout ce que⁹ je peux vous promettre.



PRONUNCIATION	TRANSLATION
1 <i>eel fô k^e zh^e daymaynazh d^e sètôtèl ôzhoordüee mèm.</i>	I must move from this hotel this very day.
2 <i>voalay voo(z)ün shâⁿbr mè^o-blay oo nôⁿ mè^oblay?</i>	Do you want a furnished or unfurnished room?
3 <i>zhèmre mye^o trwa pyès nôⁿ mè^oblay: eⁿ salô, ün shâⁿbr a kooshay ay ün sal d^e bèⁿ.</i>	I should prefer three unfurnished rooms: a living room, a bedroom and a bathroom.
4 <i>vè^oyay(z)âⁿtray ay zh^e voo môⁿtr^eray s^e k^e voo voalay.</i>	Please come in and I will show you what you want.
5 <i>èmryay voo mye^o eⁿ salôⁿ kee don sür la rü oo sür la mèr?</i>	Would you prefer a living room which looks out on the street or on the sea?
6 <i>see sè poseebl, zh^e prâⁿdray s^elüee avèk la vü sür la mèr.</i>	If it is possible, I shall take the one with the view of (<i>lit.</i> on) the sea.
7 <i>pe^o mèⁿport k^e la shâⁿbr a kooshay don sür la rü oo sür la mèr.</i>	It makes no difference to me (<i>lit.</i> little does it matter to me) whether the bedroom looks out on the street or the sea.
8 <i>kèl è l^e pree d^e sèt shâⁿbr?</i>	What is the price of this room?
9 <i>kèl è l^e pree d^e sèt apartemâⁿ?</i>	What is the price of this apartment?
10 <i>èsk^e voo looy ô mwa oo a la s^emèn?</i>	Do you rent by the month or by the week?
11 <i>kôⁿbyèⁿ è la pâⁿsyôⁿ kôⁿplèt?</i>	How much are board and room?
12 <i>èsk^e lay r^epâ sôⁿ(t) a la kart?</i>	Are the meals <i>à la carte</i> ?
13 <i>zh^e ve^o looy ün grâⁿd shâⁿbr mè^oblay.</i>	I want to rent a large furnished room.
14 <i>zh^e dwa voo prayvneer kôⁿ pay a lavâ^{ns}.</i>	I must warn you that the rent is paid (<i>lit.</i> one pays) in advance.
15 <i>zh^e kôⁿprâⁿ, mè zh^e prayfèr voo pèyay a la s^emèn.</i>	I understand, but I prefer to pay you by the week.
16 <i>zh^e süee dayzolay, mè too mayzarâⁿzhmâⁿ sôⁿ(t) ô mwa, ay zh^e n^e pe^o pâ looy a dôtr^e kôⁿdeesyôⁿ.</i>	I am sorry, but all my arrangements are by the month, and I cannot rent under (<i>lit.</i> at) other conditions.
17 <i>dâⁿ s^e kâ zh^e voo pèray too lay kèⁿz zhoor a lavâ^{ns}; sè toosk^e zh^e pe^o voo promètr.</i>	In that case I will pay you every two weeks in advance; that is all I can promise you.



18 La chambre a, bien entendu,⁷ un lavabo et une salle de bains?

19 Oui, monsieur, nos chambres ont tout le confort moderne: gaz, électricité, chauffage central, eau courante froide et chaude.

20 Très bien, je veux m'installer le plus tôt possible, et, si vous voulez bien, je vais prendre la chambre dès maintenant.

21 Dans une heure mes bagages seront ici.

22 Voici le paiement de la première quinzaine. Voulez-vous bien me donner un reçu?

23 Voici le reçu signé.

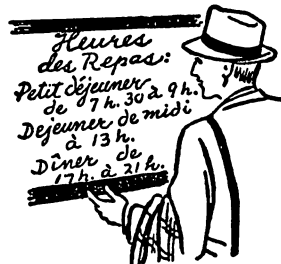
24 Je vous prie de le lire.

25 "Reçu de Monsieur un Tel¹⁰ la somme de 1500 (mille cinq cents) francs pour loyer et pension pendant quinze jours dans un immeuble sis¹¹ rue Madame, numéro 58 (cinquante-huit). Paris, le 1^{er} (premier) juin, 1950 (dix-neuf cent cinquante)."

26 Heures des repas: petit déjeuner de 7 h. 30 (sept heures trente) à 9 (neuf) heures; déjeuner de midi à 13 (treize¹²) heures; et dîner de 17 (dix-sept) heures jusqu'à 21 (vingt et une) heures très précises.

27 Veuillez me montrer la salle de bains.

28 La¹³ voici. Comme vous pouvez voir, elle est munie d'une douche, d'une éponge, de serviettes de bain et d'une petite armoire pour le peigne, la brosse, le parfum, la crème, la poudre, la pâte dentifrice, etc.



18 la shâⁿbr a, byèⁿnâⁿtâⁿdü, eⁿ lavabô ay ün sal d^e bèⁿ?

Of course the room has a wash basin and a bathroom?

19 wee, m^esy^e, nô shâⁿbr ôⁿ too l^e kôⁿfor modèrn: gâz, aylèk-treeseetay, shôfâzh sâⁿtral, ô koorâⁿt frwad ay shôd.

Yes, sir, our rooms have all modern conveniences: gas, electricity, central heating, cold and hot running water.

20 trè byèⁿ, zh^e ve^o mènⁿstalay l^e plü tô poseebl, ay, see voo voolay byèⁿ, zh^e vay prâⁿdr^e la shâⁿbr dè mènⁿtâⁿ.

Very well, I wish to move in just as soon as possible (*lit.* the soonest possible), and, if you are willing, I am going to take the room beginning now.

21 dâⁿzün è^or may bagazh s^erôⁿ-(t) eesee.

In an hour my luggage will be here.

22 vwasee l^e pèmâⁿ d^e la pr^emyèr kèⁿzèn. voolay voo byèⁿ m^e donay eⁿ r^esü?

Here is the payment for the first fortnight. Will you please give me a receipt?

23 vwasee l^e r^esü seenyay.

Here is the signed receipt.

24 zh^e voo pree d^e l^e leer.

Please read it (*lit.* I beg you to read it).

25 r^esü d^e m^esy^e eⁿ tèl la som d^e meel sèⁿ sâⁿ frâⁿ poor lwayay ay pâⁿsyôⁿ pâⁿdâⁿ kèⁿz zhoor dâⁿzeⁿneemè^obl see rü madam, nümayrô sèⁿkâⁿt üeet. paree, l^e pr^emyay zhüèⁿ, deez nè^of sâⁿ sèⁿkâⁿt.

“Received from Mr. So and So the sum of 1500 francs for board and room (*lit.* rent and board) for two weeks in an apartment house located Madame Street, number fifty-eight. Paris, June 1, 1950.”

26 è^or day r^epâ: p^(e)tee dayzhè^o-nay d^e sètè^or tràⁿt a nè^ovè^or; dayzhè^o-nay d^e meedee a trèz è^or; ay deenay d^e deesètè^or zhüska vèⁿtay ün è^or trè pray-seez.

Meal hours: breakfast from 7:30 to 9; lunch from 12 o'clock to one; and dinner from 5 P.M. to 9:00 P.M. sharp.

27 vè^oyay m^e môⁿtray la sal d^e bèⁿ.

Please show me the bathroom.

28 la vwasee. kom voo poovay vwar, èl è mûnee düⁿ doosh, düⁿ aypôⁿzh, d^e sèrvyèt d^e bèⁿ ay düⁿ p^eteet armwar poor l^e pèny, la bros, l^e parfèⁿ, la krèm, la poodr, la pât dâⁿtee-frees, èt saytayra.

Here it is. As you can see, it is provided with a shower, a sponge, bath towels and a little cabinet for comb, brush, perfume, cold cream, powder, tooth paste, etc.



SEIZIÈME LEÇON

Sixteenth Lesson

NOUVEAU VOCABULAIRE POUR CETTE LEÇON

le papier à lettres (papyay a lètr)	the letter paper
en pleine¹ ville (ân plèn veel)	in the center of the city
récemment² (raysamâ ⁿ)	recently
un exemplaire (aygzâ ⁿ plèr)	a (duplicate) copy
le connaissance (konès ⁿ mâ ⁿ)	the bill of lading
le représentant (r ^e prayzâ ⁿ tâ ⁿ)	representative, agent
la marchandise (marshâ ⁿ deez)	merchandise
la comptabilité (kô ⁿ tabeeleetay)	accounting
la poste aérienne³ (post aayryèn)	air mail
par avion (par avyô ⁿ)	by air mail
le bottin (botè ⁿ)	the city directory
le papier carbone (papyay karbon)	the carbon paper
le buvard (büvar)	the blotter
toucher (tooshay)	to touch, cash
au moins (ô mwè ⁿ)	at least
gagner (garyay)	to earn, make, gain
occupé (oküpay)	busy

FOOTNOTES: 1. *Plein* means *full*. 2. Adverbs are formed by adding *ment* to the feminine singular of the adjective. Adjectives ending in *ent* in the masculine singular (example: *récent*) remove the *ent* and add *emment* (example: *récemment*). Adjectives ending in *ant* in the masculine singular (example: *indépendant*) remove the *ant* and add *amment* (example: *indépendamment*). Note that the end-

suffire (süfeer)

la lettre (lètr)

la gomme (gom)

le crayon⁴ (krèyôⁿ)

la règle (règl)

to suffice

the letter

the eraser

the pencil

the rule, ruler



ing *ement* is pronounced the same as the ending *amment*. 3. Adjectives ending in *el* or *en* in the masculine double the consonant before adding *e* for the feminine. 4. In a word of this type the *y* is actually pronounced twice. First it combines with the *a* to form the vowel combination *ay* (or *ai*) which is pronounced *è*; then it

LES RELATIONS COMMERCIALES

(lay r^elâsyôⁿ komèrsyal) • Commercial Relations

la machine à écrire (<i>masheen a aykreer</i>)	the typewriter
la copie (<i>kopee</i>)	copy
la brochure (<i>broshür</i>)	pamphlet
la carte (<i>kart</i>)	map
la papeterie (<i>paptree</i>)	stationery store
le livre des recettes (<i>leevr^e day r^esèt</i>)	the cash book
la feuille de papier (<i>fè^oy d^e papyay</i>)	sheet of paper
un agenda ⁵ (<i>eⁿnazhèⁿda</i>)	a journal
la bourse ⁶ (<i>boors</i>)	stock exchange
une enveloppe (<i>âⁿvlop</i>)	an envelope
la plume (<i>plüm</i>)	the pen
l'encre , fem. (<i>lâⁿkr</i>)	the ink
un encrier (<i>âⁿkreeay</i>)	an inkstand
le tampon (<i>tâⁿpôⁿ</i>)	the rubber stamp
le sceau (<i>sô</i>)	the seal

combines with the following vowel as a semi-vowel *y*. In this connection note the unusual word *pays*, pronounced *payee* or even *pèyee*. 5. Not the unusual nasal vowel in this word. Another word having such a vowel is the name *Benjamin*: bèⁿzhamèⁿ. 6. Basic meaning of *bourse* is *purse*; it also means *scholarship*.



7. In the passive *occuper* takes *à* to introduce an infinitive; in the reflexive it takes *de*. (*S'occuper de* means *to concern oneself with*). 8. *La plupart*, meaning *most* in a quantitative sense, takes complete partitive after it. 9. See lesson XII, note 3. When English reads *whose*, paraphrase it as *of which* or *of whom* and

CONVERSATION

1 Qu'avez-vous fait aujourd'hui?

2 Avez-vous beaucoup travaillé?

3 Oui, nous avons été très occupés à rédiger la correspondance avec nos agences à travers l'Europe et en Orient.

4 Avez-vous écrit vos lettres en français?



5 Bien entendu, car le français se parle dans la plupart⁸ des capitales européennes, surtout dans les pays dont⁹ la langue locale n'est pas connue à l'étranger:¹⁰ par exemple la Roumanie, la Pologne, la Tchécoslovaquie, l'Égypte et la Perse.

6 Ecrivez-vous vos lettres à la machine?

7 Oui, généralement les maisons modernes tapent leurs lettres à triple exemplaire.¹⁰

8 Avez-vous des relations commerciales avec la Russie?

9 Oui, et nous faisons des affaires avec la Chine.

10 Je désire toucher une traite. J'ai besoin de dollars et je n'ai que des livres¹¹ sterling.¹²

11 A propos,¹⁰ j'ai perdu mon carnet¹³ de chèques.

12 Devons-nous aller à la banque immédiatement?

reorganize sentence, being sure to keep the relative at the head of the clause. Rearrange: *whose local language as of which the local language*. It is then clear that the French requires an article after *dont*. Furthermore, if, in English, *whose* modifies the object of the clause, there is a complicated inversion in the English whereas the French uses normal declarative order with *dont* still at the head of the

PRONUNCIATION

1 *kavay voo fè(t)ôzhoordüee?*

2 *avay voo bôkoo travayay?*

3 *wee, noozavôⁿzaytay trèzoküpay a raydeezhay la korèspôⁿ-dâⁿs avèk nôzazhâⁿs a travèr lè^orop ay âⁿnoryâⁿ.*

4 *avay voo(z) aykree vô lêtr âⁿfrâⁿsè?*

5 *byèⁿnâⁿtâⁿdü, kar l^e frâⁿsè s^e parl dâⁿ la plüpar day kapeetal(z) è^oropayèn, sürtoo dâⁿ lay payee dôⁿ la lâⁿg lokal nè pâ konü a laytrâⁿzhay: paraygzâⁿpl la roomanee, la polony, la tshaykoslovakée, layzheept ay la pèrs.*

6 *aykreevay voo vô lêtr a la masheen?*

7 *wee, zhaynayralmâⁿ lay mèzôⁿ modèrn tap lè^or lêtr a treepl aygzâⁿplèr.*

8 *avay voo day r^elasyôⁿ komèrsyal avèk la rüsee?*

9 *wee, ay noo f^ezôⁿ dayzafèr avèk la sheen.*

10 *zh^e dayzeer tooshay ün trèt. zhay b^ezwèⁿ d^e dolar ay zh^e nay k^e day leevr^e stèrlèⁿ.*

11 *a propô, zhay pèrdü môⁿ karnè d^e shèk.*

12 *d^evôⁿ noo alay a la baⁿk ee-maydyatmâⁿ?*

TRANSLATION

What did you do today?

Have you worked a great deal (*lit.* much)?

Yes, we have been very busy writing (*lit.* drawing up) the correspondence with our agencies throughout Europe and in the Orient.

Did you write your letters in French?

Of course, for French is spoken in most European capitals, especially in the countries whose local language is not known abroad: for example Romania, Poland, Czecho-Slovakia, Egypt and Persia.

Do you write your letters on the typewriter?

Yes, generally modern companies type their letters in three copies.

Have you business relations with Russia?

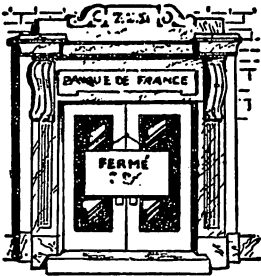
Yes, and we do business with China.

I wish to cash a draft. I need dollars and I have only pounds sterling.

By the way, I have lost my check book.

Must we go to the bank immediately?

clause. Example: *the man whose wife I met.* French: *the man of whom I met the wife:* l'homme dont j'ai rencontré la femme. 10. Idiom. 11. *Livre* in the sense of *pound* is feminine. 12. Note failure to make agreement in the case of this borrowed word. 13. Basic meaning of *carnet* is *memorandum book*. 14. *Temps* means time spread over a *period of time*; to express the idea of a *point*



13 Oui, nous devons y aller tout de suite, parce que les banques ferment à trois heures précises.

14 Quand devez-vous envoyer ces articles?

15 Faut-il expédier la marchandise tout de suite?

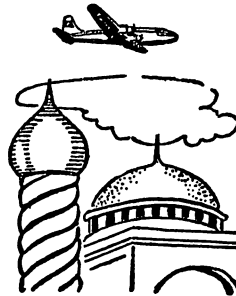
16 Ne voudriez-vous pas câbler d'abord à votre représentant?

17 Non, une lettre par avion suffira. Il la recevra lundi.

18 Je dois aussi écrire à mon représentant à Stamboul.

19 Quand part le courrier pour la Turquie? Faut-il attendre longtemps?

20 Le bateau part au moins une fois¹⁴ par semaine, mais il y a un service aérien tous les jours.



21 Est-ce que vous faites beaucoup d'affaires avec les Pays-Bas?

22 Récemment j'ai vendu beaucoup de marchandise en Hollande¹⁵ et en Belgique.

23 Dans ce cas vous devrez ouvrir un nouveau bureau à Paris, n'est-ce pas?

24 J'ai l'intention d'établir mon siège social¹⁶ en pleine ville près de la Bourse, le quinze de ce mois-ci.¹⁷



of time use fois. Example: *in the time of Louis XIV*: au temps de Louis XIV; but: *the first time*: la première fois. In the sense of *clock time* the word, however, is *heure*. Example: *what time is it*: quelle heure est-il? 15. Observe that *Hollande* has an aspirate *h*. 16. In this expression *siège social* (*lit.* company seat), the word *social* is an adjective derived from the common French word for company:

- 13 *wee, noo d'evôⁿzee alay tood süet, parsk^e lay bâ^{nk} fêrm a trwazê^or prayseez.* Yes we must go (*lit.* there) right away, because the banks close at precisely three o'clock.
- 14 *kâⁿ d'evay voo ân^vwayay say-zarteekl?* When must you send these articles?
- 15 *fôteel êkspaydyay la marshâⁿ-deez tood süet?* Must the merchandise be shipped immediately?
- 16 *n^e voodreeay voo pâ kâblay dabor a votr^e r^eprayzâⁿtâⁿ?* Wouldn't you like to cable first to your representative?
- 17 *nôⁿ, ün lêtr^e paravyôⁿ süfeera. eel la r^es^evra lêⁿdee.* No, an air mail (*lit.* by plane) letter will suffice. He will receive it Monday.
- 18 *zh^e dwazôsee aykreer a môⁿ r^e-prayzâⁿtâⁿ a stâⁿbool.* I must also write to my representative at Constantinople.
- 19 *kâⁿ par l^e kooryay poor la türkee? fôteel atâⁿdr lôⁿtâⁿ?* When does the mail leave for Turkey? Will (*lit.* is) it be necessary to wait long?
- 20 *l^e batô par ô mwèⁿ ün fwa par s^emèn, mèzeelya eⁿ sèrvees aayryèⁿ too lay zhoor.* The boat leaves at least once a week, but there is plane service every day.
- 21 *èsk^e voo fèt bôkoo dafèr avèk lay payee bâ?* Do you do much business with the Low Countries?
- 22 *raysamâⁿ zhay vâⁿdü bôkoo d^e marshâⁿdeez ânⁿ olâⁿd ay ânⁿ bêlzheek.* Recently I sold a lot of merchandise in Holland and in Belgium.
- 23 *dâⁿ s^e kâ voo d'evryayzoovreer eⁿ noovô bürô a paree, nès pâ?* In that case you ought to open a new office in Paris, don't you think (*lit.* is it not so)?
- 24 *zhay lêⁿtâⁿsyôⁿ daytableer môⁿ syèzh sosyal ânⁿ plèn veel prè d^e la boors, l^e kèⁿz d^e s^e mwa see.* I intend to establish my main office in the center of the city near the Stock Exchange, the fifteenth of this month.

société. The word *compagnie* is also used, however. 17. Since *ce mois* can mean either *this* or *that month*, it sometimes becomes necessary to make a distinction; *-ci* and *-là* are then added to the noun. Example: *ce livre-ci*: this book; *ce livre-là*: that book. In the example in sentence 24 above the same device is used for emphasis.



DIX-SEPTIÈME LEÇON

L'ARRIVÉE À PARIS

(La scène commence à la sortie du quai 8 à la Gare Saint-Lazare, puis¹ se déplace au fur et à mesure de l'action— puisqu'il s'agit² d'un film de cinéma plutôt que d'une pièce. Françoise de Nédélec, jeune Parisienne, surveille attentivement la foule des voyageurs qui débarquent d'un train transatlantique. Elle voit enfin celui³ qu'elle cherche;⁴ c'est Justin Lambert, jeune Américain, qui se met à lui faire des signes désespérés de l'autre côté de la barrière.)

FRANÇOISE, s'approchant de la barrière et criant: Ah! vous voilà, Justin. Je suis très contente de vous voir. Mais qu'avez-vous?

JUSTIN: Ah! bonjour, Françoise. Me voici, enfin. J'espère que vous allez pouvoir me tirer de ce camp de concentration, car j'ai perdu mon billet. N'est-ce pas qu'il faut le rendre à la sortie?



FRANÇOISE: Ne vous⁵ inquiétez pas. Je vais expliquer à l'employé que vous n'êtes pas habitué aux us et coutumes des continentaux. *(S'adressant à l'employé à la sortie.)* Ce jeune Américain a égaré son billet, ne sachant⁶ pas qu'il

FOOTNOTES: 1. *Alors* may be used in all senses of *then*; *puis* and *ensuite* may be used only when *then* means *next*. 2. *Il s'agit de* is a question of; i.e., *we are dealing with*. 3. *The one who (whom)*; *the ones who*; *he who*; *she who*; *they who*; *the one which*; *the ones which*; *those which* all translate by a demonstrative pronoun followed by a relative pronoun. 4. Observe that *chercher* is a TRANSITIVE VERB, which means that it takes a direct, instead of an indirect, object. 5. With NEGATIVE IMPERATIVE, pronoun objects come, as usual, before the verb. Compare lesson IX, note 8. 6. Present participle of *savoir*. 7. Imperfect tense of *falloir*. 8. Conditional tense of *pouvoir*. *Would you not be able*; i.e., *couldn't you?*

fallait⁷ le garder. Ne pourriez-vous⁸ pas le laisser sortir quand même?

L'EMPLOYÉ: Oh! ça va! Il a été contrôlé dans le train, son billet.⁹

FRANÇOISE, *se rapprochant de Justin*: Vous pouvez sortir. Votre billet a été contrôlé¹⁰ dans le train. (*Justin une fois sorti*,¹¹



elle poursuit.) C'est vrai. Je me rappelle. Le train transatlantique fait exception à la règle générale qu'on doit rendre les billets à la sortie.

JUSTIN: Il fait bon respirer enfin l'air libre de Paris. . . . Merci d'être venue me chercher. Je crois¹² que j'aurais pu¹³ me débrouiller tout de même. Si vous pouvez me guider jusqu'à la salle des bagages, j'ai une petite malle que je dois faire transporter d'abord à l'hôtel. Après cela je devrais passer à l'Hôtel Félix, rue Molière, pour être sûr d'avoir la chambre que j'ai

9. This repetition is colloquial. 10. Example of PASSIVE VOICE of verb. As in English, the passive is formed with the auxiliary verb *to be* and the past participle. In French this past participle agrees like an adjective with the subject. The tense of the passive is determined by the tense of the auxiliary. Hence *a été contrôlé* is COMPOUND PAST (*passé indéfini*) PASSIVE; literally: *has been checked* although English would say merely *was checked*. French, in conversational style, must use *compound past* because action was completed (see lesson III, note 15). 11. Once Justin has gone out. Note use of past participle which

retenue par lettre il y a¹⁴ deux mois. Je ne sais pas quels sont vos projets pour la journée ni si les convenances le permettent, mais j'aimerais bien¹⁵ que vous puissiez¹⁶ m'accompagner.

FRANÇOISE: Les convenances permettent bien¹⁷ des choses ces jours-ci, depuis que les Françaises ont fait de la résistance¹⁸ et ont obtenu le vote. On ne reçoit¹⁹ pas d'Américains tous les jours et, si vous voulez bien, je vous consacre toute l'après-midi,²⁰ car je suis persuadée qu'il vous tarde de visiter Paris sous la conduite d'un guide expérimenté comme moi. A propos, maman vous invite à dîner ce soir.

JUSTIN: J'accepte avec plaisir et l'invitation et l'offre de vos services professionnels.

FRANÇOISE: Maintenant il faudra²¹ récupérer vos bagages. J'espère que vous n'avez pas égaré aussi votre bulletin.

JUSTIN: Non, non, je l'ai toujours.

FRANÇOISE: Allons-y. . . . Voici la salle des pas perdus; l'escalier qui mène à la salle des bagages est au fond.

JUSTIN, *qui regarde les guichets*: Comme²² c'est pratique cet appareil automatique qui livre les billets quand l'employé joue sur le clavier! C'est encore plus moderne que chez nous. C'est comme ces nouvelles voitures à impériale que j'ai remarquées sur des voies de garage quand notre train entrain en gare. Nos ingénieurs de chemin de fer pourraient apprendre bien des choses s'ils se donnaient la peine de traverser la mer.

in Latin is called an *Ablative Absolute*; Justin sorti: *Justin having gone out*. In such a construction the past participle is used without an auxiliary. 12. From *croire*. If doubtful about the forms of irregular verbs, consult the *Grammatical Appendix* which treats irregular verbs in detail. 13. Conditional of *pouvoir*. Literally: *I would have been able* but more correctly *I could have*. 14. Special force of *il y a*. *Il y a deux mois*: two months ago. 15. *I should like*. 16. Subjunctive of *pouvoir*. See lesson XI, note 5, and lesson XIII, note 9. 17. *Bien des choses* is a more emphatic way of saying *beaucoup de choses*. 18. *Have participated in the Resistance* (during the German occupation of France from 1940 to 1944). 19. Present tense of *recevoir*. 20. Although normally used in the masculine, this word may become feminine to emphasize the notion of duration. 21. Future of *falloir*. 22. In an exclamation *how* is expressed as *comme* or *que*. Note that these interjections take normal declarative order and not an inversion as in English. 23. This adjective has an alternate masculine form

FRANÇOISE: Oui, mais à côté de ces quelques innovations, il y a encore beaucoup de vieux²³ matériel qui roule encore, des voitures à quatre roues qui ne communiquent pas les unes avec les autres.²⁴ On pourrait encore supprimer son voisin en le poussant par la portière comme Lafcadio l'a²⁵ fait dans *les Caves du Vatican*.²⁶



JUSTIN: En effet, j'ai vu ça aussi. . . .
Mais nous voici arrivés.

(Après les formalités à la salle des bagages notre intrépide voyageur descend dans la cour de la gare et hèle un taxi.)

JUSTIN: Chauffeur, Hôtel Félix, s'il vous plaît.

CHAUFFEUR: Hôtel Félix. Connais²⁷ pas.

FRANÇOISE: Oui, vous savez, ce petit hôtel derrière la fontaine Molière.

CHAUFFEUR: Ah! oui; j'y suis.²⁸

FRANÇOISE, à Justin: Je ne sais pas si vous pouvez vous orienter dans²⁹ Paris. Pouvez-vous me dire le nom de ce boulevard que nous traversons?

JUSTIN: Faites³⁰ comme si je ne le savais pas.

vieil to be used before a masculine noun beginning with a vowel. Feminine singular *vieille*; masculine plural *vieux*; feminine plural *vieilles*. 24. *With each other*. Each other may be the object of the verb, in which case it is a REFLEXIVE PRONOUN. *Nous nous aimons*: we love each other. *Ils se parlent*: they speak to each other. To distinguish from the normal reflexive, one may say: *Ils se parlent l'un à l'autre* for two people, or: *Ils se parlent les uns aux autres* for more than two. Each other may also be the object of a preposition, as: *with each other*: *l'un avec l'autre* or *les uns avec les autres*. 25. The verb *faire* generally cannot be used without an object. If the equivalent English has none, the French requires the pronoun object *le*. 26. Novel published by André Gide in 1914. This is the famous example of the Gidean "gratuitous act." 27. The omission of *je* before this verb is colloquial. 28. *I've got it*. 29. Generally *à* is used to translate *in* with the name of a city. *Dans* has the special meaning of *within the limits of*. 30. *Faites comme si . . .*: pretend I don't know. 31. Idiom: *in the 19th century*.



FRANÇOISE: C'est le Boulevard Haussmann. Il porte le nom de l'architecte qui a refait le plan de Paris au XIX^e siècle.³¹

JUSTIN: C'est sur le Boulevard Haussmann, n'est-ce pas, que Marcel Proust³² habitait dans sa fameuse chambre capitonnée de liège?

FRANÇOISE: Oui, mais derrière nous, dans la direction de l'Arc de Triomphe³³ qui n'est pas visible d'ici.

JUSTIN: Tiens! comme il est drôle, ce petit gendarme à la visière carrée! Il a l'air d'un porteur de chez nous doublé d'une fée, car son petit bâton blanc ressemble à une baguette magique.

FRANÇOISE: Vous êtes un poète doublé d'un railleur. Ne vous⁵ moquez pas de notre petit gardien de la paix. Il appartient à la meilleure police du³⁴ monde. Pendant l'occupation sa conduite a été exemplaire; il a tiré d'un mauvais pas beaucoup de patriotes tout en³⁵ ayant l'air d'agir de complicité avec les occupants. D'ailleurs, il ne faut pas dire "gendarme" mais "agent." Un gendarme est une sorte de soldat; il fait partie de la police d'état qui fonctionne plutôt à la campagne.

JUSTIN: Excusez mon manque de respect. . . . Et voilà un autobus avec sa plate-forme ouverte à l'arrière. Il est plus grand que je ne³⁶ m'y attendais.

FRANÇOISE: Vous parlez de dimensions maintenant pour me faire plaisir. Les Américains semblent attacher tant de prix à

32. Famous French novelist (1871-1922), author of *A la recherche du temps perdu* (*Remembrance of Things Past*), a novel in sixteen volumes in the French edition. 33. The Arch of Triumph, which commemorates the victories of Napoleon, was completed in 1836. 34. After a SUPERLATIVE the English *in* translates by *de*. 35. The use of *en* with the present participle indicates that the action occurs at the same time as the action of the main verb. The adverb *tout* is sometimes used to intensify this notion of simultaneousness and is then untranslated. See lesson IV, note 15. 36. A pleonastic *ne* is required in a relative clause depending on a comparative. See lesson IX, note 16. 37. Allusion to the 1944

la grandeur. . . . Oui, les nouveaux autobus sont comme ça. Vous savez que les anciens ont fait la campagne de Normandie³⁷ avec les Chleuhs et qu'ils y ont laissé leur peau.

JUSTIN: Comment, les Chleuhs?

FRANÇOISE: C'est le nom qu'on donnait aux Allemands pour qu'ils ne sachent³⁸ pas qu'on parlait d'eux. . . . Chauffeur, passez directement par la Place de l'Opéra.



CHAUFFEUR: Bien, mademoiselle. Mais, vous savez qu'aux heures d'affluence il y a toujours de l'embouteillage là-bas?

JUSTIN: On n'est pas pressé. Dites-moi, guide, quel est ce grand bâtiment à gauche qui ressemble à l'abside d'une immense église romane?

FRANÇOISE: C'est l'Opéra que vous ne reconnaissez pas parce que vous le voyez de derrière. Je crois qu'on donne *la Reine de Saba*³⁹ de Gounod.⁴⁰ *Manon*⁴¹ de Massenet⁴² est à l'affiche de l'Opéra Comique.⁴³

JUSTIN: Quelle est la différence entre l'Opéra⁴⁴ et l'Opéra Comique?

FRANÇOISE: C'est uniquement une différence de répertoire. Ce sont tous les deux des théâtres subventionnés. Du point de vue architecture et spectacle, il vaut mieux commencer par l'Opéra proprement dit qui est très impressionnant, surtout par⁴⁵ son escalier d'honneur et par son foyer où les spectateurs, pendant les entr'actes, se promènent et se regardent dans d'immenses glaces.

American campaign in Normandy. 38. Present subjunctive of *savoir*. See lesson IX, note 16. 39. *Queen of Sheba*. 40. Charles Gounod (1818-1893). 41. Taken from the famous novel *Manon Lescaut* (1731) by the Abbé Prévost. 42. Jules Massenet (1842-1912). 43. Founded in 18th century. The present theatre was rebuilt in 1898. 44. Founded in 17th century. The present building was built in 1875. 45. English says *for*. 46. Originally a play written in 1892 by the Belgian poet-dramatist Maurice Maeterlinck. 47. Claude Debussy (1862-1918). 48. Originally a royal palace begun in 1204, finished in 1848. 49. The Council of State is the highest "administrative" court in France (administrative courts handle

JUSTIN: J'aimerais bien voir ça, mais, en fait de musique, j'aimerais mieux entendre *Pelléas et Mélisande*⁴⁶ de Debussy.⁴⁷

FRANÇOISE: Nous passons maintenant devant la façade de l'Opéra. A droite vous voyez la terrasse du célèbre Café de la Paix, rendez-vous des Parisiens élégants et des hommes d'affaires. A présent nous descendons l'Avenue de l'Opéra; tout au fond vous voyez un coin du célèbre musée du Louvre⁴⁸ où il faudra passer au moins une journée entière. Mais voici la rue Molière. Vous savez que vous logez à côté de deux édifices importants, la Bibliothèque Nationale et le Palais-Royal. Construit



au XVII^e siècle, le Palais-Royal comprend le Conseil d'État,⁴⁹ le Théâtre Français et puis une cour intérieure autour de laquelle se trouvent toutes sortes de boutiques qui ouvrent sur une arcade. C'est un endroit très curieux.

JUSTIN: Qu'est-ce que vous entendez par Théâtre Français?

FRANÇOISE: Je veux dire la Comédie Française fondée par Molière au XVII^e siècle. C'est sur les planches de ce théâtre que le grand dramaturge est mort en 1673 en jouant le rôle du *Malade Imaginaire*.

JUSTIN: Est-ce que le Palais-Royal est plus vieux que le Louvre?

FRANÇOISE: Non. Certaines parties du Louvre actuel ont été construites⁵⁰ par le⁵⁰ roi François I^{er} au XVI^e siècle.

JUSTIN: J'espère que vous pourrez m'accompagner au Louvre.

civil cases and are separate from judicial courts). 50. An article is necessary when a title, other than *monsieur*, *madame* or *mademoiselle*, precedes a person's name. 51. Another negative working the same as *ne . . . pas*. See Lesson I, note 18, and lesson XIII, note 5. 52. *Voilà* may be used without an object. 53. *Entrer* is an intransitive verb requiring the preposition *dans*. 54. The pronoun *personne*, which may be used either as the subject or the object of the verb, requires a *ne* before the verb. In a compound tense or with an infinitive it follows the entire

Mais j'aperçois l'Hôtel Félix. Il n'a pas l'air bien élégant. Je me demande même comment il tient debout.



FRANÇOISE: Oui, on ne peut guère⁵¹ le comparer au Continental ni au Claridge. (*Le taxi s'arrête.*)

JUSTIN: Chauffeur, combien est-ce que je vous dois?

CHAUFFEUR: Le prix est indiqué au compteur. Soixante-dix francs s'il vous plaît.

JUSTIN: Voilà.⁵² Vous pouvez garder la monnaie. (*Ils entrent dans⁵³ l'hôtel.*) Tiens! il n'y a personne.⁵⁴ Holà! Quelqu'un!⁵⁵

FEMME DE JOURNÉE *qui entre*: Vous désirez, monsieur?

JUSTIN: Je viens⁵⁶ d'arriver. J'ai déjà retenu une chambre.

FEMME DE JOURNÉE: Je vais appeler le gérant. (*Criant.*) Monsieur Muche! Y a⁵⁷ un client!

LE GÉRANT, *entrant*: Bonjour, monsieur.

JUSTIN: C'est pour une chambre retenue d'avance.

LE GÉRANT: Bien,⁵⁸ monsieur. A⁵⁹ quel nom?

JUSTIN: Justin Lambert.

LE GÉRANT: La chambre vous attend. Vous avez des pièces d'identité?⁶⁰

JUSTIN: Voilà mon passeport.

LE GÉRANT: Voulez-vous remplir cette formule?

verb form (compare lesson XIII, note 5). Examples: *je n'ai vu personne; pour ne voir personne.* 55. The forms of this pronoun are *quelqu'un, quelqu'une, quelques-uns, quelques-unes* and derive from the adjective *quelque* (see lesson X, note 12). In the singular, this pronoun presents no problem since it has only one translation, *someone*. In the plural it translates English *a few* or *some* in the sense of *a few* used as pronouns. Example: *Some (a few) of my friends: quelques-uns de mes amis.* Compare this with the partitive (lesson II, note 18, and lesson IV, note 9). Standing



JUSTIN, *après avoir écrit*: Il n'y a pas d'autres formalités?

LE GÉRANT: En tant qu'étranger il faudra vous faire inscrire au commissariat de police du quartier si vous comptez rester plus d'un⁶¹ mois à Paris. —Maintenant, si vous voulez, je vous montrerai votre chambre. Le garçon montera vos affaires tout à l'heure.

JUSTIN, *à Françoise*: Voulez-vous m'attendre pendant que je visite ma nouvelle installation?

FRANÇOISE: Entendu. Je vous attends au salon.



alone as object of the verb, *quelques-uns (-unes)* would require the partitive pronoun *en* before the verb (see lesson V, note 16). 56. *I have just arrived*. Idiom: *Venir de* (in the present tense) + infinitive, *to have just*. 57. Colloquial for *il y a*. 58. *Very good*. 59. English says merely: *What name?* 60. Even French citizens are required to carry a *carte d'identité*. 61. The word for *than* in a comparison is normally *que*, but *more than*, followed by a number, is *plus de*.

VOCABULAIRE POUR CETTE LEÇON

A

abside (apseed) *f.* apse
accepter (aksèptay) to accept
actuel, -le (aktüèl), *adj.* present-day
adresser, s'adresser à (adrèsay), to address
affaire (afèr) *f.* affair ... *s f. pl.* business, things
affiche (afeesh) *f.* bill (of a theatre)
affluence (afiüâns) *f.* heures d'... rush hour
ailleurs (ayèr) *adv.* elsewhere; d'... moreover
air (èr) *m.* appearance; **avoir l'air (de)** to look (like)
allemand (almân) *adj.* German
aller. ça va (sa va) that's O.K.
ancien, -ne (ân'syèn) *adj.* ancient, old, former
apercevoir (apèrsè'vwar) to perceive; **j'aperçois** I notice
appareil (aparèy) *m.* apparatus, device
appartenir (apartèner) to belong
appeler (aplay) to call
architecte (arsheetèkt) *m.* architect
arrière (aryèr) *f.* à l'... in the rear
attacher du prix à quelque chose to set a value upon something
attendre (atândr) to await, wait for; s'... à to expect
attentivement (atântèevmân) *adv.* attentively
autobus (ôto'büs) *m.* bus
automatique (ôtomateek) *adj.* automatic
autour (ôtoor) *adv.* ... de *prep.* around
avance (avâns) *f.* à l'... ahead of time

B

baguette (bagèt) *f.* wand
barrière (baryèr) *f.* barrier, gate

bâtiment (bâteemân) *m.* building
bâton (bâtôn) *m.* stick, baton
blanc, blanche (blân, blânsh) *adj.* white
bon, -ne (bôn, bon) *adj.* good; **il fait bon** it is pleasant
bonne *f.* maid
boutique (booteek) *f.* shop

C

ça (sa) *pro.* (Contraction of *cela*) that
campagne (kânpány) *f.* country, campaign; **à la ...** in the country; **faire la ... de** to go through the campaign of
capitonner (kapeetonay) to pad
car (kar) *conj.* for
carré (karay) *adj.* square
cave (kav) *f.* cellar
célèbre (saylèbr) *adj.* famous
chercher (shèrshay) to look for, seek, get
chose (shôz) *f.* thing
clavier (klavyay) *m.* keyboard
client (kleeân) *m.* customer
comédie (komaydee) *f.* comedy
comme (kom) *prep. & conj.* as, like, since
commissariat (komeesarya) *m.* police station
communiquer (komüneekay) to communicate
comparer (kônparay) to compare
complicité (kônpleeseetay) *f.* agir de ... avec, to act in collusion with
comprendre (kônprândr) to understand, comprise
compteur (kôntèr) *m.* meter
conduite (kôndüet) *f.* conduct
connaître (konètr) to know, be acquainted with
consacrer (kônsakray) to devote

conseil (kôⁿsèy) *m.* counsel, advice
construire (kôⁿstrüeer) to construct;
construit constructed
content (kôⁿtân) *adj.* happy
continental (*pl.* continentaux) *m.*
 continental
contrôler (kôⁿtrôlay) to check
convenances (kôⁿvnâⁿs) *f. pl.* pro-
 prieties
côté (kô^tay) *m.* side; **de l'autre ...**
 on the other side; **à ... de, prep.,**
 beside
crier (kreeay) to shout
croire (krwar) to believe
curieux, curieuse (kürye^o, kürye^{oz})
adj. curious

D

débarquer (daybarkay) to disembark
débrouiller (daybrooyay) to disen-
 tangle; **se ... to manage**
demander (dê^mmânday) to ask; **se ...**
 to wonder
déplacer (dayplâsây) to move; **se ...**
 to move
depuis (dê^ppüee) *prep.* since; **... que**
conj. since
derrière (dêryèr) *prep.* behind
désespéré (dayzèspayray) *adj.* des-
 perate
devant (dê^vvân) *prep.* in front of
devoir (dê^vvwar) to have to, to owe; **je**
 dois I must, I owe
dire (deer) to say, tell
directement (deerêktê^mmân) *adv.* di-
 rectly
doubler (dooblay) to double
dramaturge (dramatürzh) *m.* drama-
 tist
droite (drwat) *f.* right (-hand) side
drôle (drôl) *adj.* funny

E

écrire (aykreer) to write; **écrit** writ-
 ten

égarer (aygaray) to mislay
embouteillage (ân^bootèyazh) *m.* traffic
 jam
employé (ân^plwayay) *m.* employee
endroit (ân^drwâ) *m.* place
enfin (ân^fên) *adv.* finally, in short
entendre (ân^tândr) to hear, mean;
entendu agreed
entier, entière (ân^tyay, ân^tyèr) *adj.*
 entire
entracte (ân^trakt) *m.* intermission
entrer (ân^tray) to enter; **... en gare**
 enter the station (*i.e.*, a train)
et (ay) *conj.* and; **et ... et** both ... and
étranger (aytrân^zhay) *m.*; **étrangère**
 (aytrân^zhèr) *f.* foreigner
exception (èksèpsyôⁿ) *f.* **faire ... to**
 make an exception
exemplaire (aygzân^plèr) *adj.* exem-
 plary
expérimenté (èkspayreemân^tay) *adj.*
 experienced
expliquer (èkspleekay) to explain

F

faire (fêr) to do, make, act
fait (fêt) *m.* **en ... de** as regards
falloir (falwar) to be necessary; **il**
faudra it will be necessary
fameux, fameuse (fame^o, fame^{oz})
adj. famous
fée (fay) *f.* fairy
femme (fam) *f.* **... de** journée char-
 woman
fonctionner (fôn^ksyonay) to function
fond (fôn) *m.* **au ... de** at the far end
fonder (fôn^day) to found
fontaine (fôn^ttèn) *f.* fountain
formalité (formalèetay) *f.* formality
formule (formül) *f.* formula, form
foule (fool) *f.* crowd
foyer (fwayay) *m.* foyer (theatre),
 lobby
fur (für) *m.* **au ... et à** mesure (de)
 progressively (with)

G

garçon (garsôⁿ) *m.* boy, waiter, bell-boy
garder (garday) to keep
gardien (gardyèⁿ) *m.* guardian; ... **de la paix** policeman
gauche (gôsh) *f.* left (-hand) side
gendarme (zhâⁿdarm) gendarme (member of national militarized police)
gérant (zhayrân) *m.* manager
glace (glas) *f.* mirror
grandeur (grâⁿdè^or) *f.* size, bigness
guide (geed) *m.* guide
guider (geeday) to guide

H

habitué (abeetüay) *adj.* accustomed
héler (aylay) to hail
heure (è^or) *f.* hour; **tout à l'...** presently, just now
holà (ola) *interj.* hallo!
honneur (onè^or) *m.* honor
hôtel (ôtèl) *m.* hotel

I • J

ici (eesee) *adv.* here
1^{er} (abbreviation for **premier**) first
impériale (èⁿpayryal) *f.* top-deck (of bus, etc.); **voiture à ... double-decker** car
impressionnant (èⁿprèsyonân) *adj.* impressive
ingénieur (èⁿzhaynyè^or) *m.* engineer
inquiéter (èⁿkyaytay) s'... to become worried
inscrire (èⁿskreer) **se faire ...** to register
intérieur (èⁿtayryè^or) *adj.* interior
intrépide (èⁿtraypeed) *adj.* intrepid
inviter (èⁿvetay) to invite
jeune (zhè^on) *adj.* young
jouer (zhway) to play
journée (zhoornay) *f.* day

L • M

laisser (lèsay) to let, leave
liège (lyèzh) *m.* cork
livrer (leevray) to deliver
loger (lozhay) to lodge
magique (mazheck) *adj.* magic
malade (malad) *adj.* sick; ... **imaginaire** hypochondriac
maman (mamân) *f.* mama
manque (mâⁿk) *m.* lack
matériel (matayryèl) *m.* equipment
mener (mèⁿay) to lead
mettre (mètr) to put; **se ... à** to begin
mieux (mye^o) *adv.* better
moderne (modèrn) *adj.* modern
monde (môⁿd) *m.* world; **tout le ...** everybody
monnaie (monè) *f.* change
monter (môⁿtay) to go up, carry up
montrer (môⁿtray) to show
moquer (mokay) **se ... de** to make fun of
mourir (mooreer) to die; **il est mort** he died
musée (müzay) *m.* museum

N • O

nom (nôⁿ) *m.* name
obtenir (optèⁿeer) to obtain
occupant (oküpân) *m.* occupier
offre (ofr) *f.* offer
orienter (oryâⁿtay) to orient
ouvrir (oovreer) to open; **ouvert** open

P

paix (pè) *f.* peace
palais (palè) *m.* palace
parisien, parisienne (parezyèⁿ, parezyèn) *adj.* Parisian
partie (partee) *f.* part; **faire ... de** to be part of
passport (pâspor) *m.* passport
passer (pâsay) to pass; ... **à** to pass by; **se ...** to take place

patriote (patreot) *m.* patriot
peau (pô) *f.* skin; **y laisser sa ...** not to come out alive
peine (pèn) *f.* **se donner la ...** to take the trouble
pendant (pândân) *prep.* during, for; **... que conj.** while
perdre (pèdr) to lose
permettre (pèrmètr) to permit
personne (pèrson) *f.* person; **ne ... pro.** no one
persuader (pèrsûaday) to persuade
petit (pêtee) *adj.* little
peut-être (pètêtr) *adv.* perhaps
pièce (pyès) *f.* play, room; **... d'identité** identification paper
plaisir (plèzeer) *m.* pleasure; **faire ...** to please
plan (plân) *m.* map (of a city)
planche (plânsh) *f.* plank, board
plate-forme (platform) *f.* platform
plutôt (plûtô) *adv.* rather
poète (poèt) *m.* poet
point (pwèn) *m.* **... de vue** point of view
porteur (portèor) *m.* porter
poursuivre (poorsûeevr) to pursue, continue
pousser (poosay) to push, grow
pouvoir (poovwar) to be able; **vous pouvez** you can, you may; **je pourrai** I shall be able
pratique (prateek) *adj.* practical
près (prè) *adv.* **... de** near; **de ...** close up
pressé (prèsay) *adj.* in a hurry
prix (pree) *m.* prize, price, value
professionnel, -le (profèsyonèl) *adj.* professional
projet (prozhè) *m.* plan
propos (propô) *m.* word; **à ...** by the way
proprement (propremân) *adv.* **... dit** properly so-called
puis (püee) *adv.* then

Q • R

quai (kay) *m.* platform (of a station)
quand (kân) *conj.* when; **... même** just the same
quartier (kartyay) *m.* quarter, section, district
quelque (kèlke) *adj.* a few, few
railleur (ràyèor) *m.* scoffer
rappeler (raplay) **se ...** to remember
rapprocher (raproshay) **se ... de** to draw close to
recevoir (reèvvwar) to receive
reconnaître (rèkonètr) to recognize
recupérer (raykûpayray) to recover
refaire (rèfèr) to remake
regarder (règarday) to look at; **se ...** to look at oneself or at each other
reine (rèn) *f.* queen
remarquer (rèmarkay) to notice; **faire ...** to call one's attention to; **se faire ...** to attract attention
remplir (rànploor) to fill
rendez-vous (ràndayvoo) *m.* meeting place
rendre (ràndr) to give back; **se ...** to surrender
répertoire (raypèrtwar) *m.* repertory
respect (rèspè) *m.* respect
respirer (rèspeeray) to breathe
ressembler (rèsânbloy) to resemble
rester (rèstay) to remain
roi (rwa) *m.* king
rôle (rôl) *m.* part (in a play)
roman (român) *adj.* romanesque; **roman** *m.* novel
roue (roo) *f.* wheel
rouler (roolay) to roll, run

S

salle (sal) *f.* **... des pas perdus** waiting room
scène (sèn) *f.* scene, stage
sembler (sânbloy) to seem
signe (seeny) *m.* sign

soldat (solda) m. soldier
sorte (sort) f. sort; **de ... que conj.**
 so that
sortie (sortee) f. exit
sortir (sorteer) to go out
spectacle (spèktakl) m. spectacle, show
spectateur (spèktatè^{or}) m. spectator
subventionner (sübvâⁿsyonay) to sub-
sidize
suivre (süeevr) to follow
supprimer (süpreemay) to suppress,
 do away with
sûr (sür) adj. sure
surveiller (sürvèyay) to supervise,
 watch

T

tant (tân) adv. en ... que as
tarder (tarday) il lui tarde de he
 longs to
tenir (têneer) to hold, to keep; tiens
 I say; ... debout to stand up
terrasse (tèras) f. terrace (also side-
 walk area covered by tables in front
 of a café)
tirer (teeray) to pull; ... d'un mau-
vais pas to get out of a bad fix
toujours (toozhoor) adv. always, still
tout (too) adj. all; **tous (toutes) les**

deux both; ... adv. quite; ... **de**
même just the same; ... **à fait**
 altogether
transatlantique (trânⁿzatlânⁿteek) adj.
un train ... a transatlantic boat train
transporter (trânⁿsportay) to transport,
 carry
traverser (travèrsay) to cross

U • V

uniquement (üneekmân) adv. exclu-
 sively
us (ü) m. pl. ... et coutumes (üzay-
kootüm) the ways and customs
valoir (valwar) to be worth, il vaut
mieux it is better
vieux (vye^o) m. vieil (vyèy) m.
vieille (vyèye) f. old
visière (veezyèr) f. vizor
voie (vwa) f. way, track; ... **de garage**
 side-track
voir (vwar) to see; vous voyez you
 see
voisin (vwazèⁿ) m. neighbor
voiture (vwatür) f. carriage, car, rail-
 way car
voyageur (vwayazhè^{or}) traveller, pas-
 senger
vrai (vrè) adj. true





DIX-HUITIÈME LEÇON

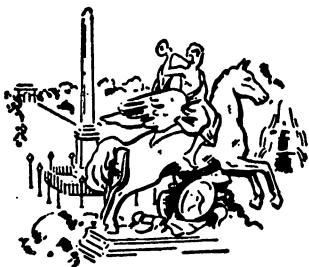
UNE CONVERSATION AU SALON

(La scène se passe dans le salon de Madame de Nédélec, mère de Françoise. Quand le rideau se lève, Justin est seul.)

MADAME DE N., *qui entre*: Ah! bonjour, Justin. Je suis la mère de Françoise.

JUSTIN: Je suis très heureux de faire votre connaissance, Madame.

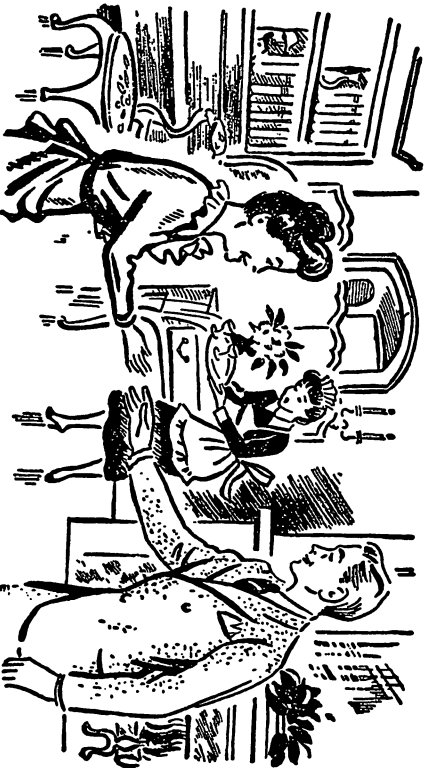
MADAME DE N.: Vous m'excuserez, j'espère, de n'être¹ pas allée² à votre rencontre tout à l'heure. La nouvelle bonne qu'on vient de m'envoyer manque d'expérience et n'ose pas lever le³ doigt sans que⁴ je sois là pour lui donner des ordres. Il y avait justement une petite crise à la cuisine quand vous êtes arrivé parce qu'elle ne savait pas faire marcher le fourneau à gaz.



JUSTIN: Françoise me disait qu'on a des difficultés actuellement pour se faire servir.

MADAME DE N.: C'est malheureusement trop vrai. Comme je ne vois pas Françoise, je suppose

FOOTNOTES: 1. For not having gone. Excuser takes *de* (in sense of *for*) to introduce a DEPENDENT INFINITIVE. This infinitive, in its compound form, uses the auxiliary *être* because *aller* belongs to the list of verbs conjugated with *être* (see lesson III, note 15). The most common verbs conjugated with *être* are: *aller, arriver, descendre, devenir, entrer, monter, mourir, naître, partir, rentrer, rester, retourner, revenir, sortir, tomber, venir*. 2. In this example the past participle agrees with the implied subject of the infinitive (see lesson VII, note 11). 3. With parts of the body in the predicate of the sentence, French uses definite article instead of possessive adjective. Example: *Je lève la main*: I raise my hand. In other expressions the English possessive adjective becomes an INDIRECT OBJECT OF REFERENCE: *Je me lave les mains*: I wash my hands (the hands with reference to



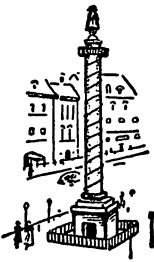
qu'elle est encore occupée à sa toilette. Je sais qu'elle voulait mettre sa nouvelle robe pour vous éblouir ce soir. Une nouvelle robe est si rare dans sa vie, pauvre chérie. Mes enfants ne connaissent pas la vie facile de mon enfance, enfin celle que vous connaissez encore dans la^s libre Amérique. Mais ne parlons pas de cela.⁶ Racontez-moi plutôt votre promenade de cet après-midi. Qu'avez-vous vu^t de notre belle ville de Paris?

JUSTIN: Tout et rien. Nous avons fait comme si je n'avais qu'une seule après-midi à y passer, ce qui n'est pas vrai, car j'ai des semaines devant moi. Je voulais tout⁸ voir en une seule fois sans rien⁹ approfondir. Voulez-vous que je vous raconte¹⁰ notre itinéraire?

(me). See lesson XIV, note 11. 4. Another conjunction requiring subjunctive (see lesson IX, note 16). Observe the awkwardness of the English equivalent: *without my being there*. 5. When the adjective precedes the name of a country, an article is also required. 6. **INDEFINITE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN** translated *this (ceci)* or *that (cela)* when there is no precise antecedent giving number and gender. See lesson XI, note 10 and lesson XVII, note 3. 7. Past participle of *voir*. 8. **Tout** in the sense of *everything*, though really a pronoun, is treated as an adverb in compound tenses and with an infinitive. Examples: *j'ai tout vu; pour tout dire*. 9. **Sans** has a negative force. *Rien* must therefore be used after it instead of *quelque chose (something)*. *Rien* is a pronoun requiring also a *ne* before the verb. It may be subject or object. As object, in a compound tense, it occupies the same position as *pas*, that is, it goes after the auxiliary. Example: *je n'ai rien vu*. I have seen nothing. Similarly with an infinitive, it works like *ne . . .*

MADAME DE N.: Volontiers. Je vous écoute avec plaisir.

JUSTIN: Après avoir quitté¹¹ mon hôtel rue¹² Molière, nous avons pris¹³ par des rues étroites, nous avons traversé au pas de course le jardin du Palais-Royal, et nous avons fait halte au beau milieu de la Place du Carrousel pour jouir de la perspective extraordinaire. Il faisait un temps superbe. Autour de nous, en forme de fer à cheval, il y avait les ailes de ce vaste édifice qu'est¹⁴ le Louvre; à l'ouest, à travers le jardin classique des Tuileries¹⁵ avec ses statues et ses parterres pleins de fleurs, on voyait¹⁶ d'abord la Place de la Concorde¹⁷ avec ses fontaines et son obélisque au centre; plus loin encore, toujours en ligne droite, c'était l'Avenue des Champs-Élysées¹⁸ qu'on voyait à peine, naturellement; et, tout au bout, se dressait majestueusement sur la hauteur l'Arc de Triomphe de l'Étoile.¹⁹



MADAME DE N.: Oui, c'est là²⁰ la plus jolie perspective de toute la ville. Le Paris moderne s'évanouit dans les lointains de cette perspective classique. Évidemment tout le Louvre, et notamment les parties qui entourent la Place du Carrousel, ne date pas du XVII^e siècle, mais on ne s'en douterait pas. De même les façades classiques à²¹ arcade de la rue de Rivoli²² ne datent que des premières années du XIX^e siècle,

pas. Example: *pour ne rien dire*: in order to say nothing. (In the above example the negative *sans* absorbs the *ne*). Compare the word order with *personne* (lesson XVII, note 54). 10. See lesson XIII, note 9. Translation: *Do you want me to tell you?* In translating such an English sentence into French, this rule must be observed: *An infinitive in French cannot have a subject*. The infinitive phrase becomes a subordinate clause in the subjunctive. Note that the verbs *demander*, *ordonner*, *commander* take a construction which may seem to violate the rule. Example: *Je demande à Jean de le faire*: I ask John to do it. *John*, however, is indirect object in French, not direct object. Compare lesson XIII, note 19. 11. *Quitter* means *to leave* a place which is mentioned. If the place is not mentioned, use *partir*. Example: *Je quitte Paris*. But: *Je pars maintenant*. The expression *partir de* can be substituted for *quitter*. Examples: *J'ai quitté Paris*; *je suis parti de Paris*. *Laisser* means *to leave behind*. Example: *J'ai laissé le livre sur la table*. 12. With the name of the street prepositions are frequently omitted. 13. Past participle of *prendre*. 14. Inversion in a relative clause is very common.

mais elles ressemblent à celles, plus anciennes, de la Place Vendôme que vous avez vue sans doute.

JUSTIN: Non. Françoise m'a seulement fait remarquer la colonne Vendôme²³ qui se voit²⁴ très bien des Tuileries. Qu'est-ce que c'est²⁵ au juste que la Place Vendôme?

MADAME DE N.: C'est une grande place octogonale, bordée de²⁶ bâtiments modernes ou modernisés, mais dont les façades sont l'œuvre de Mansart, architecte de Louis XIV. Mais où êtes-vous allés ensuite?

JUSTIN: Place de la Concorde—sans contredit la plus belle place du monde. Puis, demi-tour, en passant devant la Chambre des Députés²⁷—peut-être dois-je²⁸ dire maintenant l'Assemblée Nationale²⁹—et en suivant le quai jusqu'à l'Institut. Françoise m'a expliqué quelque chose que j'ignorais, c'est que ce qu'on appelle couramment l'Institut est l'Académie des Sciences Morales et Politiques et que l'Institut de France, proprement dit, comprend aussi la célèbre Académie Française, fondée par Richelieu³⁰ en 1634, ainsi que trois autres académies un peu moins connues.³¹

MADAME DE N.: Vous savez que pour un Français, pour qui l'activité intellectuelle prime tout, être élu membre de l'Académie Française est le plus grand honneur possible. C'est ainsi que la France honore ses grands intellectuels et écrivains.

Example: *la maison qu'a vue Jean*: the house which John saw. In *qu'est le Louvre*, *que* is an accusative, not a nominative form. English says: *It is I*. But French says: *C'est moi*: It is me. 15. The Tuileries Palace was burned by the mob in 1871 because Napoleon III had lived there. 16. Imperfect tense of *voir*. 17. Built in 1748. 18. *Elysian Fields*. 19. *Star*. The square is called the *Étoile* because it is a hub from which radiate out twelve broad avenues. 20. Idiom. Emphatic way of saying: *That is*. 21. In a descriptive phrase *with* translates à. Example: *L'homme au chapeau*: the man with the hat. 22. Italian village where Napoleon defeated the Austrians in 1797. 23. Tall bronze column, 142 feet high, commemorating Napoleonic victories. 24. *Can be seen* (lit. *is seen*). The French avoids a true PASSIVE (see lesson XVII, note 10). In translating English passive, the following principles should be observed: If the *agent* is expressed with the English passive, the French cannot avoid a passive. *The music was composed by Debussy*: La musique a été composée par Debussy. If the agent is not expressed and if the subject is a thing, the passive may be avoided by use of the reflexive or

Évidemment, je sais que le choix de l'Académie n'a pas toujours été heureux et que certains de nos grands auteurs n'en ont jamais fait partie.



JUSTIN: En effet, je crois qu'André Gide, bien qu'ayant reçu⁸² le prix Nobel, n'est pas membre de l'Académie.

MADAME DE N.: C'est sans doute qu'il n'y tient pas. Les honneurs ne lui disent pas grand'chose.⁸³

JUSTIN: Par contre il y a l'exemple de Napoléon, je crois, qui, pendant la campagne d'Égypte, signait ses dépêches "général en chef et membre de l'Institut."

MADAME DE N.: Avez-vous traversé le Pont des Arts qui se trouve devant l'Institut?

JUSTIN: Voulez-vous dire cette passerelle? En effet. La vue est superbe, n'est-ce pas? Puis nous avons retraversé la Seine par le Pont Neuf. C'est le pont le plus ancien de Paris, n'est-ce pas?

MADAME DE N.: Oui, il date de la fin du XVI^e siècle.

JUSTIN: Après avoir admiré⁸⁴ les deux maisons du temps de Henri IV⁸⁵ qui se trouvent au bout de l'Île de la Cité,⁸⁶ nous avons pénétré dans la cour du Palais de Justice⁸⁷—non sans

by using *on* as the subject of an active verb. Example: *French is spoken here*: Le français se parle ici; or *On parle français ici*. If the agent is not expressed and the subject is a person, the only way to avoid the passive is to use *on*. Example: *He was punished*: *On l'a puni*. 25. *Qu'est-ce que c'est que* means *what is* when the expected answer is a definition. 26. If the passive does not express a real action and has only a descriptive force, the *agent* in the passive (see note 24 above) is introduced by *de* instead of *by par*. 27. Until 1940 the legislative branch of the French government was divided into the *Chamber of Deputies* and the *Senate*. 28. When *peut-être* precedes the verb *there is an automatic inversion*. 29. The *Chamber of Deputies* has had its name changed to *National Assembly* by the Constitution of 1946. The same constitution abolished the senate and replaced it by a number of consultative bodies without legislative authority. 30. Armand-Jean du Plessis, Cardinal de Richelieu (1585-1642), prime minister of France under Louis XIII. 31. Past participle of *connaître*. 32. *Having received*.

avoir préalablement examiné les vieilles tours gothiques du côté nord, vestiges du château fort royal—et nous avons visité la Sainte-Chapelle de Louis IX.³⁸ Le soleil éclairait les vitraux quand nous sommes entrés. Jamais je n'ai rien vu d'aussi beau,³⁹ me semble-t-il.⁴⁰

MADAME DE N.: Quand vous verrez⁴¹ la cathédrale de Chartres où les bleus éclatants des vitraux font contraste avec l'obscurité de la nef et où les vastes dimensions ajoutent au caractère irréel de l'endroit, je crois que vous l'aimerez encore mieux que la Sainte-Chapelle. Avez-vous visité Notre-Dame?⁴²



JUSTIN: Oui, tout de suite après la Sainte-Chapelle. Françoise m'a un peu gâté ma visite en parlant de Chartres. Il paraît que les statues du porche ne sont pas authentiques, que les vitraux sont moins beaux, et je ne sais quoi encore.⁴³ Comme c'était ma première cathédrale gothique, j'étais néanmoins très impressionné. Nous sommes même montés dans une tour pour profiter de la vue. De là on peut voir tous les monuments de Paris. C'est heureux qu'il n'y ait pas de gratte-ciel comme à Anvers;⁴⁴ cela gênerait tout.

MADAME DE N.: Il y a de grands bâtiments qu'on pourrait presque appeler des gratte-ciel,⁴⁵ mais en dehors de la ville, près du Bourget.⁴⁶

33. Idiom: *Cela ne lui dit pas grand'chose*: That does not mean much to him.
 34. See lesson II, note 22. The preposition *après* requires after it the COMPOUND INFINITIVE, never the simple infinitive. 35. *Henri Quatre*. With names of sovereigns cardinal numbers are used except with the first in a series. Example: *François 1er*: Francis I. 36. In the Middle Ages *Cité* meant a walled city. The oldest part of London is still called the *City*. The *Ile de la Cité* is the oldest part of Paris. 37. The Paris Law Courts. In the Middle Ages it was the royal castle, parts of which are incorporated in the modern buildings. 38. The Holy Chapel, built by Saint Louis from 1242 to 1248. 39. When an adjective modifies *quelque chose* or *rien*, it takes the masculine form and goes into a prepositional phrase with *de*. Example: *quelque chose de beau*: something beautiful. 40. The inverted word order here is idiomatic. 41. Future of *voir*. See lesson XIII, note 8. 42. Our Lady of Paris, famous cathedral begun in 1163 and finished in 1230. 43. Idiom: *I don't know what else*. 44. Antwerp, Belgium. 45. This word is

JUSTIN: Comme j'avais voulu voir la petite église de Saint-Julien-le-Pauvre qui, d'après Françoise, est plus ancienne que Notre-Dame et qui était visible du haut de la cathédrale, nous avons de nouveau traversé la Seine pour la voir. Heureusement que⁴⁷ la Seine n'est pas très large! Mais j'abrège: ensuite ce furent⁴⁸ les ruines gallo-romaines des Thermes,⁴⁹ la Sorbonne⁵⁰ et le Collège de France,⁵¹ puis la façade gothique de l'Hôtel de Cluny;⁵² puis de nouveau, traversée de la Seine en passant par la pittoresque Ile Saint-Louis où nous nous sommes arrêtés devant l'Hôtel Lauzun,⁵³ décoré, m'a-t-on dit,⁵⁴ par les mêmes artistes que le château de Versailles. Le but de notre promenade était le Marais.⁵⁵

MADAME DE N.: Pourquoi voir⁵⁶ le Marais quand, à deux pas de la Sorbonne, se trouvaient le Panthéon⁵⁷ et le Jardin du Luxembourg?⁵⁸

JUSTIN: Je sais très bien que le Marais est considéré comme malsain et qu'on est en train de le démolir pour cette raison. C'est pourquoi j'étais si pressé de le voir, comme s'il allait disparaître du jour au lendemain.⁵⁹



MADAME DE N.: Il est difficile de s'imaginer que ce quartier délabré était le quartier aristocratique au XVI^e et XVII^e siècles. La Place des Vosges,⁶⁰ l'ancienne Place Royale construite par Henri IV sur l'emplacement d'un ancien palais dans la cour duquel⁶¹ le roi Henri II a péri dans un tournoi, la Place des Vosges, dis-je, a un air très coquet avec ses vieilles maisons Renaissance⁶² en briques.

invariable and takes no s in the plural. 46. *Le Bourget* is an airport on the northern perimeter of Paris. 47. When *heureusement* begins the sentence it is followed by *que* in colloquial style. 48. This is in reality a literary expression. Hence the use of the *passé simple*, q.v. 49. *The Baths*, part of a Roman palace believed to have been built by the Emperor Constantius Chlorus about the year 300. 50. The Sorbonne is a large building housing the Faculties of Letters and Sciences of the University of Paris. The present Sorbonne was built about 1885

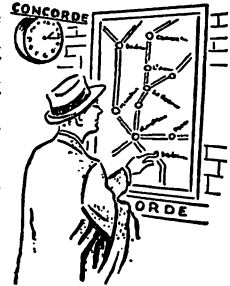
JUSTIN: Oui, mais j'aime autant l'imprévu du Marais. J'aime pousser une vieille porte cochère pour me trouver soudain dans la cour d'un vieil hôtel de l'ancienne noblesse, tels que l'Hôtel Lamoignon,⁶³ l'Hôtel de Sully,⁶⁴ l'Hôtel de Beauvais,⁶⁵ l'Hôtel des Ambassadeurs de Hollande,⁶⁶ sans parler de l'Hôtel de Sens⁶⁷ avec ses tourelles gothiques.

MADAME DE N.: Oui, tout cela est très curieux. Mais avez-vous vu au moins le Paris des grands boulevards?

JUSTIN: Oui, de la Bastille⁶⁸ nous avons pris⁶⁹ le métro jusqu'à l'Étoile pour nous replonger dans le Paris moderne, le Paris des grands boulevards et des Américains.

MADAME DE N.: Évidemment les Anglo-Saxons sont à éviter⁷⁰ si vous voulez perfectionner votre français.

JUSTIN: Je me suis pourtant⁷¹ conduit comme un Américain dans le métro. Nous sommes descendus vers le quai quand le train y était déjà. Première gaffe: j'ai essayé de pousser le portillon automatique qui nous barrait l'entrée du quai, et pourtant il y avait un écriteau, comme Françoise me l'a⁷² montré ensuite, nous avisant qu'il était inutile de pousser. Elle s'est moquée⁷³ de moi. Le train parti, le portillon s'est ouvert⁷⁴ pour nous laisser passer. Deuxième gaffe: j'ai constaté que, pour descendre du train, les voyageurs ouvraient eux-mêmes les portes en tirant très fort. Une fois dans le train, je me suis retourné et j'ai fermé la porte. Tout le monde m'a regardé comme si j'étais fou, et j'ai vu un autre écriteau qui disait: "La fermeture des portes



but the chapel dates from 1629. 51. The Collège de France, founded in 1530 by Francis I to foster the new humanism of the Renaissance, is the highest institution of learning in France. Its forty professorships are occupied by the country's most brilliant minds. The courses are given as public lectures which anyone may attend; the College has no students and gives no degrees. 52. Originally a monastery of the order of Cluny, built in the 15th and 16th centuries. 53. Built in 1682 for the duc de Lauzun. 54. This inversion is similar to the one in this example: "C'est mon ami," dit-il: "He is my friend," he says. When all or part of

est automatique." Derrière moi j'ai entendu Françoise qui s'esclaffait.⁷⁵ Elle m'avait laissé faire⁷⁶ exprès.

MADAME DE N.: Donc vous allez garder un mauvais souvenir de votre premier voyage en métro?⁷⁷

JUSTIN: J'avoue que je n'aime pas me faire remarquer. Mais ça n'a pas été si mal⁷⁸ que ça. Deux choses m'ont frappé dans le métro. D'abord le plan très détaillé du réseau du métro. Françoise m'a appris, par exemple, qu'ayant constaté que le terminus de la ligne passant par l'Étoile était le Pont de Neuilly,⁷⁹ il fallait suivre les écriteaux et flèches disant "Direction Pont de Neuilly" pour arriver au quai.

MADAME DE N.: Vous avez bien retenu votre leçon. Mais quelle a été votre deuxième impression?

JUSTIN: Eh bien, celle d'avoir voyagé dans un bocal puisque les fenêtres des voitures sont si larges. Et le bocal éclaire en passant les côtés du tunnel de sorte qu'on peut lire "Dubon-Dubon-Dubonnet"⁸⁰ qui se répète à l'infini.

MADAME DE N.: Vous avez vu, naturellement, le tombeau du

a direct quotation precedes the phrase "he says" (etc.), the phrase is inverted. 55. *Marais* means *swamp*. This is one of the oldest parts of Paris. 56. Idiom: *Why see?* 57. Shaped like the Pantheon of Rome, this building, completed in 1790, was originally a church. It now contains the tombs of famous people. 58. The Luxembourg Palace, until 1940 the seat of the French senate, was built in 1615-20 for Marie de Médicis, widow of Henri II. 59. Idiom: *from one day to the next*. 60. The Vosges are a mountain range in Alsace. 61. See lesson XVI, note 9. If *whose* or *of which* modifies a noun which in turn is introduced by a preposition, it is impossible to use *dont*; instead *de* plus the proper form of *lequel* must be used. If *whose* refers to a person, however, *qui* is more commonly used than *lequel*. 62. Generally a noun modifying another noun becomes a PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE with *de*. Example: *the history lesson*: la leçon d'histoire. This adjective use of the noun without a *de* is a modern French tendency. 63. Built in 1598 for Diane de France, duchesse d'Angoulême. 64. Built in 1624 for the duc de Sully. 65. Built in 1655 for the duchesse de Beauvais. 66. Built in 1655. 67. Built in 1507 for the archbishop of Sens. 68. An important square, site of the Bastille which was demolished during the Revolution. 69. Past participle of *prendre*. 70. In many cases the active infinitive has a passive sense as in the common expression: *C'est quelque chose à faire*: It is something to be done. 71. This adverb is placed in its normal position in the French sentence (see lesson XIII, note 4). 72. If there are two pronoun objects to be placed before the verb, they follow an intrinsic word order which is as follows: *me, te, se, nous, vous,*

soldat inconnu sous l'Arc de Triomphe; vous avez admiré la majestueuse Avenue des Champs-Élysées; et puis après . . . ?

JUSTIN: Nous voulions nous promener jusqu'au Trocadéro,⁸¹ mais les jambes nous rentraient dans le corps.⁸² Nous avons fini par reprendre le métro. Au Palais de Chaillot,⁸³ très style moderne,⁸⁴ nous avons joui du panorama sur le Champs de Mars⁸⁵ avec la vieille Tour Eiffel⁸⁶ au centre. C'est très beau, mais cela fait un peu décor Hollywood,⁸⁷ tandis qu'au Marais. . . .



MADAME DE N.: Mais vous y⁸⁸ tenez, à votre Marais! Ah! voilà Françoise qui est prête. On⁸⁹ va pouvoir dîner maintenant. Vous devez avoir faim.



before *le, la, les*, before *lui, leur*, before *y*, before *en*. With affirmative imperative (see lesson IX, note 14) direct object precedes indirect except in the case of *y* and *en* which always come second. Example: *Donnez-le-moi*: Give it to me. Before *y* and *en*, with the affirmative imperative, *moi* and *toi* become *m'* and *t'*. Example: *Donnez-m'en*: Give me some. 73. For agreement of past participle, see lesson VII, note 11. 74. This is really *re-ouvert*. Many intransitive verbs in English become reflexive in French. Example: *La porte s'ouvre*: The door opens. 75. Note special use of relative clause with *voir, entendre*, etc. Compare with English: *I heard Frances burst out laughing*. 76. Idiom: *She had let me go ahead and do it*. 77. *Voyage en métro*, as one says: *Voyage en automobile*: automobile trip. But one also says: *Voyage à bicyclette*: bicycle trip. 78. After *être* the adverbs *bien, mieux, mal*, etc., are used frequently instead of the expected adjective. 79. Neuilly is a suburb of Paris. 80. Dubonnet is the trade name of an appetizer. Their advertising is a feeble pun on the name. 81. A square on which was located the Palais du Trocadéro, built for the exposition of 1878. 82. Idiom: *We were too tired to stand*. 83. The most impressive modern building in Paris. Built on the site of the Trocadéro for the exposition of 1936. 84. *Modernistic*. 85. Originally a parade ground. 86. Built for the exposition of 1889. 87. *That gives the effect of a Hollywood setting*. 88. This repetition is colloquial. 89. The French frequently use *on* where a more precise pronoun might be expected.

VOCABULAIRE POUR CETTE LEÇON

A

abréger (*abrayzhay*) to cut short, be brief
activité (*akteeveetay*) *f.* activity
actuellement (*aktüëlmân*) *adv.* at present, nowadays
admirer (*admeeray*) to admire
ajouter (*azhootay*) to add
ainsi (*èⁿsee*) *adv.* thus. ... **que conj.** as well as
Amérique (*amayreek*) *f.* America
apprendre (*aprâⁿdr*) to learn, teach, inform. **appris, past part.**
approfondir (*aprofôⁿdeer*) to go into deeply
après (*aprè*) *prep.* **d' ...**, according to
aristocratique (*areestokrateek*) *adj.* aristocratic
arriver (*areevay*) to arrive, reach
artiste (*arteest*) *m.* artist. ... *adj.* artistic
assemblée (*asâⁿblay*) *f.* assembly
auteur (*ôtê^{or}*) *m.* author
authentique (*ôtâⁿteek*) *adj.* authentic
aviser (*aveezay*) to warn, inform
avouer (*avway*) to confess

B

barrer (*baray*) to block
bien *adv.* well. ... **que conj.** although
bleu (*ble^o*) *adj.* blue
bocal (*bokal*) *m.* globe, goldfish bowl
border (*borday*) to border
bout (*boo*) *m.* end. **tout au ...** at the very end
brique (*breek*) *f.* brick
but (*bü(t)*) *m.* object, objective

C

caractère (*karaktèr*) *m.* character
cathédrale (*kataydral*) *f.* cathedral

centre (*sâⁿtr*) *m.* center. **au ...** in the center
château (*shâtô*) *m.* castle. ... **-fort** fortress
chef (*shêf*) *m.* chief
chéri, -e (*shayree*) *m. & f.*, darling
choix (*shwa*) *m.* choice
classique (*klaseek*) *adj.* classical
colonne (*kolon*) *f.* column
conduire (*kôⁿdüeer*) to conduct, lead, take
connaissance (*konèsâⁿs*) *f.* acquaintance, knowledge
considérer (*kôⁿseedayray*) to consider
constater (*kôⁿstatay*) to ascertain, observe the fact that
contraste (*kôⁿtrast*) *m.* contrast. **faire ...** to contrast
contredit (*kôⁿtrêdee*) *m.* sans ... without question
coquet, -te (*kokè, -èt*) *adj.* dainty, trim
couramment (*kooramân*) *adv.* commonly, ordinarily. **parler ...** to speak with ease, rapidly
crise (*kreez*) *f.* crisis

D

décorer (*daykoray*) to decorate
dehors (*dê^{or}*) *adv.* **en ... de** outside
délabré (*daylabray*) *adj.* dilapidated
demi-tour (*dêmeetoor*) *m.* right about face
démolir (*daymoleer*) to demolish
dépêche (*daypêsh*) *f.* telegram, dispatch
détaillé (*daytayay*) *adj.* detailed
difficile (*deefeeseel*) *adj.* difficult, hard to satisfy
difficulté (*deefeekültay*) *f.* difficulty
disparaître (*deeparêtr*) to disappear
doigt (*dwa*) *m.* finger
done (*dôn^k*) *conj.* so, therefore

douter (*dootay*) to doubt. **se ... de** to suspect
dresser (*drèsay*). **se ...** to rise up

E

éblouir (*ayblweer*) to dazzle
éclairer (*ayklèray*) to light up
éclatant (*ayklatâⁿ*) *adj.* brilliant
écriteau (*aykreetô*) *m.* sign
écrivain (*aykreevèⁿ*) *m.* writer
élire (*ayleer*) to elect. **élu** elected
emplacement (*âⁿplasmâⁿ*) *m.* site
enfance (*âⁿfâⁿs*) *f.* childhood
entourer (*âⁿtooray*) to surround
entrée (*âⁿtray*) *f.* entrance
envoyer (*âⁿvwayay*) to send
esclaffer (*s'*) (*sèsklafay*) to burst out laughing
évanouir (*s'*) (*sayvanweer*) to faint, fade away
évidemment (*ayveedamâⁿ*) *adv.* obviously
éviter (*ayveetay*) to avoid
excuser (*èksküzay*) to excuse
exemple (*aygzâⁿpl*) *m.* example. **par ...** for example
exprès (*èksprè*) *adv.* on purpose
extraordinaire (*èkstrordeenèr*) *adj.* extraordinary

F

facile (*faseel*) *adj.* easy
faim (*fâⁿ*) *f.* hunger. **avoir ...** to be hungry
fer (*fèr*) *m.* iron. ... **à cheval** horse-shoe
fermer (*fèrmay*) to close
fermeture (*fèrmè^ttür*) *f.* closing
fin (*fèn*) *f.* end
flèche (*flèsh*) *f.* arrow
fleur (*flè^r*) *f.* flower
forme (*form*) *f.* form. **en ... de** in the form of
fort (*for*) *adj.* strong. ... *adv.* hard
fou (*foo*), **fol**, **folle** (*fol*) *adj.* crazy

fourneau (*foornô*) *m.* stove, range. ... **à gaz** gas stove
frapper (*frapay*) to hit, strike

G

gaffe (*gaf*) *f.* social error, blunder
gallo-romain (*galloromèⁿ*) *adj.* Gallo-Roman
gâter (*gâtay*) to spoil
gothique (*goteek*) *adj.* Gothic
gratte-ciel (*gratsyèl*) *m.* skyscraper

H

halte (*alt*) *f.* halt. **faire ...** to halt
haut (*ô*) *adj.* high ... *m.* top
hauteur (*ôtè^r*) *f.* height
heureux (*è^rre^o*), **heureuse** (*è^rre^oz*) *adj.* happy, fortunate
heureusement *adv.* luckily
honorer (*onoray*) to honor
hôtel (*ôtèl*) *m.* hotel, town-house

I

ignorer (*eenyoray*) to be unaware of
île (*eel*) *f.* island
imaginer (*eemazheenay*) *s'*... to imagine
impressionner (*èⁿprèsyonay*) to impress
imprévu (*èⁿprayvü*) *adj.* unforeseen
inconnu (*èⁿkonü*) *adj.* unknown
infini (*èⁿfèenee*) *adj.* infinite; **à l'...** ad infinitum
institut (*èⁿsteetü*) *m.* institute
intellectuel, **-le** (*èⁿtèlèktüèl*) *adj.* intellectual
interdit (*èⁿtèrdee*) *adj.* forbidden
inutile (*eenüteel*) *adj.* useless
irréel, **-le** (*eerayèl*) *adj.* unreal
itinéraire (*eeteenayrèr*) *m.* itinerary

J • L

joli (*zholee*) *adj.* pretty
jouir (*zhweer*). ... **de** to enjoy

juste (zhüst) *adj.* just. **au ...** precisely, exactly

justement (zhüstëmân) *adv.* as it so happens, precisely

large (larzh) *adj.* wide

lendemain (lândëmêⁿ) *m.* next day

lever (lêvay) to raise. **se ...** to get up, rise

ligne (leeny) *f.* line. **en ... droite** in a straight line

lire (leer) to read

lointain (lwèntèⁿ) *m.* distance

M

majestueusement (mazhèstüe^ozmân) *adv.* majestically

malheureusement (malê^ore^ozmân) *adv.* unfortunately

malsain (malsêⁿ) *adj.* unhealthy

manquer (mâⁿkay) to miss. **... de** to lack

marcher (marshay) to walk. **le faire ...** to make it work

mauvais (movè) *adj.* bad, unpleasant

membre (mâⁿbr) *m.* member

même (mèm) *adv.* even. **de ...** likewise. **de ... que** just as

métro (maytrô) *m.* subway

milieu (meelye^o) *m.* middle. **au beau ...** in the very middle

moderniser (modèrneezay) to modernize

monument (monümân) *m.* public or historic building

N • O

naturellement (natürèlmân) *adv.* naturally

néanmoins (nayâⁿmwèⁿ) *adv.* nevertheless

nef (nêf) *f.* nave

noblesse (noblès) *f.* nobility

notamment (notamâⁿ) *adv.* notably

nouveau (noovô) *adj.* **de ...** again

obélisque (obayleesk) *m.* obelisk

obscurité (opsküreetay) *f.* obscurity, darkness

octogonal (oktogonal) *adj.* octagonal

œuvre (ê^ovr) *f.* work

oser (ôzay) to dare

ouest (wèst) *m.* west

P

paraître (parêtr) to appear. **il paraît** it appears

parterre (partêr) *m.* flower-bed

pas (pâ) *m.* pace, step. **au ... de** course at a run

passerelle (pâsrèl) *f.* foot-bridge

pauvre (pôvr) *adj.* poor

peine (pèn) *f.* pain. **à ...** hardly

pénétrer (paynaytray) to enter

perfectionner (pêrfèksyonay) to perfect

périr (payreer) to perish

perspective (pêrspèkteev) *f.* vista

pittoresque (pètorèsk) *adj.* picturesque

plein (plèⁿ), **pleine** (plèn) *adj.* full

plonger (plôⁿzhay) to dive. **se ...** to immerse oneself

politique (poleeteek) *adj.* political

pont (pôn) *m.* bridge

porche (porsh) *m.* porch (church architecture)

porte (port) *f.* ... **cochère** carriage gateway

portillon (porteeyôn) *m.* wicket (gate)

pourtant (poortân) *adv.* however, nevertheless

préalablement (prayalablëmân) *adv.* previously

prendre (prâⁿdr) to take. **... par** to follow

près (prè) *adv.* **... de** near

presque (prèsk) *adv.* almost

primer (preemay) to take precedence over

profiter (profeetay) to take advantage (of)

promenade (promnad) *f.* walk

Q • R

quai (*kay*) *m.* embankment (street running parallel to a river), station platform
quitter (*keetay*) to leave
raconter (*rakôntay*) to tell (about), relate
raison (*rezôn*) *f.* reason
rencontre (*rânkôntr*) *f.* aller à la ... de to go to meet
répéter (*raypaytay*) to repeat
réseau (*rayzô*) *m.* network, system
retenir (*rêtneer*) to retain, remember (a lesson)
retourner (*rêtoornay*) to return, go back. se ... to turn around
rien (*ryèn*) *pro.* nothing. ne ... rien nothing
ruine (*rüeen*) *f.* ruin

souvenir (*soovneer*) *m.* memory
suite (*süeet*) *f.* succession. tout de ... immediately
tandis que (*tândee(s)kê*) *conj.* whereas, while
tel, -le (*tèl*) *adj.* such a
tenir (*têneer*) to hold. ... à to be anxious to, to value, care for
terminus (*tèrmeenüs*) *m.* terminal, end of the line
toilette (*twalèt*) *f.* dress, dressing (the act of)
tombeau (*tônhô*) *m.* tomb
tour (*toor*) *f.* tower
tourelle (*toorèl*) *f.* turret
tournoi (*toornwa*) *m.* tournament
train (*trèn*) *m.* être en ... de to be in the act of, be engaged in
travers (*travèr*) *m.* à ... across, through
traversée (*travèrsay*) *f.* crossing

S • T

servir (*sèrveer*) to serve. se faire ... to get servants
soudain (*soodèn*) *adv.* suddenly
sous (*soo*) *prep.* under

V

vie (*vee*) *f.* life
vitrail (*vetray*) *m.* (*vitraux, m. pl.*) stained-glass window
volontiers (*volôntyay*) *adv.* gladly





DIX-NEUVIÈME LEÇON

APRÈS UNE JOURNÉE À VERSAILLES

(Françoise et Justin viennent de visiter le château et le parc de Versailles. Ils sont assis à la terrasse d'un café.)

JUSTIN: Qu'est-ce que vous allez prendre?

FRANÇOISE: J'aimerais prendre un bain de pieds, mais, comme cela ne se fait pas dans un café, je me contenterai d'une limonade.

JUSTIN: Garçon, une limonade pour mademoiselle et un bock pour moi.

GARÇON: Bien, monsieur.

FRANÇOISE: Enfin, c'est très beau, Versailles, mais le brave Roi Soleil¹ avait de la chance d'avoir une litière pour se promener au fond de son parc. Je le vois très bien s'y rendant en procession pour prendre un bain de soleil au hameau.²



JUSTIN: Vous voulez dire, avec Marie-Antoinette, sans doute?

FRANÇOISE: Puis ils chanteraient *Malbrough s'en va-t-en guerre*³ à l'ombre de la tour Malbrough⁴ en trayant des chèvres.

JUSTIN: Je vois que vous êtes très forte en histoire de France. Comment a-t-on pu⁵ vous recaler au bachot?

FRANÇOISE: Recaler? C'est pure médisance. Je n'avais qu'à faire les yeux doux⁶ à la vieille barbe⁷ qui m'examinait pour faire passer toutes mes balivernes sans la moindre protestation.



JUSTIN: Sans blague!⁸ Sérieusement, vous n'aviez pas le trac?

FRANÇOISE: Sérieusement, c'était pis encore. Je bredouillais, je me sentais une moiteur dans les paumes. Ce n'est pas très gai, le bachot français.

JUSTIN: Où l'avez-vous passé?⁹ A la Sorbonne?

FRANÇOISE: Oui. Le jury était composé de professeurs illustres qui étaient plus ironiques que méchants. Je ne leur en veux¹⁰ pas maintenant que c'est fini.

JUSTIN: Mais vous vous vengez en embrouillant toutes leurs dates maintenant?

FRANÇOISE: C'est vous qui devenez méchant à présent. Vous trouvez sans doute que j'ai manqué de respect envers Louis XIV. Comment puis-je¹¹ réparer ma faute? En vous récitant des vers

FOOTNOTES: 1. Name given to Louis XIV. 2. The hamlet, in the park of Versailles, was built for Queen Marie-Antoinette. 3. *Malbrough goes to war*, sung to the same tune as *The bear went over the mountain*. Marlborough was an English general who defeated the French in the Eighteenth Century. 4. One of the buildings of the hamlet. 5. Past participle of *pouvoir*. 6. *To make sheep's eyes, to look sweetly*. 7. *The old greybeard*. 8. *No kidding!* 9. *Passer un examen*: to take an examination. 10. *En vouloir à*: to hold a grudge against. 11. *Je puis* is the alternate form for *je peux*. It must be used in the interrogative.

de Racine¹² pour prouver mon admiration pour la littérature du grand siècle?¹³

JUSTIN: Oui. Commencez. . . .

Oui, je viens dans son temple adorer l'Éternel.¹⁴

FRANÇOISE: Alors. . . .

Je viens, selon l'usage antique et solennel,
Célébrer avec vous la fameuse journée
Où sur le mont Sina la loi nous fut donnée.
Que les temps sont changés! Sitôt que de ce jour
La trompette sacrée annonçait le retour,
Du temple, orné partout de festons magnifiques,
Le peuple saint en foule inondait les portiques. . . .¹⁵

Allez,¹⁶ continuez maintenant.



JUSTIN: Je ne saurais¹⁷ pas, car je n'ai pas bonne mémoire. Je me rends.

FRANÇOISE: Si vous vouliez m'indiquer une pièce caractéristique du règne de Louis XIV, vous avez mal choisi votre passage, car *Athalie* date de la période où Racine, devenu historiographe du roi, avait abandonné le théâtre. La pièce n'a été jouée que pendant la Régence¹⁸ après la mort de l'auteur et de Louis XIV.

JUSTIN: Cela est vrai. Mais rappelez-vous aussi que la pièce a été composée pour être jouée à Saint-Cyr à l'école de jeunes filles de Madame de Maintenon¹⁹ et que les demoiselles de Saint-Cyr l'ont jouée sans costumes dans la chambre de Louis

12. Jean Racine (1639-1699), France's greatest dramatic poet. His most famous play is *Phèdre*. 13. The Seventeenth Century which was also the period of the reign of Louis XIV. 14. Yes, I come into his temple to worship the Eternal God. In French poetry mute e's are pronounced except when they occur at ends of lines or before other words beginning with a vowel or mute h. 15. I come, according to the ancient and solemn custom, / To celebrate with you the famous day / When on Mount Sinai the law was given to us. / How times have changed! As soon as of this day / The sacred trumpet announced the return, / Of the temple,

XIV. La pièce n'a pas été représentée en public avant 1716, je crois.

FRANÇOISE: Comme vous êtes calé—j'allais dire "pour un Américain," mais ce n'aurait pas été très gentil. C'est moi qui me rends maintenant. Mais trêve de plaisanteries! Qu'est-ce que vous avez aimé le plus à Versailles?

JUSTIN: Voulez-vous que je vous dise²⁰ d'abord ce que je n'ai pas aimé? Ce sont ces deux pavillons à droite et à gauche de la Cour d'Honneur qui portent l'inscription "A toutes les gloires de France." Ils semblent appartenir à une autre époque que l'ensemble du château.²¹



FRANÇOISE: Je crois, en effet, qu'ils ont été ajoutés plus tard. Mais à part ces deux intrus, l'ensemble du château est exceptionnel par l'uniformité de son architecture et sa forme géométrique. N'avez-vous pas admiré les proportions harmonieuses de l'autre façade, celle qui donne sur les jardins?

JUSTIN: Oui, de loin, on a une impression de grandeur dont je n'ai jamais vu l'équivalent. On dirait que le souci de Louis XIV n'a pas été uniquement de faire grand,²² comme un roi du pétrole américain, mais plutôt de faire quelque chose de royal où la dignité viendrait non seulement des dimensions harmonieuses mais aussi de l'échelle surhumaine de la construction. Évidemment, cela n'a rien à faire avec le Parthénon, mais je crois qu'on trouverait dans le temple grec la même alliance de gracieux et de surhumain.

ornamented with magnificent garlands, / The holy people, crowding in, inundated the porticos . . . 16. Go ahead. 17. I couldn't possibly. *Savoir* is used instead of *pouvoir* in the sense of mental ability. 18. The Regency (1715-1723), during the minority of Louis XV. 19. Françoise d'Aubigné, marquise de Maintenon (1635-1719), morganatic wife of Louis XIV. 20. Subjunctive of *dire* (see lesson XIII, note 9). 21. The castle taken as a whole. 22. To do things on a big scale. 23. Conditional of *aller*. 24. Literally: which produce the result that. 25. On that account. 26. Idiom: perhaps so. 27. Character in the famous

FRANÇOISE: Louis XIV serait enchanté de vous entendre comparer son château au Parthénon. Cela irait²³ très bien avec le classicisme de son illustre siècle. Et je crois que vous avez bien saisi la nuance. Il y a la même distance de l'architecture du Parthénon à celle de Versailles qu'il y a de la littérature grecque à la littérature française de l'époque classique. Il y a beaucoup de points de ressemblance, évidemment, qui font²⁴ que le grec et le français sont tous les deux classiques sans que le français soit pour cela²⁵



du néo-classicisme. Le classicisme français s'est affranchi de la tutelle de l'antiquité; c'est un mouvement intellectuel, littéraire et artistique qui a vraiment sa propre originalité.

JUSTIN: Excusez-moi de faire ici une observation critique. Vous parlez comme un cuistre. Est-ce que toutes les Françaises sont comme vous?

FRANÇOISE: Peut-être bien que oui.²⁶ Nous ne parlons pas ainsi par pédantisme mais—comme dirait le Bourgeois Gentilhomme²⁷ de Molière — “pour savoir raisonner des choses parmi les honnêtes gens.”²⁸ Une Française intelligente doit savoir tenir son salon²⁹ tout comme ces dames du temps de Louis XIV.

JUSTIN: Je vous vois³⁰ très bien à la Galerie des Glaces³¹ en train de causer art et littérature avec des courtisans en habits brodés tandis que l'illustre duc et pair Saint-Simon³² prend note à la



comedy by the same name. *Bourgeois* means middle-class; *gentilhomme* means gentleman (noble). 28. In order to know how to talk about things with respectable people. 29. *Tenir son salon*: to have her drawing room. Since the Seventeenth Century certain noble or wealthy French ladies have received in their drawing rooms a select circle of literary, artistic, and political figures. In these salons conversation has become an art. 30. I can imagine you. 31. The Hall

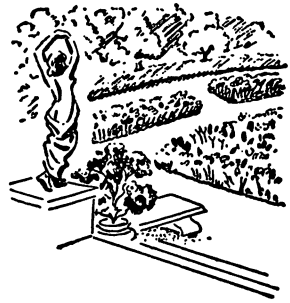
dérobée pour pouvoir préserver vos paroles pour la postérité. Avec votre particule³³ vos ancêtres ont dû³⁴ être à Versailles.

FRANÇOISE: Malheureusement pas. Dans mon cas il s'agit de la toute petite noblesse de robe³⁵ qui remonte seulement au XVIII^e siècle.—Mais, enfin, quel souvenir allez-vous garder de Versailles?

JUSTIN: Je me rappellerai toujours d'abord la chapelle, si gracieuse, si somptueuse et en même temps si mondaine; la Galerie des Glaces, naturellement, parce qu'il n'y a pas de salle plus impressionnante au monde; la chambre à coucher du roi; les appartements privés de Marie-Antoinette.³⁶ Et puis les jardins qui sont aussi l'expression du classicisme français.

FRANÇOISE: Est-ce que le jardin classique vous plaît en somme?

JUSTIN: Énormément. C'est vrai que la nature y est subordonnée à l'art. Tous ces bassins et parterres, ces fontaines et statues, disposés dans un ordre absolument géométrique, peuvent très bien sembler artificiels, mais c'est qu'il³⁷ y a beaucoup d'artificiel dans l'art. Je peux très bien me figurer une représentation de Racine ou de Molière au Quinconce du Midi.³⁸ Leur art a le même côté factice que le décor du quinconce. C'est-à-dire, si vous voulez, que l'art est



of *Mirrors* in the Castle of Versailles. 32. Louis de Rouvroy, duc de Saint-Simon (1675-1755), author of famous *Mémoires* of the court of Louis XIV. 33. *With your "de."* The *de* in a French name generally indicates nobility. 34. Past participle of *devoir*. Translate: *must have been*. *Must have* translates by the *passé composé* of *devoir* plus the infinitive of the main verb of the English. Do not attempt to use a compound infinitive in this sense; all notion of tense must be conveyed by *devoir*. 35. *Magisterial Nobility*. Bourgeois who became magistrates acquired a minor sort of nobility. 36. Marie-Antoinette, queen of Louis XVI, had part of the castle rebuilt to suit her more delicate Eighteenth Century taste. 37. *The fact is, or it is because*. 38. *Southern Quincunx*. A quincunx is an area where trees are planted in parallel rows. 39. There are two Trianons in the park of Versailles. The Grand Trianon is a pink marble palace erected for Madame de Maintenon by Louis XIV. The Petit Trianon, erected by Louis XV, was

supérieur à la nature.

FRANÇOISE: Autrement dit, vous n'aimez pas le Petit Trianon³⁹ et le hameau de Marie-Antoinette?

JUSTIN: Pas tout à fait. Le temps a imprégné ces endroits de son charme aussi. Le seul fait de voir⁴⁰ ces endroits m'aide à mieux comprendre le XVIII^e siècle qui, en réagissant contre le formalisme de l'époque classique, a cru retrouver⁴¹ la nature et la vie simple dans un décor rustique. Mais examinez de près ce rustique. Les grottes sont en ciment; les maisons sont des joujoux; même les ruines sont fausses.

FRANÇOISE: C'est une époque qui a tellement cherché à être naturelle, par réaction peut-être contre l'acidité de gens comme Voltaire,⁴² qu'elle a fini par⁴³ devenir complètement artificielle. Le bonhomme Jean-Jacques Rousseau⁴⁴ y est pour quelque chose.⁴⁵



JUSTIN: On trouve la même simplicité artificielle dans la *Nouvelle Héloïse*⁴⁶ ou dans *l'Émile*.⁴⁶ Je crois qu'on ne lit plus guère que⁴⁷ les *Confessions*.⁴⁸

FRANÇOISE: C'est lui en somme qui a mis notre littérature sur la pente du romantisme.

JUSTIN: Oui, mais je trouve que certains romantiques du

a favorite resort of Marie-Antoinette. 40. *Just seeing*. 41. Observe the meaning of the basic construction: *Il a cru voir*: He thought he saw. In almost all cases the French will replace a noun clause (a noun clause begins with *que*: that), which has the same subject as the main clause, with an infinitive construction. This is done even with a change of tense from one clause to the other. Example: *Il croit avoir vu*: He thinks he saw. This is not possible, however, with a future in the noun clause. Example: *Je crois que j'irai*: I think I will go. 42. A prolific writer of the Eighteenth Century (1694-1778), best known today for his ironical philosophical stories like *Candide*. In his day he was known as a dramatist and a poet. He is a rationalist and the antithesis of Rousseau. 43. Idiom: *finir par devenir*: to finally become. 44. Author (1712-1778) of novels and philosophical treatises which, in contrast to the rationalism of Voltaire, emphasized emotion and preached a return to nature. 45. *Has (had) something to do with it*. 46. Works of Rousseau. 47. *No one hardly ever reads anything but*. 48. Victor Hugo (1802-1885), the most prolific of the Romantics. Although he wrote many plays and novels, his real greatness is as a poet. 49. Alfred de Vigny (1797-1863),

XIX^e siècle sont infiniment plus artistes. Prenez Hugo,⁴⁸ Vigny,⁴⁹ même Lamartine. . . .⁵⁰

FRANÇOISE: Ils sont rasants, ces vieilles barbes . . .

O temps! suspends ton vol; et vous, heures propices!

Suspendez votre cours:

Laissez-nous savourer les rapides délices

Des plus beaux de nos jours.⁵¹

Toute cette poésie amoureuse ne nous dit rien,⁵² à nous autres⁵³ modernes.

JUSTIN: Vous êtes dure. Mais ces vieilles barbes étaient imberbes, à l'exception de Victor Hugo qui a laissé pousser la sienne pour se mettre à la page⁵⁴ pendant sa vieillesse. La mode était alors aux barbes.⁵⁵ Vous n'allez pas me dire que vous n'aimez pas . . .



VICTOR HUGO

Waterloo! Waterloo! Waterloo! morne plaine!

Comme une onde qui bout dans une urne trop pleine,

Dans ton cirque de bois, de coteaux, de vallons,

La pâle mort mêlait les sombres bataillons.⁵⁶

Cette évocation poétique de la grande bataille peut très bien sembler artificielle en comparaison de la même scène traitée en prose et d'une façon réaliste dans *la Chartreuse de Parme*⁵⁷— vous vous rappelez comment le jeune⁵⁸ Fabrice participe à la

more subtle but less gifted than Hugo, is known principally for his poetry although he also wrote novels and plays. 50. Alphonse de Lamartine (1790-1869), the first French Romantic poet, wrote very sincere verse but less artistic than that of the other Romantics. 51. *Oh time! Suspend thy flight; and you, propitious hours! / Suspend your course: / Let us taste the fleeting pleasures / Of the most beautiful of our days.* 52. Idiom: *Cela ne me dit rien*: That means nothing to me, that leaves me cold. 53. When a noun is used in apposition to *nous* or *vous* the adjective *autres* is required. Example: *We Americans: Nous autres Américains.* 54. Idiom: *Se mettre à la page* (slang): To get up to date. 55. Idiom: *Beards were then in style.* 56. *Waterloo! Waterloo! Waterloo! dreary plain! / Like water boiling in an urn too full, / In thy circus of woods, of hillocks, of vales, / Pale death mingled the somber battalions.* (From *Expiation* by Victor Hugo). 57. *The Charterhouse Monastery of Parma* by Stendhal whose real name was Henri Beyle (1783-1842). Stendhal is perhaps better known for his *Le Rouge et le Noir* which, although written in the heyday of Romanticism, is one of the most profound

bataille sans y⁵⁹ rien comprendre—le poème de Victor Hugo n'en continue pas moins⁶⁰ à vous donner une émotion épique digne de *la Chanson de Roland*⁶¹ ou même de Homère.⁶²



FRANÇOISE: Chacun son goût.⁶³
Moi⁶⁴ je préfère quelque chose dans le genre de . . .⁶⁵

J'ai plus de souvenirs que si j'avais mille ans.

Un gros meuble à tiroirs encombré de bilans,

De vers, de billets doux, de procès, de romances,

Avec de lourds cheveux roulés dans des quittances . . .⁶⁶

JUSTIN: C'est du⁶⁷ Baudelaire,⁶⁸ n'est-ce pas? Malgré les dates, vous avouerez que c'est encore du romantisme. Vous êtes une romantique qui s'ignore. Aimez-vous aussi l'obscurité du symbolisme?⁶⁹

FRANÇOISE: Oui, beaucoup. C'est notre plus belle poésie.

JUSTIN: Je vous défie de réciter *la Jeune Parque*⁷⁰ de Valéry⁷¹ et, encore plus, de me l'expliquer.

FRANÇOISE:

Mystérieuse Moi, pourtant, tu vis encore!

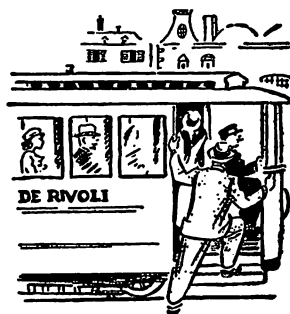
of psychological novels. 58. An adjective with a proper noun requires an article. See lesson XVII, note 50. 59. *About it*. The word *about* with the word *understand* translates as *à*. Example: *Je ne comprends rien à cette histoire*. Since one function of the pronoun *y* is to replace a prepositional phrase with *à* if the object of the preposition is a thing, we get: *Je n'y comprends rien*, when we substitute a pronoun for the phrase *à cette histoire*. 60. Idiom: *n'en + verb + pas moins*: none the less. *Il n'en continue pas moins*: He continues none the less. 61. The *Song of Roland*, the oldest and the greatest French epic written by an unknown author in about 1100. 62. Homer. 63. Idiom: *Everyone to his own taste*. 64. The disjunctive pronoun (see lesson II, note 15, and lesson V, note 17) is used when a pronoun is repeated for emphasis. This same emphasis may occur with a pronoun object. *He saw me*: *Il m'a vu moi*. 65. *Dans le genre de*: like. 66. *I have more keepsakes than if I were a thousand years old./ A large chest of drawers littered with balance sheets,/ With verses, love-notes, lausuits, romances,/ With heavy hair rolled up in receipts . . .* (From *Spleen* by Baudelaire).

Tu vas te reconnaître au lever de l'aurore
Amèrement la même . . .⁷²

J'avoue que c'est rudement difficile à retenir. Quant à l'expliquer, ce n'est pas trop difficile. Ici il s'agit de la Jeune Parque qui se réveille et qui regarde son corps en éprouvant les sensations que son corps lui communiquent. . . . Mais que dites-vous du roman? Vous aimez sans doute *Notre-Dame de Paris*,⁷³ *les Misérables*⁷⁴ ou peut-être même *Mauprat*?⁷⁵

JUSTIN: Je suis plus difficile que cela. Donnez-moi du Flaubert,⁷⁶ du Stendhal, du Maupassant.⁷⁷ J'aime la clarté que ces grands romanciers apportent à l'étude de la conscience humaine. Je goûte difficilement l'obscurité de certains romanciers modernes. Prenez Proust, par exemple.

FRANÇOISE: Si vous allez me démolir Proust maintenant, gare à vous! Mais prenez plutôt votre bière et déguerpissons, car l'heure avance. Nous devons sauter dans ce petit tramway qui nous conduira à la gare Versailles-Chantiers où il y a un beau train électrique en aluminium pour nous ramener à Paris-Montparnasse.



67. When the author's name is used to stand for his work, the French requires a partitive. *C'est du Baudelaire*: It is Baudelaire. 68. Charles Baudelaire (1821-1867), the father of modern French poetry. His life of misfortune resembles that of Edgar Allan Poe whom he translated. 69. Symbolism was the dominant school in French poetry at the end of the Nineteenth Century. 70. *The Young Parca* (Fate). 71. Paul Valéry (1871-1945), the greatest French poet of the Twentieth Century. He continued symbolism. 72. *Mysterious me, yet, thou livest still! / Thou art going to recognize thyself at the break of dawn / Bitterly the same . . .* 73. Romantic novel of Victor Hugo known in English as the *Hunchback of Notre-Dame*. 74. Also by Victor Hugo. 75. Romantic novel by George Sand whose real name was Aurore Dupin, baronne Dudevant (1804-1876). 76. Gustave Flaubert (1821-1880), realistic novelist, author of *Madame Bovary*. 77. Guy de Maupassant (1850-1893), realistic novelist, better known for his short stories. 78. An adjective derived from Versailles. 79. Navarre, an old kingdom in the region of the Pyrenees, was annexed to France when its king ascended the French throne under the name of Henri IV.

JUSTIN: Cela dit "Compagnie des Tramways Versaillais."⁷⁸
Comme votre tramway n'est pas plus grand qu'une litière, je
comptais y lire "Tramway Officiel de Sa Majesté Louis XIV,
Roi de France et de Navarre."⁷⁹

FRANÇOISE: Mettez donc votre perruque et préparez-vous à
sauter.



VOCABULAIRE POUR CETTE LEÇON

A

abandonner (abâⁿdonay) to abandon
absolument (apsolümân) *adv.* abso-
lutely
acidité (aseedeetay) *f.* acidity
affranchir (afràⁿsheer) to free
aider (èday) to aid, help
aluminium (alümeenjom) *m.* alumi-
num
amoureux (amoore^o), **amoureuse**
(amoore^{oz}) *adj.* amorous
ancêtre (âⁿsètr) *m.* ancestor
antiquité (âⁿteekeetay) *f.* antiquity
appartement (apart^emâⁿ) *m.* apart-
ment

apporter (aportay) to bring
artificiel, -le (arteefeesyèl) *adj.* arti-
ficial
artistique (arteesteek) *adj.* artistic
assis (asee) *past part.* of **asseoir**
autrement (ôtr^emâⁿ) *adv.* otherwise,
differently. ... dit in other words

B

bachot (bashô) *m.* slang for bacca-
lauréat (bachelor's examination)
bain (bèⁿ) *m.* bath. ... **de pieds** foot-
bath. ... **de soleil** sun-bath
baliverne (baleevèrn) *f.* twaddle
barbe (barb) *f.* beard, graybeard (in
slang)
bassin (basèⁿ) *m.* basin

bataille (batay) *f.* battle
bière (byèr) *f.* beer
blague (blag) *f.* kidding (slang)
bock (bok) *m.* glass of beer
bonhomme (bonom) *m.* old fellow
brave (brav) *adj.* worthy
bredouiller (br^edooyay) to mumble
broder (broday) to embroider

C

calé (kalay) *adj.* learned (slang)
caractéristique (karaktayreesteek) *adj.* characteristic
cas (kâ) *m.* case
causer (kôzay) to converse, converse about
chance (shâns) *f.* luck
chanter (shâⁿtay) to sing
chapelle (shapèl) *f.* chapel
charme (sharm) *m.* charm
chèvre (shêvr) *f.* goat
ciment (seemân) *m.* cement
clarté (klartay) *f.* clarity
compagnie (kôⁿpanyee) *f.* company
comparaison (kôⁿparèzôⁿ) *f.* comparison
complètement (kôⁿplêtmân) *adv.* completely
conscience (kôⁿsyâns) *f.* conscience, mind
contenter (kôⁿtâⁿtay) to satisfy. *se ...* to be satisfied
courtisan (koorteezân) *m.* courtier
critique (kreeteek) *adj.* critical
cuisse (kûeeestr) *m.* pedant

D

dame (dam) *f.* lady
décor (daykor) *m.* setting
défier (dayfyay) to challenge
déguerpier (daygèrpeer) to decamp
demoiselle (d^em^wazèl) *f.* damsel, young lady
dérober (dayrobay) to steal. *à la*

dérobée on the sly
deux (de^o) *adj.* tous les ... both
devenir (d^evneer) to become
difficile (deefeeseel) *adj.* difficult, hard to please
difficilement (deefeeseelmân) *adv.* with difficulty
digne (deeny) *adj.* worthy
dignité (deenyetay) *f.* dignity
disposer (deespôzay) to arrange
duc (dük) *m.* duke
dur (dür) *adj.* hard, harsh

E

échelle (ayshèl) *f.* ladder, scale
électrique (aylèktreek) *adj.* electric
embrouiller (âⁿbrooyay) to mix up
enchanté (âⁿshâⁿtay) *adj.* delighted
énormément (aynormaymân) *adv.* enormously
envers (âⁿvèr) *prep.* towards
épique (aypeek) *adj.* epic
époque (aypok) *f.* period
éprouver (ayproovay) to experience
étude (aytüd) *f.* study
exception (èksèpsyôⁿ) *f.* à l'... *de* with the exception of

F • G

façon (fasôn) *f.* way. *de cette ... in* this way
factice (faktees) *adj.* artificial
faute (fôt) *f.* fault, error, transgression
faux (fô), **fausse** (fôs) *adj.* false
figurer (feegüray) *se ...* to imagine
fort (for) *adj.* strong, good (in a subject)
gai (gay) *adj.* gay
gare (gar) *interj.* ... à vous watch out
gens (zhân) *m. pl.* people
gentil, **-le** (zhâⁿtee, -eey) *adj.* nice
géométrique (zhayomaytreek) *adj.* geometric
gloire (glwar) *f.* glory

goûter (*gootay*) to taste, enjoy, appreciate
gracieux (*grasye^o*), **gracieuse** (*grasye^{oz}*) *adj.* graceful
grec, grecque (*grèk*) *adj.* Greek
grotte (*grot*) *f.* grotto

H • I • J

habit (*abee*) *m.* suit
hameau (*amô*) *m.* hamlet
harmonieux (*armony^{e^o}*), **harmonieuse** (*armony^{e^{oz}}*) *adj.* harmonious
histoire (*eestwar*) *f.* history
historiographe (*eestoryograf*) *m.* historiographer (official historian)
humain (*ümèⁿ*) *adj.* human
ignorer (*eenyoray*) to be unaware of
illustre (*eelüstr*) *adj.* illustrious
imberbe (*èⁿhèrb*) *adj.* beardless
imprégner (*èⁿpraynyay*) to impregnate
infiniment (*èⁿfeneemâⁿ*) *adv.* infinitely
intrus (*èⁿtrü*) *m.* intruder
ironique (*eeroneek*) *adj.* ironical
joujou (*zhoozhoo*) *m.* (m. pl.: -x) toy

L • M • N

limonade (*leemonad*) *f.* lemonade
litière (*leetyèr*) *f.* litter
littéraire (*leetayrèr*) *adj.* literary
littérature (*leetayratür*) *f.* literature
majesté (*mazhèstay*) *f.* majesty
malgré (*malgray*) *prep.* in spite of
méchant (*mayshâⁿ*) *adj.* naughty, nasty
médisance (*maydeezâ^{ns}*) *f.* slander
mémoire (*maymwar*) *f.* memory. **avoir bonne ...** to have a good memory
moindre (*mwè^{ndr}*) *adj.* least
moiteur (*mwatè^{or}*) *f.* moistness

mondain (*mô^{ndèn}*) *adj.* worldly
mort (*mor*) *f.* death
naturel, -le (*natürèl*) *adj.* natural
nuance (*nüâ^{ns}*) *f.* shade of meaning, subtle difference

O • P

officiel, -le (*ofeesyèl*) *adj.* official
ombre (*ôⁿbr*) *f.* shadow, shade
ordre (*ordr*) *m.* order
originalité (*oreezheenaleetay*) *f.* originality
pair (*pèr*) *m.* peer
parole (*parol*) *f.* word
part (*par*) *f.* share. **à ...** except for
participer (*parteesepay*) to participate
paume (*pôm*) *f.* palm (of the hand)
pavillon (*pavecyôⁿ*) *m.* pavilion
pédantisme (*paydâⁿteesm*) *m.* pedantry
pente (*pânt*) *f.* slope, downward path
perruque (*pèrik*) *f.* wig
pétrole (*paytrol*) *m.* petroleum. **roi du ...** oil baron
pis (*pee*) *adv.* worse
plaire (*plèr*) to please
plaisanterie (*plèzâⁿtree*) *f.* joke, joking
poème (*poèm*) *m.* poem
poésie (*poayzee*) *f.* poetry
poétique (*poayteek*) *adj.* poetic
postérité (*postayreetay*) *f.* posterity
préférer (*praytayray*) to prefer
privé (*preevay*) *adj.* private
professeur (*profèsè^{or}*) *m.* professor
propre (*propr*) *adj.* own
prouver (*proovay*) to prove

Q • R

quant (*kân*) *adv.* ... **à as** for
ramener (*ramnay*) to bring back
rasant (*râzâⁿ*) *adj.* boring (slang)
réagir (*rayazheer*) to react

réaliste (rayaleest) *adj.* realistic
recaler (rèkalay) to "pluck" (reject
 in an examination)
réciter (rayseetay) to recite
règne (rèny) *m.* reign
remonter (rèmon^{nt}tay) to go back
rendre (rà^{ndr}) to yield, to give up.
 se ... dans un lieu to betake oneself
réparer (rayparay) to repair, atone for
représentation (rèprayzâ^{nt}tasyôⁿ) *f.*
 performance
représenter (rèprayzâ^{nt}tay) to repre-
 sent, present (a play)
ressemblance (rèsâⁿblâ^{ns}) *f.* resem-
 blance
retenir (rètneer) to retain. ... une
 leçon to remember a lesson
réveiller (rayvèyay) to awaken. se ...
 to awaken
romancier (româ^{ns}syay) *m.* novelist
romantique (româ^{nt}teek) *m.* Romanti-
 cist
romantisme (româ^{nt}teesm) *m.* Roman-
 ticism
rudement (rüd^{mâ}n) *adv.* deucedly
rustique (rûsteek) *adj.* rustic

S • T

saisir (sèzeer) to seize, grasp
sauter (sôtay) to jump
sentir (sâ^{nt}teer) to feel, smell
sérieusement (sayrye^{oz}mâⁿ) *adv.* seri-
 ously

simplicité (sèⁿpleeseetay) *f.* simplicity
somme (som) *f.* sum. en ... in short
somptueux (sôⁿptüe^o), **somptueuse**
 (sôⁿptüe^{oz}) *adj.* sumptuous
souci (soosee) *m.* concern
subordonner (sübordonay) to subor-
 dinate
supérieur (süpayryè^or) *adj.* superior
surhumain (surümèⁿ) *adj.* super-
 human
tellement (telmâⁿ) *adv.* so much
temps (tâⁿ) *m.* time, weather. en
 même ... at the same time. de ...
 en ... from time to time
trac (trak) *m.* stagefright
traire (trèr) to milk. trayant, *pres.*
part.
traiter (trètay) to treat
tramway (tramwè) *m.* tramway, tram
travers (travèr) *m.* a ... across, through
trêve (trèv) *f.* truce ... de enough
tutelle (tütèl) *f.* tutelage

U • V

uniformité (üneeformeetay) *f.* uni-
 formity
uniquement (üneekmâⁿ) *adv.* exclu-
 sively
venger (vâⁿzhay) to avenge
vers (vèr) *m.* line (of poetry)
vieillesse (vyèyès) *f.* old age





VINGTIÈME LEÇON

UNE CONVERSATION À LA TABLE

(Les quatre personnages, Françoise, Justin, et Madame et Monsieur de Nédélec, sont assis à table dans la salle à manger de l'appartement des Nédélec. De temps en temps Yvonne, la bonne, apporte les différents plats.)

MADAME DE N., à Justin: J'espère que vous aimez les écrevisses. Nous les mangeons souvent comme hors-d'œuvre.

JUSTIN: C'est la première fois que j'en mange. Comment faut-il s'y prendre?¹

FRANÇOISE: Il faut casser la carapace comme ceci; puis vous sucez.

JUSTIN, après avoir goûté: Mais c'est très bon.

MADAME DE N., à Yvonne: Vous avez oublié de mettre les cuillers à soupe.

JUSTIN: Mais c'est tout un travail² pour manger des écrevisses!



FRANÇOISE: Vous pensez! La prochaine fois on vous donnera des artichauts et vous verrez ce que c'est que⁸ de travailler.

MADAME DE N.: Il faut dire que Françoise n'aime pas les artichauts. Par paresse, je suppose.

FRANÇOISE: Maman, tu vas nuire à ma réputation auprès de notre visiteur d'outre-mer. Il croit que je suis une jeune fille très sérieuse.



MADAME DE N.: Alors il faudrait le détromper au plus vite.⁴ Henri, veux-tu nous couper du pain? (*Monsieur de N. se lève, sort un grand pain d'une corbeille, et commence à le couper en le tenant contre sa veste.*) Attention, Henri, tu vas te salir! (*Il remplit une petite corbeille de tranches de pain et la passe à Justin.*)

MONSIEUR DE N.: Du pain, Justin?

JUSTIN: Oui, Monsieur. . . . Merci. (*Monsieur de N. se rassied.*⁵) Le pain français est ma plus grande joie. Les miches sont parfois longues comme des bâtons, parfois grosses comme celle que vous avez là. Et il y a autant de goûts différents qu'il y a de formes différentes.

MONSIEUR DE N.: Cela vient de ce⁶ qu'il a été cuit par le boulanger du coin et non dans une grande usine comme chez vous. Je me rappelle que ce qu'on a voulu me servir comme pain à New-York était détestable. Faire le pain est un art en

FOOTNOTES: 1. Idiom: *to go about it*. 2. *It's quite a job*. 3. In an indirect question *qu'est-ce que c'est que* (see lesson XVIII, note 25) becomes *ce que c'est que*. If either one of these expressions is followed by an infinitive, the infinitive is introduced by *de*. 4. *As quickly as possible*. 5. Present tense of *se rasseoir*: to sit down again. 6. *The fact that*. 7. *Not to say*. 8. Causal use of *faire*.

France, tout comme la fabrication du vin ou des fromages—de même que la gastronomie en général est très développée chez nous.

JUSTIN: En gastronomie les Français ont des habitudes enracinées, pour ne pas dire⁷ des préjugés. Je me rappelle les protestations d'un Français à New-York à qui on voulait faire⁸ manger des gaufres pour le petit déjeuner.

FRANÇOISE: Manger des gaufres pour le petit déjeuner! Je savais bien que vous mangiez des œufs sur le plat et du petit lard pour le petit déjeuner, mais manger des gaufres, ça me dépasse.⁹



JUSTIN: Je suis sûr que vous n'aimeriez pas non plus la salade pour dames comme on la prépare en Amérique, c'est-à-dire la laitue nature avec un petit édifice de fruits, de fromage à la crème, de noix, etc., le tout inondé de mayonnaise.

FRANÇOISE: J'avoue que la seule¹⁰ idée de ce mélange me fait mal au cœur. Il n'y a rien à dire,¹¹ les Français n'aiment pas mélanger le salé et le sucré.

MONSIEUR DE N.: Justin, voulez-vous encore un peu de Bordeaux?¹²

JUSTIN: S'il vous plaît, Monsieur. . . Mais ce poulet froid est délicieux!

In the construction *faire* + *an infinitive*, the infinitive must follow *faire* and is always in the active form although it may occasionally be translated in the passive. In such a construction the *agent* (the "do-er" of the action) will be expressed with *à* except where there might be a confusion with an indirect object, in which case *par* is used. Example: *Je fais lire un livre à (par) Jean*: I have (make, cause) John read a book, I have a book read by John. But the agent, as a pronoun, is always an indirect object. Example: *Je lui fais lire le livre*: I have the book read

MADAME DE N.: C'est le cas de le dire,¹⁸ c'est la sauce qui fait le poulet. Savez-vous le nom de cette sauce?

JUSTIN: Non, Madame.

MADAME DE N.: Cela s'appelle *ail au lit*. J'espère que ce n'est pas trop fort pour votre palais si habitué au sucre.

JUSTIN: J'ai fait renouveler mon palais depuis mon arrivée à Paris. J'ai maintenant une marque française.

MONSIEUR DE N.: Vous avez lu¹⁴ les journaux ce soir? Que pensez-vous de ce coup communiste?

JUSTIN: Je ne sais pas ce que je dois en penser, car tous les journaux parisiens se contredisent et se lancent des injures. *L'Humanité*¹⁵ dit que le peuple vient d'empêcher un coup fasciste; *Le Figaro*¹⁶ prétend qu'encore une fois la démocratie a été trahie. On ne trouve guère,¹⁷ dans les journaux français, de renseignements objectifs . . . rien que des articles tendancieux.

MONSIEUR DE N.: J'avoue que je suis de votre avis. C'est pour cela que j'achète souvent *le New York Herald* qui est le seul journal bien renseigné à Paris.

JUSTIN: Pourquoi la presse est-elle si mal organisée?

MONSIEUR DE N.: Je crois que c'est d'abord à cause de la formule même¹⁸ du journalisme français. On a tellement insisté sur la liberté de la presse, c'est-à-dire¹⁹ sur le droit d'exprimer les opinions, que nous avons fini par avoir presque uniquement des journaux d'o-



by him. In such constructions all pronoun objects precede *faire*. Example: *Je le lui fais lire*: I make him read it. 9. *That beats me*. 10. *Mere*. 11. *There is no denying it*. 12. In the sense of *vin de Bordeaux*. 13. Idiom: *no mistake*. 14. Past participle of *lire*. 15. The Communist daily newspaper. 16. The leading Rightist daily paper for which François Mauriac writes. 17. A negative which works the same as *ne . . . pas*. 18. Adverbial use of *même*. When *very* functions as an adjective, the equivalent French is an adverb following the noun.

pinion. Le journalisme objectif a sombré sous les opinions diverses, ou peut-être n'a-t-il jamais existé.

JUSTIN: Ce qui m'a frappé, c'est le format réduit de vos journaux.

MONSIEUR DE N.: La crise du papier²⁰ explique en ce moment le format réduit, mais vous savez que le journal parisien d'avant-guerre ne dépassait pas six ou huit pages.

JUSTIN: Pourquoi n'a-t-on pas eu l'idée de fonder un grand journal d'information²¹ comme nous en avons chez nous en Amérique?

MONSIEUR DE N.: Je crois d'abord que c'est une question d'habitude. Comme le Français moyen a l'habitude des journaux à six pages, l'idée de lire un journal de quarante à cent pages lui répugnerait—même s'il y avait le papier nécessaire à la publication d'un tel journal. De plus le Français tient beaucoup à ce qu'on lui donne des opinions; il aime raisonner. L'idéal serait d'avoir pour chaque Français un journal personnel. D'ailleurs, c'est un peu ce qui s'est produit, car on n'a pas besoin de capitaux énormes, comme chez vous, pour fonder un journal.

JUSTIN: Avec un tel système avez-vous réellement la liberté de la presse?

MONSIEUR DE N.: Dans une très large mesure. Plus que chez vous où il y a, par exemple, beaucoup de grandes villes ayant²² un seul journal. Comment voulez-vous qu'il y ait la liberté de la presse dans²³ ces conditions? Avant la guerre beaucoup de journaux français, il est vrai, vivaient de fonds secrets;

19. *That is to say.* 20. *The paper shortage.* 21. The French expressions *journal d'opinion* and *journal d'information* have little meaning in English. The discussion on this subject should readily bring out the difference. 22. Present participle of *avoir*. 23. English says *under*. 24. *I have allowed my knife to be carried off.* Compare this idiom with the discussion of *faire* in note 8. 25. This is used in the sense of *vous devriez*: you ought. *Il faut* is the strongest expression of necessity (see lesson XV, note 4). It may be followed by an infinitive without a subject or by a noun clause. Examples: *Il faut partir*; *Il faut que Jean parte*. If the subject of the noun clause is a pronoun, an infinitive construction is also

quelques-uns même de ces fonds étaient de source allemande. Mais avec la nouvelle loi de la presse, c'est devenu impossible maintenant.

JUSTIN: Pardon, je crois que j'ai laissé emporter²⁴ mon couteau encore une fois.

FRANÇOISE, à Yvonne qui est encore occupée à desservir: Voulez-vous apporter un autre couteau pour Monsieur Lambert? (A Justin.) Il faudrait²⁵ vous exercer pendant cinq minutes par jour à mettre votre couteau sur le porte-couteau²⁶ à côté de votre assiette; Yvonne prétend qu'elle n'y peut rien²⁷ et qu'elle vous offenserait en²⁸ y touchant.



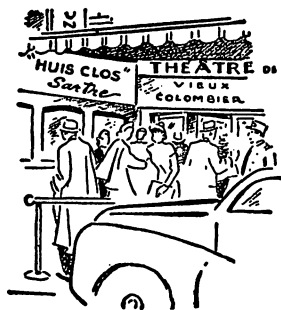
JUSTIN: J'apprendrai peut-être un jour. Mais vous changez si souvent les assiettes et les fourchettes et cuillers que je me demande pourquoi le couteau fait exception.

MADAME DE N.: C'est peut-être qu'au moyen âge on avait besoin du couteau comme arme de défense. Il y a de ces habitudes²⁹ qui s'expliquent difficilement.

FRANÇOISE, à Madame de N.: Est-ce qu'on ne pourrait pas apporter le dessert tout de suite? Nous allons être en retard pour le théâtre. (Yvonne sort.³⁰)

MADAME DE N.: Bien sûr.³¹ (A Justin.) Quelle pièce allez-vous voir ce soir?

possible. Example: *Il lui faut partir*: It is necessary for him to leave, or He must leave. If a pronoun occurs elsewhere in the sentence, so that the person involved is clearly understood, no indirect object pronoun is used before *il faut*. Thus one says: *Il faut vous rappeler que*: You must remember that. 26. The knife rest supports the tip of the knife to keep it from touching the tablecloth. It is improper to rest the knife on the plate. 27. Idiom: *she can do nothing about it*. 28. *En* with the present participle occasionally has the force of *by* or *while*. See lesson XVII, note 35. 29. *There are habits like this*. 30. *Exit Yvonne*. 31. *Of course*. 32. The English version was called *No Exit*, but actually the title is a



JUSTIN: Françoise m'emmène voir *Huis Clos*³² au Vieux Colombier.³³

MADAME DE N.: J'espère que vous pourrez me dire en revenant³⁴ ce que c'est que l'existentialisme.³⁵ Ce n'est pas la peine de lire les articles sur l'existentialisme; on n'y comprend rien, et les écrivains non plus.³⁶

JUSTIN: Je me suis attaqué à *l'Être et le Néant*³⁷ de Sartre, mais l'ouvrage m'a opposé une si forte résistance³⁸ que j'ai dû l'abandonner au milieu du premier chapitre.

MONSIEUR DE N.: Vous verrez³⁹ que *Huis Clos* n'est pas une pièce très gaie. Il y a trois personnages enfermés pour l'éternité dans un appartement meublé. Ce sont⁴⁰ des âmes damnées qui finissent par se torturer et se dévorer les unes les autres. Il y a un personnage qui dit: "L'Enfer, c'est les autres,"⁴⁰ ce qui⁴¹ résume la partie existentialiste⁴² de la pièce.

FRANÇOISE: Ne pourrait-on pas résumer l'existentialisme en disant que c'est le problème de l'existence ramené à l'échelle individuelle?

MADAME DE N.: Il me semble que Gide disait la même chose dans un style plus classique.

legal term meaning *In Camera*. 33. The famous experimental theatre in the street of the same name. 34. *When you come back*. 35. A philosophical and literary doctrine which rose to prominence during the occupation. 36. *And the writers neither, i.e., and the writers don't either*. 37. *Being and Non-Being*, a philosophical treatise. 38. *Put up much resistance*. 39. *Future of voir*. 40. *Ce* with the verb *être* requires a third plural verb if there is a third plural form in the predicate. In the statement, "L'Enfer, c'est les autres," the repetition of *ce* is colloquial, and, since *ce* here has an antecedent in the singular, a singular verb is required. 41. Another function of *ce qui*, *ce que* is as a relative pronoun without a precise antecedent. In the translation of the example in the text, the relative *which* would refer to the whole previous clause and not to a single word. See lesson XV, note 5. 42. The main idea of the play is that, in life, we allow our *existence* to be interfered with and dominated by others. 43. If the word *most* is an adjective, it translates *la plupart des*. 44. *Take a roguish pleasure*.

MONSIEUR DE N.: Oui, on dirait que la plupart⁴⁵ des écrivains existentialistes se font un malin plaisir⁴⁶ à estropier la langue française. Mais quant à Sartre, l'auteur de *Huis Clos*, c'est différent.

MADAME DE N.: Et vous verrez le Vieux Colombier, ce petit théâtre sans prétentions de la Rive Gauche où Jacques Copeau,⁴⁵ avec ses brillants collaborateurs de *la Nouvelle Revue Française*,⁴⁶ a pour ainsi dire⁴⁷ créé le théâtre français contemporain.

FRANÇOISE: N'oublie pas, maman, qu'il y a aussi Lugué-Poe⁴⁸ et Jouvet⁴⁹—mais cela nous entraînerait trop loin.⁵⁰ Justin, il va falloir nous mettre en route tout de suite, car nous devons changer au Châtelet,⁵¹ ce qui allonge le trajet.

MADAME DE N.: Alors, au revoir. Amusez-vous bien!

(Par une transposition proscrite par les règles d'Aristote,⁵² mais que le cinéma moderne utilise sans vergogne, nous retrouvons nos deux jeunes gens qui attendent sur le quai de Saint-Germain-des-Prés⁵³ sous l'écriteau "Direction Porte"⁵⁴ de Clignancourt.)



FRANÇOISE: Alors c'est sûr que vous partez demain?

JUSTIN: Comme je vous l'ai dit, je suis censé suivre les cours

45. Famous actor, born in 1879. Now co-director of the Comédie Française. 46. The most famous French literary review founded by André Gide in 1909. The title is now banned because the last editor collaborated with the Germans. The successor of the NRF is known as *Les Temps Modernes* of which Sartre is the principal editor. 47. *So to speak*. 48. Aurélien-François Lugué-Poe (1869-1940), director of the famous experimental Théâtre de l'Œuvre. 49. Louis Jouvet, born in 1885, famous actor and director who has appeared more recently in motion pictures. 50. *That would get us too involved*. 51. An important square and subway junction taking its name from a medieval fortress which stood on the site. 52. The so-called unities of Aristotle, the unities of time, place, and action, governed the French classical theatre. 53. A subway stop taking its name from a church built in 1163. This is the nearest stop to the Vieux Colombier. 54. The fact that they are under this sign indicates that they are returning home.

de vacances à Tours.⁵⁵ Ce n'est qu'à ce prix-là que j'ai pu persuader mes parents de me laisser passer l'été en France.

FRANÇOISE: Avec votre connaissance du français il vaudrait⁵⁶ mieux faire carrément une licence⁵⁷ à la Sorbonne.

JUSTIN: D'accord, mais cela n'est pas possible pendant l'été. Il faudra que je revienne une autre fois dès que⁵⁸ j'aurai fini mon bachot américain. J'ai encore une année de collège devant moi.

FRANÇOISE: Quoi! vous êtes encore au collège?

JUSTIN: Cela n'a rien d'étonnant.⁵⁹ Les termes collège et université sont synonymes, ou presque, aux États-Unis; le collège n'est pas une institution secondaire comme en France. Après l'école secondaire, l'étudiant américain passe quatre ans au collège. Si un étudiant français ayant déjà son baccalauréat entre au collège chez nous, il passe en troisième année.

FRANÇOISE: Alors le bachot américain est l'équivalent de la licence française qui prend généralement deux ans.

JUSTIN: Au contraire, les études en France sont plus avancées et on considère que la licence est l'équivalent du grade américain suivant, la maîtrise.⁶⁰



FRANÇOISE: Que d'histoires!⁶¹ Mais ce n'est pas avec tous ces diplômes-là qu'on apprend le langage courant.

JUSTIN: Cela est vrai. C'est pourquoi je vous suis très reconnaissant de m'avoir reçu⁶² si cordialement. Je ne me rendais pas compte quand je me suis inscrit à cette organisation pour la correspondance inter-

nationale que je serais reçu à bras ouverts⁶³ dès mon arrivée⁶⁴ à Paris.

FRANÇOISE: Une jeune fille qui se respecte⁶⁵ aurait hésité à

courir au-devant⁶⁶ d'un jeune homme qu'elle connaît seulement par correspondance. Une pareille considération ne m'aurait pas arrêtée, vous devez vous en douter, mais j'avoue que j'ai été tout de même rassurée en constatant pendant notre première course en taxi que vous étiez tel que je vous avais imaginé.

JUSTIN: Je voudrais bien connaître ce portrait moral que vous aviez fait de moi.

FRANÇOISE: Vous êtes bien indiscret. Je vous dirai seulement que vous êtes plus sympathique que certains Américains qui froissent toutes nos habitudes françaises. Vous nous comprenez. Je suis sûre que nous serons toujours de très bons amis.

JUSTIN: J'ai si peu fréquenté la jeunesse française (*il hésite, puis se résoud*) que je ne sais pas s'il serait présomptueux de vous demander la permission de vous tutoyer.

FRANÇOISE: Comme les Américains vont vite!⁶⁷ Mais je veux bien. Cela vous donnera—cela te donnera l'occasion de mieux apprendre tes verbes. Mais voilà notre train. En tant que Français assimilé, tu n'oublieras pas cette fois que la fermeture de la porte est automatique.



The termini of many métro lines are at the various *portes* or gates of Paris. There are no longer any walls or gates around Paris, and these so-called *portes* are large squares surrounded by modern apartment houses and shopping centers. 55. The University of Poitiers conducts a summer school for foreigners at Tours, in the heart of the château country. 56. Conditional of *valoir*. 57. *Faire une licence*: to take a master's degree. 58. Like *quand* and *lorsque* (see lesson XIII, note 8), *aussitôt que* and *dès que*, meaning *as soon as*, take the future if the main verb is future. 59. *There is nothing astonishing about that*. 60. The word *maîtrise* was used in medieval French in the sense of *master's degree*; the term was later replaced by *licence*. 61. *What a lot of complications!* 62. Past participle of *recevoir*. 63. *With open arms*. 64. *As soon as I arrived*. 65. *A proper young lady*. 66. *To run to meet*. 67. *How fast Americans are!*

VOCABULAIRE POUR CETTE LEÇON

A

accord (akor) *m.* agreement. **d'**...
agreed, in agreement
âge (âzh) *m.* moyen ... Middle Ages
ail (ay) *m.* garlic
allonger (alôⁿzhay) to lengthen
âme (âm) *f.* soul
amuser (amüzay) **s'**... to have a good
time
arme (arm) *f.* arm
artichaut (arteeshô) *m.* artichoke
assimilé (aseemeelay) *adj.* assimilated
attaquer (atakay) to attack. **s'**... à to
attack
attention (atân^ssyôn) *interj.* watch out
auprès (ôprè) *adv.* ... de near, with
avis (avee) *m.* opinion

B • C

boulangier (boolân^zhay) *m.* baker
brillant (breeyân) *adj.* brilliant
capital (kapeetal), (*pl.*: capitaux)
m. capital
carapace (karapas) *f.* shell
carrément (karaymân) *adv.* squarely,
without beating around the bush
censé (sân^ssay) *adj.* supposed to
changer (shân^zhay) to change
chapitre (shapeetr) *m.* chapter
cœur (kê^or) *m.* avoir mal au ... to
feel sick
collaborateur (kolaboratê^or) *m.* col-
laborator
compte (kô^{nt}) *m.* account. **se rendre**
... to realize
constater (kô^{nt}statay) to observe, note
contemporain (kô^{nt}tân^{por}èⁿ) *adj.*
contemporary
contredire (kô^{nt}redeer) to contradict
corbeille (korbèy) *f.* basket

cordialement (kordyal^{mân}) *adv.* cor-
dially
courant (koo^{rân}) *adj.* current, every-
day
course (koo^{rs}) *f.* race, errand, trip
créer (k^{ray}ay) to create

D

damner (dân^{ay}) to damn
délicieux (dayleesye^o), **délicieuse**
(dayleesye^o_z) *adj.* delicious
démocratie (daymokra^{see}) *f.* democ-
racy
dépasser (daypâ^say) to surpass
desservir (daysê^rveer) to clear away
the dishes
détromper (daytrôⁿpay) to undeceive
développer (dayvlo^pay) to develop
dévorer (dayvoray) to devour
diplôme (deeplôm) *m.* diploma
divers, -e (deevê^r) *adj.* diverse, differ-
ent
douter (dootay) to doubt. **se ... de** to
suspect
droit (drwa) *m.* right

E

écrevisse (aykre^vees) *f.* crayfish
emmener (âⁿmⁿay) to take, take away
empêcher (âⁿpê^{sh}ay) to prevent
emporter (âⁿportay) to carry off
enfer (âⁿfê^r) *m.* hell
enfermer (âⁿfê^rmay) to shut up
énorme (aynorm) *adj.* enormous
enraciné (âⁿrâ^seenay) *adj.* deep-rooted
estropier (êstropyay) to cripple
éternité (aytê^rneetay) *f.* eternity
étudiant (aytû^dyâⁿ) *m.* student
exercer (aygzê^rsay). **s'**... to practice
exprimer (ê^spreemay) to express

F • G

fabrication (fabreekasyôⁿ) *f.* making, manufacture
fonds (fônⁿ) *m. pl.* funds
fréquenter (fraykâⁿtay) to frequent
froisser (frwasay) to crumple, offend
gastronomie (gastronomee) *f.* gastronomy
gaufre (gôfr) *f.* waffle
grade (grad) *m.* degree
gras (grâ), **grasse** (grâs) *adj.* fat
gros (grô), **grosse** (grôs) *adj.* big
guère (gèr) *adv.* ne ... guère hardly, scarcely
guerre (gèr) *f.* war. d'avant-guerre pre-war

H • I

habitude (abeetüd) *f.* habit
hésiter (ayzeetay) to hesitate
hors-d'œuvre (ordêⁿvr) *m.* relish
idée (eeday) *f.* idea
individuel, -le (èⁿdeeveedüèl) *adj.* individual
information (èⁿformasyôⁿ) *f.* information
injure (èⁿzhür) *f.* insult
inonder (eenôⁿday) to inundate
inscrire (èⁿskreer) s'... à to enroll in

J • L

jeunesse (zhèⁿès) *f.* youth, young people
joie (zhwa) *f.* joy
journal (zhoornal), (*pl.:* journaux) *m.* newspaper
journalisme (zhoornaleesm) *m.* journalism
lancer (lâⁿsay) to throw, hurl
liberté (leebèrtay) *f.* liberty
licence (leesâⁿs) *f.* master's degree
loi (lwa) *f.* law

M • N

maman (mamân) *f.* mama
marque (mark) *f.* mark, brand
mélange (maylâⁿzh) *m.* mixture
mélanger (maylâⁿzhay) to mix
mener (mèⁿay) to lead
mettre (mètr) se ... en route to set out
niche (meesh) *f.* loaf
moyen, -ne (mwayèⁿ, -èn) *adj.* average
nature (natür) *adj.* plain
nécessaire (naysèsèr) *adj.* necessary
noix (nwâ) *f.* nut
nuire (nüeer) ... à (quelque chose) to be harmful to, injure (something)

O • P

objectif (obzhèkteef), **objective** (obzhèkteev) *adj.* objective
œuf (èⁿof) *m.* egg. ... sur le plat fried egg
offenser (ofâⁿsay) to offend
organiser (organeezay) to organize
oublier (oobleey) to forget
outre-mer (ootrèmèr) *adv. phrase* beyond the sea
ouvrage (oovrazh) *m.* work
pain (pèⁿ) *m.* bread, loaf of bread
palais (palè) *m.* palace, palate
par (par) *prep.* by, per
pareil, -le (parèy) *adj.* same, similar, such a
 paresse (parès) *f.* laziness
peine (pèn) *f.* pain, trouble. ce n'est pas la ... it is not worth the trouble
personnage (pèrsonazh) *m.* character
plupart (plüpar) *f.* most
plus (plü) *adv.* de ... furthermore
porte-couteau (portkootô) *m.* knife
rest
préjugé (prayzhüzhay) *m.* prejudice

présomptueux (prayzôⁿptüe^o), **pré-**
somptueuse (prayzôⁿptüe^{oz}) *adj.*
presumptuous

presse (près) *f.* press

prétendre (praytâⁿdr) to pretend,
claim

problème (problèm) *m.* problem

prochain (proshêⁿ) *adj.* next

produire (prodüeer) to produce. **se ...**
to happen

proscrire (proskreer) to proscribe

protestation (protèstasyôⁿ) *f.* protest

R

raisonner (rèzonay) to reason

ramener (ramnay) to bring back, re-
duce

rassurer (rasüray) to reassure

reconnaissant (rêkonèsân) *adj.* grate-
ful

réduire (raydüeer) to reduce

réellement (rayèlmân) *adv.* really

renseignement (rân^sènymân) *m.* in-
formation

renseigner (rân^sènyay) to inform

répugner (raypünyay) to be distasteful

résoudre (rayzoodr) **se ...** to make up
one's mind

résumer (rayzümay) to sum up

retard (rêtar) *m.* delay. **en ...** late

revoir (rêvwar) to see again. **au ...**
good-bye

rive (reev) *f.* bank

S

salé (salay) *adj.* salted, salty

salir (saleer) to dirty

secondaire (sêgôⁿdèr) *adj.* secondary
sérieux (sayrye^o), **sérieuse** (sayrye^{oz})
adj. serious

seul (sèol) *adj.* alone, single, only

sembler (sâⁿblay) to seem

sombrer (sônⁿbray) to founder

sortir (sorteer) to go out, take out

suivant (süeevân) *adj.* following

suivre (süeevr) to follow. **... un cours**
to attend a course

sympathique (sèⁿpateek) *adj.* likable

synonyme (seenoneem) *adj.* synony-
mous

T

tant (tân), *adv.* **en ... que as**

tendancieux (tândâⁿsyè^o), **tendan-**
cieuse (tândâⁿsyè^{oz}) *adj.* tenden-
tious

torturer (tortüray) to torture

trahir (traeer) to betray

trajet (trazhè) *m.* trip

tranche (trân^{sh}) *f.* slice

travail (travay) *m.* work

travailler (travayay) to work

tutoyer (tütwayay) to address as *tu*

U • V

usine (üzeen) *f.* factory

utiliser (üteeleezay) to utilize

vacances (vakân^s) *f. pl.* vacation.

cours de ... summer session

vergogne (vèrgony) *f.* shame

veste (vèst) *f.* suit coat

visiteur (veezeetè^{or}) *m.* visitor

vouloir (voolwar) **... bien** to be will-
ing



Reference Grammar

Although all the necessary grammatical explanations for each of the 20 Lessons have been provided in the footnotes of the lessons, a complete Reference Grammar is provided here for the convenience of the student. Each part of speech (the article, the noun, the verb, etc.) is explained thoroughly in all its uses. Therefore, should the student wish complete information about any point of grammar he can easily find it in the handy Reference Grammar.

PLAN FOR STUDY

Since the material of the *Reference Grammar* is not arranged in order of difficulty or frequency of occurrence but is *classified by subjects* (the Article, Noun, Adjective, etc.), it is suggested that the student refer to and study the following paragraphs along with each lesson. The easiest way of locating any paragraph (§) is to flip through the pages watching for the § number which is in **bold face** along side of the page number.

Lesson I The definite article §1. The indefinite article §6. Genders of nouns §8. Agreement of the adjective §10 (a). Personal pronoun subjects §24. Nature of French verb §45. Present indicative §50 (a). Simple negation §23 (a). Inversion of the verb §60 (a) and (d).

Lesson II The partitive article §6. Contractions with definite article §2 (a) to (f). Special uses of definite article §3. Imperative §56 (a) and (b). Future tense §52 (a) and (b). Demonstrative adjective §15.

Lesson III Imperfect indicative §51 (a), §51 (b) 1 to 4. Past participle §49 (a). Compound tenses §55 (a). The compound past §55 (c). Conditional tense §53 (a) to (c). The indefinite adjective *tout* §12 (e).

Lesson IV Personal pronoun objects §25. The verb *devoir* §62. Reflexive verbs §58. Demonstrative pronoun §28.

Lesson V Adverb of quantity §22 (a) to (d). Disjunctive pronoun §26. Omission of definite article §4. Omission of indefinite article §7.

Lesson VI The verb *faire* §63 (d). The pronoun *ce* §28 (f). Plural of nouns §9. Interrogative adjective §17.

Lesson VII The preposition *chez* §36. Agreement of past participle §55 (b). Orthographical changing verbs §65 (d).

Lesson VIII The preposition *de* §38. The relative pronoun §30 (a) and (b). The interrogative pronoun §31.

Lesson IX Passive voice §59 (a) and (b). Irregular adjectives §10. The verb *avoir* §61 (e). Adjective as substantive §13. Present subjunctive §57 (a), (b) and (e). Inversion of the verb §60.

Lesson X Transitive and intransitive verbs §46. Reflexive pronoun §27 (a), (b) and (d). The infinitive §47.

Lesson XI Agreement of the adjective §10. Subjunctive in noun clauses §57 (c). The demonstrative pronoun §28. The impersonal pronoun §29.

Lesson XII Possessive relative *dont* §30 (f). Verbs in *-yer* §65 (c). Possessive adjective §16. Relative *ce qui* §30 (c).

Lesson XIII The adverb §19, §20, §21. Special uses of future §52 (c) and (d). Infinitive in place of noun clause §57 (k). Possessive pronoun §32.

Lesson XIV Negation §23. Present with *depuis* §50 (b). Article with parts of body §3 (g). Avoidance of passive §59 (c) and (d). Pronoun *on* §34.

Lesson XV Position of the adjective §11. Pronoun *tout* §33. Indefinite adjective §12. The preposition *à* §35. The preposition *dans* §37. The preposition *en* §39. Repetition of preposition §40. Compound prepositions §41. Position of preposition §42.

Lesson XVI The relative pronoun §30. Coördinating conjunctions §43. Subordinating conjunctions §44. The present participle §48. The past participle §49.

Lesson XVII The pluperfect indicative §55 (d). Future perfect §55 (e). Conditional perfect §55 (f). Irregular verbs §66. *Begin thorough study of irregular verbs.*

Lesson XVIII The preterit §54. Past anterior §55 (g). The verb *faire* §63. The verb *pouvoir* §64.

Lesson XIX Verbs in *-cer* and *-ger* §65 (a) and (b). Prefect subjunctive §57 (h). Imperfect subjunctive §57 (i). Pluperfect subjunctive §57 (j).

Lesson XX Translation of *whoever* §57 (f). Review verbs.

REFERENCE GRAMMAR

THE ARTICLE

§1	The Definite Article	197
	(a) Agreement of. (b) Elision with.	
§2	Contractions of Definite Article	197
	(a) With <i>de</i> . (b) With <i>à</i> .	
§3	Special Uses of Definite Article	197
	(a) Noun in general sense. (b) With language. (c) With countries.	
	(d) With titles. (e) With days of week. (f) Translating <i>per</i> .	
	(g) With parts of body.	
§4	Omission of Definite Article	199
	(a) After <i>en</i> . (b) After <i>de</i> .	
§5	The Indefinite Article	199
§6	The Partitive Article	200
	(a) Formation. (b) Plural of. (c) In sense of <i>some</i> or <i>any</i> .	
	(d) Short partitive. (e) Omission of.	
§7	Omission of Indefinite Article	201
	(a) Nationality or profession. (b) Apposition.	

THE NOUN

§8	Gender of Nouns	201
§9	Plural of Nouns	202
	(a) Normal usage. (b) Nouns in <i>-s</i> , <i>-x</i> , <i>-z</i> . (c) Nouns in <i>-eau</i> and <i>-eau</i> .	
	(d) Nouns in <i>-ou</i> . (e) Nouns in <i>-al</i> . (f) Double plurals.	
	(g) Family names. (h) Compound nouns.	

THE ADJECTIVE

§10	Agreement of the Adjective	204
	(a) Normal usage. (b) Past participles. (c) Adjectives in <i>-e</i> .	
	(d) Adjectives in <i>-el</i> , etc. (e) Adjectives in <i>-er</i> and <i>-et</i> . (f) Adjectives in <i>-f</i> .	
	(g) Adjectives in <i>-eur</i> . (h) Adjectives in <i>-eau</i> or <i>-al</i> .	
	(i) Having double masculine form. (j) Table of irregular adjectives.	
§11	Position of the Adjective	206
	(a) Following noun. (b) Preceding noun. (c) Abstract adjectives.	
	(d) Adjectives with two meanings. (e) <i>Prochain</i> and <i>dernier</i> .	

§12	Indefinite Adjectives	207
	(a) <i>Aucun, etc.</i> (b) <i>Certain, chaque.</i> (c) <i>Plusieurs.</i> (d) <i>Quelque.</i> (e) <i>Tout.</i> (f) <i>Un tel.</i> (g) <i>Quelconque.</i>	
§13	Use of the Adjective as a Substantive	208
§14	Comparison of Adjectives	209
	(a) English usage. (b) Comparative. (c) Superlative. (d) Position of superlative.	
§15	The Demonstrative Adjective	210
	(a) Forms of. (b) Suffixes <i>-ci</i> and <i>-là.</i>	
§16	The Possessive Adjective	210
	(a) Forms of. (b) Agreement of. (c) Agreement in third singular. (d) Before feminine beginning with vowel. (f) <i>Leur.</i>	
§17	The Interrogative Adjective	211
	(a) Forms of. (b) With <i>être.</i> (c) With persons.	
§18	Cardinal and Ordinal Numbers. <i>See Lesson 5.</i>	

THE ADVERB

§19	Formation of the Adverb	212
	(a) Normal formation. (b) Adjective in <i>-ant</i> and <i>-ent.</i> (c) Irregulars.	
§20	Comparison of the Adverb	213
	(a) Normal usage. (b) Irregular adverbs.	
§21	Position of the Adverb	213
	(a) With simple verb. (b) With compound verb. (c) With infinitive. (d) Inversion of verb. (e) With adjectives or adverbs.	
§22	Adverbs of Quantity	215
	(a) With nouns. (b) Used alone. (c) In defective sentence. (d) As normal adverbs. (e) <i>Bien des</i> and <i>la plupart.</i> (f) Agreement of verb and past participle.	
§23	Negation	216
	(a) Simple negation. (b) With compound verb. (c) With infinitive. (d) With participles. (e) Other negatives like <i>ne . . . pas.</i> (f) Negatives differing from <i>ne . . . pas.</i> (g) <i>Ne . . . que.</i> (h) <i>Aucun</i> and <i>nul.</i> (i) <i>Ni . . . ni.</i> (j) Combination of negatives. (k) <i>Pas</i> omitted. (l) <i>Pas</i> with adjective or adverb. (m) <i>Pas</i> in defective sentence. (n) Pleonastic <i>ne.</i>	

THE PRONOUN

§24	Personal Pronoun Subjects	221
	(a) Forms of.	
§25	Personal Pronoun Objects	221
	(a) Chart of pronoun objects. (b) First column objects. (c) Second column objects. (d) Third column objects. (e) Adverbial pronoun. (f) Partitive pronoun. (g) With affirmative imperative. (h) In compound tenses. (i) With negative verbs.	

- §26 The Disjunctive Personal Pronoun 225
 (a) Definition of. (b) Forms of. (c) Uses: (1) compound subject or compound object; (2) with preposition; (3) with punctuation; (4) with adjective; (5) repeated for emphasis; (6) after *être*; (7) with affirmative imperative; (8) indirect object with first column direct object; (9) with appositions; (10) clarification of possessive adjective.
- §27 The Reflexive Pronoun 227
 (a) Definition of. (b) Normal use. (c) Reciprocal.
 (d) In apposition.
- §28 The Demonstrative Pronoun 229
 (a) Indefinite form. (b) Definite form. (c) Suffixes *-ci* and *-là*.
 (d) Unexpressed noun in possessive. (e) *The latter* and *the former*.
 (f) Pronoun *ce*: (1) imprecise antecedent; (2) with special forms after *être*; (3) with clause as subject of *être*; (4) change of *ce* to *cela*.
- §29 The Impersonal Pronoun 231
 (a) Definition. (b) With *être*, adjective and infinitive. (c) In literary style.
- §30 The Relative Pronoun 232
 (a) Short form. (b) Long form. (c) *Ce qui* and *ce que*. (d) To distinguish antecedent. (e) Contraction with *lequel*. (f) Uses of *dont*. (g) Substitution of *où*. (h) Inversion after *que*.
- §31 The Interrogative Pronoun 235
 (a) Chart of. (b) In indirect question. (c) *Which one?*
- §32 The Possessive Pronoun 236
 (a) Forms of. (b) After *être*.
- §33 The Pronoun *tout* 237
 (a) Constructions. (b) With relative following.
- §34 The Pronoun *on* 237
 (a) Uses of. (b) To avoid passive [see §59 (c)].

THE PREPOSITION

- §35 The Preposition *à* 238
 (a) With indirect object. (b) With cities. (c) With masculine countries. (d) In some idioms. (e) Possession after *être* [see §32 (b)]. (f) Phrase of purpose. (g) Descriptive phrase. (h) Not after verb of motion. (i) With infinitive [see §47 (c) (3)].
- §36 The Preposition *chez* 239
- §37 The Preposition *dans* 240
 (a) Normal use. (b) With modified countries.
- §38 The Preposition *de* 240
 (a) Possession. (b) Noun modifying another noun. (c) In place of *que* after numerals. (d) Modifiers of *quelque chose*, etc. (e) In sense of *from*. (f) Phrase indicating material.

§39	The Preposition <i>en</i> (a) Normal function. (b) With feminine countries. (c) Exceptional uses [see §4 (a)]. (d) With present participle [see §48 (b)].	241
§40	Repetition of Prepositions	241
§41	Compound Prepositions	242
§42	Position of the Preposition	242

THE CONJUNCTION

§43	Coördinating Conjunctions	243
§44	Subordinating Conjunctions (a) In two parts. (b) Some special distinctions. (c) <i>Quand, lorsque, où</i> . (d) Never omit <i>que</i> . (e) Repetition of conjunction.	243

THE VERB

§45	The Nature of the French Verb	245
§46	Transitive and Intransitive Verbs (a) Definition. (b) List of French transitives. (c) List of French intransitives.	245
§47	The Infinitive (a) Definition. (b) As subject of verb. (c) Depending on verb: (1) no preposition; (2) <i>de</i> ; (3) <i>à</i> . (d) Depending on adjective. (e) With <i>pour</i> . (f) With prepositions.	246
§48	The Present Participle (a) Formation. (b) As gerundive. (c) Perfect participle. (d) As an adjective.	249
§49	The Past Participle (a) Formation. (b) In compound tenses [see §55 (a)]. (c) As ablative absolute. (d) As an adjective [see §11 (a)].	251
§50	The Present Indicative (a) Formation. (b) Use with <i>depuis</i> .	252
§51	The Imperfect Indicative (a) Formation. (b) Uses: (1) incomplete action in past; (2) description; (3) habitual action; (4) illustrations of various uses; (5) with <i>depuis</i> ; (6) in an <i>if</i> clause [see §53 (c)].	254
§52	The Future Tense (a) Formation. (b) Use of. (c) Implied futurity. (d) No future in <i>if</i> clause.	257
§53	The Conditional Tense (a) Formation. (b) Uses of. (c) Conditional sentences. (d) With <i>quand même</i> .	258
§54	The Preterit (a) Definition. (b) Formation. (c) Uses of.	260
§55	The Compound Tenses of the Indicative (a) Formation. (1) Verbs conjugated with <i>être</i> ; (2) Reflexive verbs; (3) verbs conjugated with <i>avoir</i> . (b) Agreement of past	261

196 THE CORTINA METHOD

participle: (1) with *avoir*; (2) with *être*; (3) reflexive verbs.
 (c) The COMPOUND PAST: (1) definition; (2) formation.
 (d) The PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE: (1) formation; (2) uses.
 (e) The FUTURE PERFECT: (1) formation; (2) use; (3) implied futurity; (4) probability. (f) The CONDITIONAL PERFECT: (1) formation and normal use; (2) in conditional sentence; (3) after *quand même*.. (g) The PAST ANTERIOR: (1) use of; (2) formation.

- §56 The Imperative 267
 (a) Definition and formation. (b) First singular and third person imperatives. (c) Future in *quand* clause with imperative.
- §57 The Subjunctive 268
 (a) Definition. (b) The PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE: formation. (c) Subjunctive in noun clauses after expressions of: (1) emotion; (2) volition; (3) doubt; (4) necessity. (d) Subjunctive in relative clauses after: (1) indefinite antecedent; (2) antecedent modified by superlative. (e) Subjunctive after certain conjunctions. (f) Translation of *whoever*, *however*, etc. (g) Tense sequence: present subjunctive. (h) The PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE: formation and use. (i) The IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE: formation and use. (j) The PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE: (1) formation; (2) normal use; (3) as substitute for conditional perfect. (k) Infinitive in place of noun clause or adverbial clause.
- §58 The Reflexive Verb 276
 (a) Definition. (b) Formation. (c) Use to avoid passive [see §59 (c) (1)].
- §59 The Passive Voice 278
 (a) Definition and formation. (b) Preposition with agent. (c) Avoidance of passive. (d) Errors in translating passive.
- §60 Inversion of the Verb 279
 (a) With pronoun subject. (b) Negative interrogative [see §23(a)]. (c) With noun subject. (d) Use of *est-ce que*. (e) Inversion with certain interrogative words.
- §61 Uses of the Verb *avoir* 280
 (a) For conjugation see §66. (b) In expressions of health. (c) Expressions of age. (d) In sense of *devoir*. (e) *Il y a, voilà* and *voici*.
- §62 The Verb *devoir* 282
 (a) For conjugation see §66. (b) Uses of.
- §63 The Verb *faire* 283
 (a) For conjugation see §66. (b) Normal use. (c) Causal construction. (d) Expressions of the weather.
- §64 The Verb *pouvoir* 283
 (a) For conjugation see §66. (b) Normal use. (c) *Savoir* in sense of *to be able*.
- §65 Orthographical Changing Verbs 284
 (a) Verbs in *-cer*. (b) Verbs in *-ger*. (c) Verbs in *-yer*. (d) Verbs ending *-e + consonant + er*.
- §66 Irregular Verbs 286

REFERENCE GRAMMAR

The Article (L'Article)

§ 1 The Definite Article

(a) The definite article (*the* in English) is an adjective in French and changes its form to correspond to the gender and number of the noun modified.

<i>le</i> bateau	<i>the</i> boat (<i>masculine singular</i>)
<i>la</i> mère	<i>the</i> mother (<i>feminine singular</i>)
<i>les</i> bateaux	<i>the</i> boats (<i>masculine plural</i>)
<i>les</i> mères	<i>the</i> mothers (<i>feminine plural</i>)

(b) Before a word beginning with a vowel or mute *h* (see page 316), the vowels of *le* and *la* elide.

<i>le</i> + avion = l'avion	<i>the</i> airplane
<i>la</i> + eau = l'eau	<i>the</i> water
<i>la</i> + heure = l'heure	<i>the</i> hour
<i>les</i> avions	<i>the</i> airplanes
<i>les</i> heures	<i>the</i> hours

§ 2 Contractions of the Definite Article

(a) When *de* occurs before the article, the following contractions result:

<i>de</i> + <i>le</i> verre = <i>du</i> verre	<i>of the</i> glass
<i>de</i> + <i>les</i> verres = <i>des</i> verres	<i>of the</i> glasses

No contraction occurs with *de* + *la* and *de* + *l'*.

<i>de</i> <i>la</i> montre	<i>of the</i> watch
<i>de</i> l'heure	<i>of the</i> hour

Elision takes precedence over contraction (note above example). In speaking or writing, it is therefore necessary to anticipate a possible elision before deciding whether to contract.

(b) In a similar manner, *à* will contract with the following article.

<i>à</i> + <i>le</i> verre = <i>au</i> verre	<i>to the</i> glass
<i>à</i> + <i>les</i> verres = <i>aux</i> verres	<i>to the</i> glasses
<i>à</i> <i>la</i> montre	<i>to the</i> watch
<i>à</i> l'heure	<i>to the</i> hour

§ 3 Some Special Uses of the Definite Article

(a) A noun used in an abstract or in a general sense requires a

definite article in French, whereas the equivalent English usually omits the article.

<i>Le pain est bon.</i>	Bread is good.
<i>Marie aime la musique.</i>	Mary likes music.

Compare this with § 6.

(b) The definite article is required before the name of a language.

<i>Le français est une langue romane.</i>	French is a Romance language.
---	-------------------------------

This article is omitted if the name of the language directly follows the verb *parler*.

<i>Nous parlons anglais.</i>	We speak English.
------------------------------	-------------------

(c) The definite article is required before the name of a country.

<i>Je visite la France.</i>	I am visiting France.
-----------------------------	-----------------------

For omission of this article with prepositions, see § 4(a) and § 4(b)

(d) The definite article is required before a title preceding a person's name.

<i>le docteur Bellanger</i>	Doctor Bellanger
<i>le capitaine Duchâtel</i>	Captain Duchâtel

This article is not used, however, when *Monsieur*, *Madame*, *Mademoiselle* and their plurals precede names. It is also omitted in direct address.

<i>Bonjour, Docteur Bellanger.</i>	How do you do, Dr. Bellanger.
------------------------------------	-------------------------------

More normally, however, proper names are not used with titles in direct address. One should say more correctly:

Bonjour, Monsieur le Docteur.

(e) The definite article is used before a day of the week taken in a general sense.

Il voit toujours son ami le lundi (or: les lundis).

He always sees his friend Monday (Mondays or on Monday).

When the day of the week is used in a specific sense, there is no article.

<i>Il verra son ami lundi.</i>	He will see his friend Monday (or: on Monday).
--------------------------------	--

(f) The definite article translates the English *per* or an indefinite article in expressions involving price and quantity.

Ces poires coûtent cinquante francs la douzaine.

These pears cost fifty francs *per* dozen (or: a dozen).

(g) The definite article is used in place of the expected possessive adjective with parts of the body when there is no ambiguity as to the possessor.

<i>Il lève la main.</i>	He raises <i>his</i> hand.
-------------------------	----------------------------

But: *Sa main saignait.* *His hand was bleeding.*

When an action is performed on a part of the body, an additional reflexive pronoun [see § 27] becomes necessary.

Elle se lave les mains. She washes *her* hands.

When the action is performed on another person's body, an additional indirect pronoun object is needed.

Elle lui lave les mains. She washes *his* hands.

§ 4 Omission of the Definite Article

(a) After the preposition *en* [see § 3(b) and § 3(c)] the definite article is omitted.

<i>en France</i>	<i>in France</i>
<i>en anglais</i>	<i>in English</i>

There are a few idioms using *en* which do not omit the article.

<i>en l'honneur de</i>	<i>in honor of</i>
<i>en l'air</i>	<i>in the air</i>

(b) After the preposition *de* there is no definite article in the following types of expressions.

(1) After the idiom *avoir besoin de* when the following noun is used in a general sense.

J'ai besoin d'argent. I need money.

(2) After nouns expressing quantity.

Un kilo de beurre. A kilogram of butter.

(3) After *de* used in sense of *by* or *with* in a passive construction [see § 59].

La table était couverte de fleurs. The table was covered *with* flowers.

(4) After *de* in the sense of *from* [see § 38(e)] when the following word is an unmodified feminine country.

Il arrive de France. He is arriving *from* France.

If the feminine country is modified by an adjective, a prepositional phrase or a relative clause, the article which normally occurs with the name of a country [see § 3(c)] will remain.

Il arrive de la Nouvelle Angleterre. He is arriving from New England.

§ 5 The Indefinite Article

(a) In the singular the indefinite article has a masculine and a

feminine form agreeing with the noun modified.

<i>un</i> parapluie	an umbrella
<i>une</i> couleur	a color

§ 6 The Partitive Article

(a) The partitive article consists of *de* + *the definite article* (agreeing with the noun modified). It contracts according to the rules set forth in § 2(a).

(b) The partitive article is the plural of the indefinite article (which is omitted in English or expressed by the word *some*).

Voici <i>un</i> homme.	Here is <i>a</i> man.
Voici <i>des</i> hommes.	Here are men.
Voici <i>des</i> hommes.	Here are <i>some</i> men.

When a noun is unmodified, as in the second illustration above, try reducing the expression to a singular or try inserting the word *some* to complete the meaning. If the first method proves that an indefinite article would be used in the singular, the plural expression in French will require the partitive article. Or, if the word *some* clarifies the meaning of the English sentence, this is again proof that the French will use the partitive article.

(c) The partitive article also translates *some* or *any* used in the singular.

Jean <i>a de la</i> marmelade.	John has <i>some</i> marmelade.
Voulez-vous <i>du</i> pain?	Do you want <i>any</i> bread?

Frequently [see § 6(b)] the words *some* or *any* are omitted in English. Test an unmodified noun by inserting *some* or *any* to complete the meaning. If this does not work, test for a *noun in a general sense* [see § 3(a)] by inserting the phrases “in general” or “generally speaking” to clarify the meaning.

Voulez-vous *du sucre*? Do you want (*some*) sugar?

But: *Le pétrole est la première industrie de la région.*

Oil “generally speaking” is the principal industry of the region.

Refer to § 12(d) for the uses of *quelque* which also means *some*.

(d) The partitive article shortens to *de* alone in the following cases:

(1) After a negative verb.

Je n'ai pas d'amis. I haven't *any* friends (I have *no* friends).

(2) With a preceding adjective in the plural.

de belles robes *some* beautiful dresses

(3) After nouns and adverbs expressing a quantity.

Combien de lait? *how much* milk? *Un carnet de chèques* a check *book*
Une centaine de pommes a *hundred* apples

The principal adverbs of quantity are *assez, autant, beaucoup, combien, moins, peu, trop, tant, plus*. Exceptions: *bien* and *la plupart*, which are *always* followed by *de* plus the article: *bien des gens; la plupart des livres; bien du pain; bien de la bière*.

(e) The partitive article is omitted altogether in listings (*voici plusieurs choses: papier, plumes, encre, livres*), as well as after *ni . . . ni* (*vous avez ni crayons, ni livres*), *sans* (*je suis sans argent*) and *avec* (*je le ferai avec plaisir*).

§ 7 Omission of the Indefinite Article

(a) After the verb *être* the indefinite article is not used with a noun designating nationality or profession if it is otherwise unmodified. See also § 28(f).

Jean est docteur.
Jean est Français.

John is a doctor.
John is French, a Frenchman.

(b) A noun in apposition to another noun does not take an article if complete equality between the nouns is intended.

Monsieur Blanc, auteur de plusieurs romans, a signé le manifeste.
Mr. Blank, (the or an) author of several novels, signed the manifesto.

BUT: Madame Villier, la sœur de Monsieur Blanc, a signé aussi.
Mrs. Villier, the sister of Mr. Blank, signed also.

In the second example the phrase *la sœur de* is not intended in a sense of equality but *as a further explanation*.

The Noun (Le Nom)

§ 8 The Gender of Nouns

(a) In French there are only two genders, *masculine* and *feminine*. Already the *neuter* had begun to merge with the other two genders in Vulgar Latin, from which French and the other Romance languages are descended, and disappeared altogether in the early Middle Ages when French began to emerge as a distinctly separate group of dialects. As applied to *persons*, gender in French follows English usage, but *things* will be either masculine or feminine depending on the noun in question. Only a specialist in the history of the French language can explain why one noun designating a thing is masculine and another feminine, and his explanations would be useless to a beginner. Practically speaking, then, the beginner must memorize with each noun an article showing the gender so that he may associate the correct notion of gender with each noun.

There are no rules which permit one to recognize the gender of a noun at a glance, but it is useful to note that nouns ending in *-ié, -ion, -ée, -ice, -esse* are generally feminine and that nouns ending in *-age, -eau, -isme, -ment* are generally masculine.

Names of countries ending in *-e* are feminine with the notable exception of *le Mexique*.

<i>la</i>	France	France
<i>la</i>	Belgique	Belgium
BUT: <i>le</i>	Mexique	Mexico
<i>le</i>	Canada	Canada

The same rule applies to continents, provinces, states and regions.

<i>la</i>	Normandie	Normandy
<i>la</i>	Virginie	Virginia
<i>le</i>	Vermont	Vermont

§ 9 The Plural of Nouns

(a) Most nouns form their plural by adding *s* to the singular. This *s* is never pronounced except in linking.

<i>le</i>	livre	the book	<i>les</i>	livres	the books
-----------	-------	----------	------------	--------	-----------

(b) Nouns ending in *-s*, *-x*, and *-z* do not change to form the plural.

<i>le</i>	fil	the son	<i>les</i>	fil	the sons
<i>le</i>	nez	the nose	<i>les</i>	nez	the noses

(c) Nouns ending in *-eau* or *-eu* take an *x* in the plural.

<i>le</i>	bateau	the boat	<i>les</i>	bateaux	the boats
<i>le</i>	neveu	the nephew	<i>les</i>	neveux	the nephews

(d) Some, but not all, nouns ending in *-ou* form their plural by adding *x*. The outstanding cases are:

bijou	jewel	bijoux	jewels
caillou	stone	cailloux	stones
chou	cabbage	choux	cabbages
genou	knee	genoux	knees
hibou	owl	hiboux	owls
joujou	toy	joujoux	toys
pou	louse	poux	lice

(e) All nouns ending in *-al* and seven nouns ending in *-ail* form their plural in *-aux*.

journal	newspaper	journaux	newspapers
bail	lease	baux	leases
corail	corral	coraux	corrals
émail	enamel	émaux	enamels
soupirail	vent	soupiraux	vents
travail	work	travaux	works
vantail	folding door	vantaux	folding doors
vitrail	pane	vitraux	panes

(f) Some nouns have two plurals.

(1) *ciel* heaven *cieux, ciels* heavens

The first of the above plurals is used in a figurative sense. Compare the following:

Notre père qui êtes *aux cioux*. Our Father who art *in heaven*.
Cet artiste fait bien *les ciels*. This artist paints *skies* well.

(2) *œil* eye *yeux* eyes

But, in a compound noun, the plural of *œil* is *œils*.

un œil-de-bœuf a bull's eye (round window)
des œils-de-bœuf bull's eyes (round windows)

(3) *aïeul, aïeule** grandfather, grandmother
aïeux, aïeules grandfathers, grandmothers
aïeux ancestors

(g) Family names do not add an *s* in the plural.

J'ai vu *les Maritain* ce matin. I saw *the Maritains* this morning.

When used for other purposes, family names take an *s*.

Il n'y a pas beaucoup de *Fords* dans cette ville.
There are not many Fords in this city.

(h) Compound nouns form their plural in various ways depending on the nature of the component parts:

(1) If the compound noun is formed from an adjective and a noun or two nouns, each element of the compound is made plural.

gentilhomme gentleman **gentilshommes** gentlemen
bonhomme old fellow **bonshommes** old fellows
porte-fenêtre French window **portes-fenêtres** French windows

(2) If the compound noun is formed with a verb, an adverb, a preposition or a conjunction, only the noun part is made plural.

portemanteau coatrack **portemanteaux** coatracks
contre-amiral rear-admiral **contre-amiraux** rear-admirals

(3) If there is a preposition expressed or implied between two nouns in a compound word, only the first noun is made plural.

chef-d'œuvre masterpiece **chefs-d'œuvre** masterpieces
Hôtel-Dieu city hospital **Hôtels-Dieu** city hospitals

(4) Many compound nouns, particularly most of those using hyphens (note some exceptions above), have invariable plurals.

le gratte-ciel the skyscraper **les gratte-ciel** the skyscrapers
le porte-monnaie the purse **les porte-monnaie** the purses

FOOTNOTE The common words are *grand-père* and *grand-mère*.

The Adjective (L'Adjectif)

§ 10 Agreement of the Adjective

(a) The adjective agrees in gender and number with the noun or pronoun which it modifies. To form the feminine of the adjective, add *-e* to the masculine singular. The plural of the adjective is formed by adding *-s* to the masculine or feminine singular.

Le livre est petit.	The book is little.
La chaise est petite.	The chair is little.
Les livres sont petits.	The books are little.
Les chaises sont petites.	The chairs are little.

(b) When used as adjectives, past participles [see § 49] ending in *-é* add another unpronounced *-e* to form the feminine.

la symphonie inachevée the unfinished symphony

(c) Adjectives already ending in *-e* in the masculine cannot take an additional *e* in the feminine.

Le livre est difficile.	The book is difficult.
La leçon est difficile.	The lesson is difficult.

(d) Adjectives ending in *-el*, *-eil*, *-en*, *-et*, *-on*, *-as*, *-os* double the consonant before adding the feminine *e*.

MASCULINE	FEMININE
cruel (cruel)	cruelle
pareil (like)	pareille
ancien (ancient)	ancienne
muet (mute)	muette
bon (good)	bonne
gras (fat)	grasse
gros (large)	grosse

(e) Adjectives ending in *-er* do not double the consonant but write a grave accent instead.

cher (dear)	chère
étranger (foreign)	étrangère

Many adjectives ending in *-et* [see § 10(d)] write a grave accent instead of doubling the consonant.

MASCULINE	FEMININE
complet (complete)	complète
concret (concrete)	concrète
discret (discreet)	discrète

inquiet	(uneasy)	inquiète
replet	(corpulent)	replète
secret	(secret)	secrète

(f) Adjectives ending in *-f* change the *-f* to *-ve* for the feminine, and those ending in *-x* change to *-se*.

neuf	(new)	neuve
vif	(lively)	vive
heureux	(happy)	heureuse

(g) Most adjectives ending in *-eur* form their feminine normally.

supérieur	superior	supérieure
meilleur	better	meilleure

But those derived from a present participle [see § 48] by changing *-ant* to *-eur*, take *-euse* in the feminine.

menteur	lying	menteuse
liseur	book-loving	liseuse

Those ending in *-teur*, not deriving from a present participle, have the feminine form in *-trice*.

protecteur*	protecting	protectrice
--------------------	------------	--------------------

(The present participle of this verb is *protégeant*; hence the adjective is not derived from the present participle).

(h) Adjectives ending in *-eau* or *-al* in the masculine singular form their masculine plurals like nouns with similar endings [see § 9(c) and § 9(e)].

beau	beautiful	beaux
égal	equal	égaux

There are two notable exceptions to the above rule.

final	final	finals
fatal	fatal	fatals

(i) The following adjectives have a second masculine form to be used before a noun beginning with a vowel or mute *h*.

beau	un <i>bel</i> homme	a handsome man
nouveau	un <i>nouvel</i> ami	a new friend
vieux	un <i>vieil</i> ami	an old friend

* Many nouns designating persons have similar endings to indicate the gender of the person. Examples: *acteur*, *actrice*: actor, actress; *lecteur*, *lectrice*: reader; *bienfaiteur*, *bienfaitrice*: benefactor.

(j) Table of common irregular adjectives:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
(beautiful)	beau (bel)	belle	beaux	belles
(white)	blanc	blanche	blancs	blanches
(blue)	bleu	bleue	bleus	bleues
(good)	bon	bonne	bons	bonnes
(sweet)	doux	douce	doux	douces
(thick)	épais	épaisse	épais	épaisses
(false)	faux	fausse	faux	fausses
(crazy)	fou	folle	fous	folles
(cool)	frais	fraîche	frais	fraîches
(frank)	franc	franche	francs	franches
(nice)	gentil	gentille	gentils	gentilles
(Greek)	grec	grecque	grecs	grecques
(long)	long	longue	longs	longues
(shrewd)	malin	maligne	malins	malignes
(new)	nouveau (nouvel)	nouvelle	nouveaux	nouvelles
(public)	public	publique	publics	publiques
(red-headed)	roux	rousse	roux	rousses
(dry)	sec	sèche	secs	sèches
(Turkish)	turc	turque	turcs	turques
(old)	vieux (vieil)	vieille	vieux	vieilles

§ 11 Position of the Adjective

(a) When the adjective is adjacent to the noun which it modifies, it usually follows the noun. This is particularly true of *descriptive* adjectives, adjectives of *nationality*, *color* adjectives, and *past participles* or *present participles* used as adjectives.

- une fenêtre ronde a round window (*description*)
- une ville française a French city (*nationality*)
- une maison blanche a white house (*color*)
- une chose résolue a settled thing (*past participle*)
- une leçon intéressante an interesting lesson (*present participle*)

(b) Certain short adjectives normally precede the noun.

autre	other	joli	pretty
beau	beautiful	long	long
bon	good	mauvais	bad
grand	great, tall	méchant	naughty, wicked
	large	meilleur	better, best
gros	big	nouveau	new
haut	high	petit	small, short, little
jeune	young	vieux	old

(c) Adjectives expressing an abstract quality frequently precede the noun although they may also follow.

une énorme difficulté	an enormous difficulty
un intrépide voyageur	an intrepid traveler

(d) Some adjectives change their meaning according to their position in relation to the noun modified.

une ancienne église	a former church
une église ancienne	an ancient church
le brave homme	the good man
l'homme brave	the brave man
une certaine chose	a certain thing
une chose certaine	a sure thing
cher ami	dear friend
un costume cher	an expensive suit
un grand homme	a great man
un homme grand	a tall man
la même faute	the same mistake
la faute même	the very mistake
ma propre chambre	my own room
une chambre propre	a clean room
le pauvre homme	the unfortunate man
l'homme pauvre	the poor man (without money)

(e) *Prochain* and *dernier* precede when used in the sense of a series and follow when used in a time expression involving the day, week, month or year.

la prochaine rue	the next street
le mois prochain	next month
le dernier obstacle	the last obstacle
le mois dernier	last month

(Note use of article in second and fourth examples.)

§ 12 Indefinite Adjectives

(a) The following indefinite adjectives require *ne* before the verb [see § 23(h)].

aucun, aucune	none, not any
nul, nulle	none, not any
pas un, pas une	none, not any

(b) The following indefinite adjectives follow English usage by taking no article.

Certains invités sont venus.	Certain guests have come.
Chaque invité est venu.	Each (every) guest came.

(c) The plural indefinite adjective *plusieurs* is invariable, having the same form in the feminine as in the masculine.

<i>plusieurs hommes</i>	several men
<i>plusieurs femmes</i>	several women

(d) The indefinite adjective *quelque* in the singular means *some* or *any* indefinite; in the plural it means *a few* or *some* in the sense of *a few* (compare with the use of the partitive article, § 6).

Il cherche *quelque* explication.
He is looking for *some* (any kind of) explanation.
Voulez-vous *quelques* livres?
Do you want *some* (i.e. *a few*) books?

(e) The indefinite adjective *all* has the following forms:

<i>tout le livre</i>	all the book, the whole book
<i>toute la leçon</i>	all the lesson, the whole lesson
<i>tous les livres</i>	all the books
<i>toutes les leçons</i>	all the lessons

As in English, the definite article follows the adjective. To translate *the whole*, transpose to *all the* before translating.

Tout and *toute* are used without an article in the sense of *chaque* [see § 12(b)], particularly in adages.

A *tout* homme qui sait lire . . . To every man who can read . . .

(f) An indefinite article precedes the indefinite adjective *tel*. It does not follow as in English.

<i>un tel homme</i>	such <i>a</i> man
<i>de tels hommes</i>	such men
<i>une telle femme</i>	such <i>a</i> woman
<i>de telles femmes</i>	such women

(g) The indefinite adjective *quelconque* follows the noun modified. Note that an indefinite article precedes the noun in the singular, not a partitive article.

<i>un livre quelconque</i>	any book whatever
<i>des leçons quelconques</i>	any lessons whatever

§ 13 Use of the Adjective as a Substantive

Many adjectives can be used as substantives (that is to say, in the function of a noun) by placing an article before them and by giving them the gender of the noun referred to.

Voici *trois cravates*. Here are three neckties.
Voulez-vous *la rouge*? Do you want *the red one*?

Note that the English uses the pronoun *one* whereas the French has no equivalent.

§ 14 Comparison of Adjectives

(a) English has two systems for the comparison of adjectives. Some adjectives add the endings *-er*, *-est* (example: *bigger*, *biggest*); others use the adverbs *more* or *most* (example: *more beautiful*, *most beautiful*). The French has only the second of these systems. In a diminishing sense, both French and English use the adverbs *less* and *least*.

(b) The adverb *plus* or *moins* is placed before the adjective to form the comparative.

Cet homme est *plus (moins)* intéressant que cette femme.

This man is *more (less)* interesting than that woman.

Cette maison-ci est *plus (moins)* grande que celle-là.

This house is *bigger (less big)* than that one.

(c) The definite article and the adverb *plus* are placed before the adjective to form the superlative.

Cette leçon est *la plus* intéressante.

This lesson is *the most* interesting.

Sometimes the superlative may be mistaken for the comparative, in which case the comparative can be distinguished in this manner:

Cette leçon est *la plus intéressante des deux*.

This lesson is the more interesting (of the two).

Generally, however, the context will indicate clearly enough whether comparative or superlative is meant.

(d) In the case of an adjective normally following its noun, the entire superlative, including the definite article, will follow.

la leçon la plus intéressante the most interesting lesson

Note in the above example that there are two definite articles, both agreeing with the noun. The following example will indicate more clearly which article is the sign of the superlative:

mes livres *les plus intéressants* my most interesting books

In the case of an adjective normally preceding its noun, the superlative may either precede or follow.

<i>la plus grande maison</i>	}	the biggest house
or		
<i>la maison la plus grande</i>		

Note in the first example above that the specific definite article found in the equivalent English absorbs the article sign of the superlative. This article would also be absorbed by a possessive adjective.

mon plus grand ami my best (literally: biggest) friend

§ 15 The Demonstrative Adjective

(a) The demonstrative adjective has the following forms: *ce* (masculine singular before word beginning with a consonant); *cet* (masculine singular before word beginning with a vowel or mute *h*); *cette* (feminine singular); *ces* (masculine and feminine plural).

SINGULAR

ce garçon	<i>this (that)</i> boy
cet homme	<i>this (that)</i> man
cette jeune fille	<i>this (that)</i> girl

PLURAL

ces garçons	<i>these (those)</i> boys
ces hommes	<i>these (those)</i> men
ces jeunes filles	<i>these (those)</i> girls

(b) Unless a distinction among two or more things is being made, or unless special emphasis is desired, there is no need to distinguish in French between *this* or *that*, *these* or *those*. If it is necessary to distinguish or emphasize, *-ci* and *-là* are affixed to the noun.

ce livre-ci	<i>this</i> book	ces livres-ci	<i>these</i> books
ce livre-là	<i>that</i> book	ces livres-là	<i>those</i> books

§ 16 The Possessive Adjective

(a) The possessive adjectives can best be learned in the following chart:

		AS TO NOUN MODIFIED		
		Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Plural (M. & F.)
As to Antecedent	SING.	mon (my)	ma (mon)	mes
		ton (thy)	ta (ton)	tes
		son (his, her, its)	sa (son)	ses
	PLUR.	notre (our)	notre	nos
		votre (your)	votre	vos
		leur (their)	leur	leurs

(b) The choice of the form in terms of the antecedent presents no problem since the English equivalent serves as a guide. Once the form of the possessive adjective is chosen, however, it becomes

necessary to make it agree in gender and number *with the noun which it modifies*. Thus one says:

<i>mon</i> chapeau	my hat	<i>mes</i> chapeaux	my hats
<i>ma</i> cravate	my necktie	<i>mes</i> cravates	my neckties

(c) In the third person singular, note that the French is unable to distinguish the gender of the possessor. English says *his, her, its*, but French says:

<i>son</i> chapeau	<i>his</i> hat, <i>her</i> hat, <i>its</i> hat
<i>sa</i> cravate	<i>his</i> necktie, <i>her</i> necktie, <i>its</i> necktie

In order to make the distinction, should it be necessary, the French will use an additional prepositional phrase [see § 26(c)10]. Unless this phrase is used, the third person singular possessive adjective will refer to the nearest possible antecedent.

Jean a perdu *sa* cravate. John lost *his* (not *her*) necktie.

Do not confuse:

<i>ses</i> chapeaux	<i>his, her, its</i> hats
<i>leurs</i> chapeaux	<i>their</i> hats

(d) If a feminine singular word, beginning with a vowel or mute *h*, is modified by a possessive adjective, the forms *mon, ton, son* must be used.

<i>mon</i> amie	(feminine) <i>my</i> friend
<i>ton</i> amie	(feminine) <i>thy</i> friend
<i>son</i> amie	(feminine) <i>his, her, its</i> friend

(f) Note that *leur* is both masculine and feminine singular and that *leurs* is both masculine and feminine plural.

<i>leur</i> ami	<i>their</i> friend (masculine)
<i>leur</i> amie	<i>their</i> friend (feminine)
<i>leurs</i> amis	<i>their</i> friends (masculine)
<i>leurs</i> amies	<i>their</i> friends (feminine)

§ 17 The Interrogative Adjective

(a) The interrogative adjective has the following forms:

<i>quel</i> livre	(masculine)	<i>what, which</i> book
<i>quelle</i> cravate	(feminine)	<i>what, which</i> necktie
<i>quels</i> livres	(masculine plural)	<i>what, which</i> books
<i>quelles</i> cravates	(feminine plural)	<i>what, which</i> neckties

(b) In the formula *what + verb to be + noun*, in what might be described as a "balanced equation," the interrogative adjective rather than the interrogative pronoun [see § 31] must be used.

The interrogative adjective will then agree with the noun in the predicate.

Quelle est la leçon? *What is the lesson? (The lesson is what?)*

If a definition is expected as an answer, however, the expression *qu'est-ce que* (literary) or *qu'est-ce que c'est que* (conversational) must be used.

Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'une leçon?
(kèsk° sèkün lèsôn) *What is a lesson?*
Qu'est-ce qu'une leçon?
(kèskün lèsôn) *What is a lesson?*

(c) The interrogative adjective is used with persons in this type of expression:

Quel est cet homme? *Who is this man?*

The use of *quel*, instead of the expected *qui*, signifies: *What kind of man is he?*

§ 18 Cardinal and Ordinal Numbers

See Lesson 5.

The Adverb (L'Adverbe)

§ 19 Formation of the Adverb

(a) The adverb is formed by adding *-ment* to the feminine singular of the adjective or to the masculine singular if it ends in a vowel.

<i>heureuse</i>	happy (feminine)	<i>heureusement</i>	happily, luckily
<i>facile</i>	easy (masculine)	<i>facilement</i>	easily
<i>vrai</i>	true (masculine)	<i>vraiment</i>	truly

(b) Adjectives ending in *-ant* form the adverb in *-amment* and those ending in *-ent* form the adverb in *-emment*. The adverbial endings *-amment* and *-emment* are both pronounced -amâⁿ.

<i>incessant</i>	<i>incessamment</i>	incessantly
<i>prudent</i>	<i>prudemment</i>	prudently

(c) Certain adjectives are irregular in that they take an acute accent on the *e* of the feminine adjective. These must be noted separately.

<i>énorme</i>	(masculine)	enormous	<i>énormément</i>	enormously
<i>précise</i>	(feminine)	precise	<i>précisément</i>	precisely

§ 20 Comparison of Adverbs

(a) The adverb is compared like the adjective (see § 14) except that the article, sign of the superlative, is invariable since adverbs do not have gender.

Positive	Comparative	
lentement (slowly)	plus lentement (more slowly)	moins lentement (less slowly)
Superlative		
	le plus lentement (the most slowly)	
	le moins lentement (the least slowly)	

(b) Certain common adverbs are compared irregularly.

mal	badly	plus mal	worse	le plus mal	the worst
		pis	worse	le pis	the worst
bien	well	mieux	better	le mieux	(the) best
peu	little	moins	less	le moins	(the) least

NOTE. As a modifier of the verb, the adverb *plus* can be used only when the comparison is completed. If the comparison is not complete, *more* will translate by the adverb *davantage*.

Je l'aime *plus* que Marie. I like her *more* than Mary.

But: Je l'aime *davantage* chaque jour.

I like her *more* each day (comparison incomplete).

On the other hand, *more and more* translates as *de plus en plus*.

Je l'aime *de plus en plus*. I like her *more and more*.

The idioms *less and less* and *better and better* have a similar construction: *de moins en moins*, *de mieux en mieux*.

§ 21 Position of the Adverb

(a) If the adverb modifies a verb, its normal position is directly after the verb.

Il parle <i>très bien</i> le français.	He speaks French <i>very well</i> .
Je le vois <i>souvent</i> à Paris.	I <i>often</i> see him at Paris.

For emphasis, the adverb may go at the beginning of the sentence.

Exceptionnellement, il n'y aura pas de courrier demain.

By exception there will be no mail tomorrow.

The adverb can never go between the pronoun subject and the verb, as is often the practice in English.

(b) In a compound tense, short adverbs normally go between the two parts of the verb.

Il a *toujours* compris. He has *always* understood.

But certain common adverbs, principally adverbs of time, follow the past participle in compound tenses. They are:

aujourd'hui	today	ici	here
demain	tomorrow	hier	yesterday
autrefois	formerly	tard	late
		tôt	soon

Long adverbs, especially those ending in *-ment*, will tend rather to follow the past participle in a compound tense.

Il a parlé *lentement*. He spoke *slowly*.

(c) Adverbs which are commonly used between the parts of a compound tense will precede the verb form when used with the infinitive.

pour toujours parler *correctement* in order *always* to speak *correctly*
pour bien comprendre to understand *well*

(d) The following adverbs or adverbial phrases, when placed at the beginning of the sentence, bring about an inversion of the verb [see § 60(a)(c)].

<i>Peut-être</i> a-t-il raison.	<i>Perhaps</i> he is right.
<i>Aussi*</i> croyait-il à cette doctrine.	<i>So</i> he believed in this doctrine.
<i>Sans doute</i> l'a-t-il vue.	<i>Doubtless</i> he saw her.

Similar inversions exist in English but rarely do they correspond to an inversion in French.

<i>Souvent</i> je l'ai vu.	<i>Often</i> have I seen him.
<i>Surtout</i> je voulais le voir.	<i>Particularly</i> did I wish to see him.
<i>Jamais</i> je ne l'ai vu.	<i>Never</i> did I see him.

(e) Adverbs modifying adjectives or other adverbs precede these forms as in English. This means that, if the adverb modifies an adjective following a noun, the adverb will occur between the noun and the adjective.

une <i>très belle</i> maison	a <i>very beautiful</i> house
une leçon <i>très difficile</i>	a <i>very difficult</i> lesson
Il le fait <i>trop bien</i> .	He makes it <i>too well</i> .

* In any other position *aussi* means *also* or *too*. Example: Il y va *aussi*: He is going *too*.

§ 22 Adverbs of Quantity

(a) Adverbs of quantity translate certain English adjectives for which there is no adjectival equivalent in French. In this sense, they require the preposition *de* to introduce the noun.

J'ai beaucoup de livres.	I have <i>many</i> books.
J'ai beaucoup de difficulté.	I have <i>much</i> difficulty.
J'ai trop de livres.	I have <i>too many</i> books.
J'ai trop de difficulté.	I have <i>too much</i> difficulty.
J'ai assez de livres.	I have <i>enough</i> books.
J'ai plus de livres.	I have <i>more</i> ¹ books.
J'ai moins de livres.	I have <i>fewer</i> books.
J'ai moins de difficulté.	I have <i>less</i> ¹ difficulty.
J'ai tant de livres.	I have <i>so many</i> books.
J'ai tant de difficulté.	I have <i>so much</i> difficulty.
J'ai autant de livres que Jean.	I have <i>as many</i> books as John.
J'ai autant de difficulté que Jean.	I have <i>as much</i> difficulty as John.
J'ai peu de livres.	I have <i>few</i> ² books.
J'ai peu de difficulté.	I have <i>little</i> ³ difficulty.
J'ai un peu de difficulté.	I have <i>a little</i> difficulty.
Combien de livres avez-vous?	<i>How many</i> books do you have?
Combien de difficulté avez-vous?	<i>How much</i> difficulty do you have?

(b) When used alone in the predicate of the sentence, adverbs of quantity require automatically the partitive pronoun *en* [see § 25 (f)] before the verb.

J'en ai beaucoup.	I have <i>many</i> .
J'en ai trop.	I have <i>too much</i> .
Combien en avez-vous?	<i>How many</i> do you have?

(c) If the adverb of quantity stands without a noun in a defective sentence (lacking a verb), it will have neither *de* nor *en*.

En avez-vous beaucoup? Oui, beaucoup.
Do you have *many*? Yes, *many*.

(d) It must not be forgotten that these adverbs of quantity were originally simple adverbs, in which sense there is no preposition *de*.

Je l'aime beaucoup.	I like it <i>very much</i> .
Je l'aime autant.	I like it <i>as much</i> .
Je l'aime très peu.	I like it <i>very little</i> .

¹ When *more* modifies a noun, it is an *adverb of quantity* with *de*. When it modifies an adjective or an adverb, it is the adverb *plus* without *de*. Example: La leçon est *plus difficile*: The lesson is *more difficult*. The same is true of *moins*, meaning *less*.

² Compare with *a few* which translates as *quelque* [see § 12(d)].

³ Distinguish between *little* as an adjective, which is *petit*, and *little* in a quantitative sense. Une *petite* maison: A *little* house. Un *peu de* beurre: A *little* (quantity of) butter.

The adverb *beaucoup* can never be modified by another adverb. It means both *much* and *very much*.

The adverb *trop* means *too* when it modifies an adjective or an adverb.

C'est trop difficile. It is too difficult.

(e) In literary style, the adverb *bien* is used in the sense of *beaucoup* in a partitive construction, but it requires the definite article after it as well as the preposition *de*.

bien des fois many times

In this respect, *la plupart*, although not an adverb, is similar in construction.

la plupart des hommes most men

In the above example, *most* modifies a noun. When it modifies an adjective or an adverb, it is, of course, *le plus* (see § 14 and § 20).

(f) Expressions containing adverbs of quantity, *la plupart* with nouns, or adverbs of quantity or *la plupart* standing alone have a plural meaning. Any verb, past participle or adjective agreeing with them will therefore be in the plural.

Beaucoup d'hommes sont ici.	Many men are here.
Il y en a beaucoup qui sont ici.	Many are here.
La plupart sont ici.	Most are here.
Combien de livres avez-vous lus?	How many books have you read?

In the last example above note that the past participle agrees with the entire phrase *combien de livres* [see § 55(b) 1].

§ 23 Negation

(a) Simple negation is made by placing *ne* before the verb and *pas* after it.* The *ne* will elide before any word beginning with a vowel.

Je ne comprends pas.	I do not understand.
Je n'aime pas.	I do not love.

If the verb has a pronoun object, the *ne* will go between the subject and the pronoun object.

Je ne le comprends pas. I do not understand it.

* Historically this is a double negative or, if you wish, a reenforced negative. The users of Vulgar Latin came to feel that *Non amo* was not sufficiently negative to mean *I do not love* and they reenforced it in this manner: *Non amo passum* (or *punctum*, etc.): *I do not love a step's worth, a point's worth*, etc.

If the verb is inverted, the *pas* will follow the pronoun subject.

<i>Ne comprenez-vous pas?</i>	Don't you understand?
<i>Ne le comprenez-vous pas?</i>	Don't you understand it?

(b) In a compound tense, the auxiliary is the verb and therefore all changes performed in terms of the verb are now performed in terms of the auxiliary, after which comes the past participle.

<i>Je n'ai pas compris.</i>	I have not understood.
<i>Ne les avez-vous pas aimés?</i>	Didn't you like them?

(c) An infinitive is made negative by placing both *ne* and *pas* before it. If there is also a pronoun object, the *pas* will precede it.

<i>pour ne pas les voir</i>	in order <i>not</i> to see them
-----------------------------	---------------------------------

On the other hand, *avoir* and *être* are frequently made negative by placing *ne* and *pas* around them.

<i>pour ne pas être malade</i>	in order <i>not</i> to be sick
<i>pour n'être pas malade</i>	in order <i>not</i> to be sick

(d) Present or perfect participles [see § 48] are made negative according to the rules given in § 23(a) and § 23(b).

<i>n'étant pas malade</i>	<i>not</i> being sick
---------------------------	-----------------------

(e) Other negatives working the same as *ne pas* are as follows:

<i>Je ne le vois guère.</i>	I <i>hardly</i> (<i>scarcely</i>) see it.
<i>Je ne le vois jamais.</i>	I <i>never</i> see it.
<i>Je ne le vois plus.</i>	I <i>no longer</i> see it.
<i>Je ne le vois point.</i>	I see it <i>not at all</i> .

For emphasis, *jamais* may be placed at the beginning of the sentence, in which case it will still require *ne* before the verb but will not take an inversion as in English [see § 21(d)].

<i>Jamais je ne l'ai vu.</i>	<i>Never</i> have I seen him.
------------------------------	-------------------------------

The adverb *jamais*, when used without a verb (and hence without a *ne*, since *ne* can never be used without a verb), means *never*.

<i>L'avez-vous jamais vu? Non, jamais.</i>
Have you <i>ever</i> seen him? No, <i>never</i> .

It is obvious from the above illustration also that *jamais* with a verb and no *ne* means *ever* instead of *never*.

(f) The negatives *ne . . . personne* (no one) and *ne . . . rien* (nothing) work the same as *ne . . . pas* in simple tenses.

<i>Je ne vois personne.</i>	I see <i>no one</i> .
<i>Il n'aime rien.</i>	He likes <i>nothing</i> .

In a compound tense, *ne . . . rien* continues to work like *ne . . . pas*, whereas with *ne . . . personne* the second element of the negative comes after the past participle.

Je n'ai rien vu.	I have seen <i>nothing</i> .
Je n'ai vu personne.	I have seen <i>no one</i> .
	I have <i>not</i> seen <i>anyone</i> .

Rien and *personne*, being a type of pronoun, may also be the subject of the sentence. As such, they still require *ne* before the verb.

Rien n'est difficile.	<i>Nothing</i> is difficult.
Personne* n'est venu.	<i>No one</i> came.

Standing completely alone, *rien* and *personne* have a negative force like *jamais* [see § 23 (e)].

Vous n'avez vu personne? Non, personne.
You have seen *no one*? No, *no one*.

Vous n'avez rien vu? Non, rien.
You have seen *nothing*? No, *nothing*.

(g) The negative *ne . . . que*, meaning *only*, can be used only to introduce the predicate of the verb. The *que* does not necessarily follow the verb directly. It will occupy the same position as the word *only* if the English sentence is carefully organized (which is frequently not the case).

Je ne le verrai que demain.	I will see him <i>only</i> tomorrow.
Je n'ai vu dans cette maison que Marie.	I saw in this house <i>only</i> Mary.

The adverb *seulement* may always be used instead of *ne . . . que*, although the latter may be stylistically preferable since French tends to shun the use of adverbs in *-ment*.

Je n'ai vu que Marie.	I have seen <i>only</i> Mary.
J'ai vu Marie seulement.	I saw Mary <i>only</i> .

If *only* modifies the verb, the simplest method is to use *seulement*.

Je regarde seulement . . .	I am <i>only</i> looking . . .
-----------------------------------	--------------------------------

A special construction with *faire* is necessary to make *ne . . . que* refer to the verb.

Je ne fais que regarder.	I am <i>only</i> looking.
---------------------------------	---------------------------

If *only* modifies the subject, use the adjective *seul* instead of an ad-

* Observe the masculine agreement when *personne* is used as a negative. Do not confuse this with the noun *la personne* (the person) which is always feminine, even when it obviously refers to a masculine individual.

verb. If the subject is a pronoun, the disjunctive form [see § 26(c)4] will therefore have to be used.

Jean seul vient. *Only* John is coming.
Moi seul je viens. *Only* I am coming.

(h) The adjectives *aucun* (no, not any) and *nul* (no, not any) require *ne* before the verb, except in a defective sentence.

Aucune femme ne viendra. *No* woman will come.
Nulle raison ne suffira. *No* reason will suffice.

These adjectives also exist as substantives.

Aucun ne conviendra. *None* will be fitting.
Nul ne viendra. *No* one will come.

Aucun is more common than *nul*, but *aucun* should not be used except for special emphasis. Normally one says:

Je n'ai pas d'ami. I have *no* friend.

It is preferable to put the negation with the verb, reserving *aucun* for special stress.

Je n'ai aucun ami. I have *no* friend *at all*.

Aucun does not exist in modern French in a plural sense. In such a case, negation must be expressed with the verb.

Je n'ai pas d'amis. I have *no* friends.

(i) The negative *ni . . . ni* (*neither . . . nor*) requires a *ne* in any sentence having a verb.

Ni Jean ni Marie n'est ici. *Neither* John *nor* Mary is here.
Je ne vois ni Jean ni Marie. I see *neither* John *nor* Mary.

After *ni . . . ni*, all partitives [see § 6] and all articles used before a noun in a general sense [see § 3(a)] are omitted.

Je n'aime ni eau ni vin. I like *neither* *water* *nor* *wine*.

BUT: Je n'aime ni le pain ni le vin que le domestique a apportés.
 I like *neither* *the* bread *nor* *the* wine which the servant brought.

In the second example above, the nouns are specific, not general.

(j) Certain negatives may be combined according to an intrinsic (that is, natural, not reducible to rules) word order. In such cases one *ne* serves for both negatives. Observe the following examples:

Je n'ai jamais rien vu. I have *never* seen *anything*.
Je n'ai jamais vu personne. I have *never* seen *anyone*.
Je ne veux plus rien voir. I *no longer* want to see *anything*.
Il n'a guère rien. He has *scarcely* *anything*.

(k) Certain verbs may be made negative without *pas*.

Je n'ose (<i>pas</i>) le dire.	I dare not say it.
Je ne sais (<i>pas</i>) ce qu'il veut dire.	I don't know what he means.
Il ne cesse de crier.	He does not stop shouting.
Il ne peut (<i>pas</i>) le faire.	He cannot do it.

(l) *Pas*, without *ne*, also occurs as an adverb modifying an adjective or an adverb.

C'est une leçon <i>pas trop</i> difficile.	It is a <i>not</i> too difficult lesson.
Il le fait rapidement, <i>pas</i> lentement.	He does it rapidly, <i>not</i> slowly.

(m) In a defective sentence (that is, lacking a verb) or in a fragment of a sentence set apart by a comma and having the same grammatical structure as a defective sentence, only *pas* can be used in the sense of *not*.

<i>Pas</i> moi.	<i>Not</i> I.
Marie viendra, mais <i>pas</i> Jean.	Mary will come, but <i>not</i> John.

In more literary French the tendency is to use *non pas* in the same situation.

Charles V devint roi à cette époque, <i>non pas</i> son frère.
Charles V became king at that period, <i>not</i> his brother.

(n) The negative *ne* occurs alone in certain expressions without having any meaning whatever in modern French. This type of *ne* is called a "pleonastic" *ne*. The "pleonastic" *ne* is required when an entire clause follows the conjunction *que* (*than* in a comparison).

Elle était plus grande que je *ne* croyais. She was taller than I thought.

After *avant que* (before) and *à moins que* (unless) a pleonastic *ne* is found in literary style as well as a subjunctive [see § 57 (e)].

Il fallait cesser avant qu'il <i>ne</i> tombât malade.
He had to stop before he fell sick.
Il viendra à moins que vous <i>ne</i> soyez malade.
He will come unless you are sick.

After an expression of *fear* a noun clause in literary style will have a pleonastic *ne* as well as a subjunctive [see § 57 (c) 1].

Il craignait que le gouvernement <i>ne</i> tombât.
He was afraid the government might fall.

The Pronoun (Le Pronom)

§ 24 Personal Subject Pronouns

(a) The personal pronoun subjects of the verb are:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
je I	nous we
tu thou (you)	vous you
il he, it (masc.)	ils they (masc.)
elle she, it (fem.)	elles they (fem.)

In modern French, *vous* has come to have both a singular and a plural meaning, although it always requires a plural verb. This usage parallels English where *you*, although historically plural, is now used in both a singular and plural sense and yet it takes a plural verb in both cases. The English form *thou*, however, has practically disappeared. Corresponding to *thou*, there is in French the singular *tu* which is still used in speaking to close friends, relatives, children and animals. In the army, among enlisted men, and in many schools among students, it is also customary to use *tu*. In any case, *tu* exists only in a singular, meaning; speaking to a group of intimate friends, etc., *vous* must be used. In so-called sacred language, *vous* and not *tu* is the proper form of address [note the illustration in § 9(f)].

In the third person, since French has no neuter gender [see discussion in § 8(a)], the same pronouns are used for persons and for things.* Thus the pronoun *il* means *he* but also *it* when the antecedent is masculine. Study the following examples:

Voici un livre. Il est bleu.

Here is a book. *It* is blue.

Voilà une cravate. Elle est verte.

There is a necktie. *It* is green.

Voici des livres. Ils sont bleus.

Here are some books. *They* are blue.

Voilà des cravates. Elles sont vertes.

There are some neckties. *They* are green.

§ 25 Personal Pronoun Objects

(a) The following chart of personal pronoun objects should be memorized at the outset. All forms on this chart precede the verb in

* The rules governing the use of *ce* as the subject of the verb *être* [see § 28(f)] still apply even when there is a precise antecedent having gender. One says: *Voilà Jean. C'est mon ami. There is John. He is my friend.* Occasionally one hears: *Il est mon ami.* But the former expression is more correct. Compare also with § 7(a). One says: *Voilà Jean Leblanc. Il est docteur maintenant. There is John Leblanc. He is a doctor now.* But one also says: *Voilà Jean Leblanc. C'est un bon docteur. There is John Leblanc. He is a good doctor.* In the second case, the rules for the use of *ce* apply, and there is a change from the expected *il* to *ce*.

every case except the affirmative imperative [see § 25(g)].

me				
te	le	lui		
se	BEFORE la	BEFORE leur	BEFORE y	BEFORE en
nous	les			
vous				

In the above chart the pronoun objects follow an intrinsic (natural, not reducible to rule) word order which is the order in which they occur when there are two pronoun objects coming before the verb.* From the chart, for example, it is clear that *me* will precede *les* if they both are to come before the verb, that *leur* will precede *en*, etc.

Il me les donne.	He gives them to me.
Elle les leur donne.	She gives them to them.

(b) Pronoun objects in the first column are direct, indirect and reflexive (for a discussion of the reflexive pronoun, see § 27). In other words, they have the following meanings:

DIRECT	INDIRECT	REFLEXIVE
me me	to me	myself, to myself
te thee	to thee	thyself, to thyself
se		himself, to himself
		herself, to herself
		itself, to itself
		oneself, to oneself
nous us	to us	ourselves, to ourselves
vous you	to you	yourself, to yourself
		yourselves, to yourselves

Before a vowel *me*, *te*, and *se* elide.

Elle m'aime.	She loves <i>me</i> .
Il s'en donnera.	He will give <i>thee</i> some.

(c) Pronoun objects in the second column are third person direct objects.

le	him, it (masculine)
la	her, it (feminine)
les	them (masculine and feminine for persons or things)

Before a vowel, *le* and *la* will elide.

Elle l'aime.	She likes <i>it</i> .
---------------------	-----------------------

* There never can be three pronoun objects, except in a sequence containing the conjunction *and*. In such a case all pronoun objects will follow the verb and will consequently be in the disjunctive form (see § 26(c)1).

But no contraction will occur with *à* or *de* if *le* is the object of an infinitive which they introduce [see § 47(c)].

J'ai oublié *de le* prévenir. I forgot to warn him.
J'ai cherché *à le* voir. I sought to see him.

(d) Pronoun objects in the third column are third person indirect objects.

lui to him, to her
leur to them (masculine and feminine)

These pronouns apply only to persons and not to things. See further discussion in next paragraph.

(e) The adverbial pronoun *y* means *there*, if the place has already been mentioned.

Je connais bien Paris. J'y vais cet été.
 I know Paris well. I am going *there* this summer.

This adverbial pronoun also replaces a prepositional phrase consisting of *à* plus a pronoun object referring to a thing (such a construction with a pronoun object referring to a person would be the normal indirect pronoun object described in § 25(d) above).

Je n'y fais pas attention. I pay no attention *to it*.
Marie m'a écrit une gentille lettre. J'y réponds en ce moment.
 Mary wrote me a nice letter. I am answering *it* (literally *to it*) right now.

If the place has not been mentioned or if the speaker desires more emphasis than would be possible with the atonic form *y*, one uses *là*.

Je l'ai vu là. I saw him *there* (place not previously mentioned).

Là je l'ai vu. *There* I saw him (place may have been previously mentioned but *there* is emphasized).

(f) The partitive pronoun *en* translates as *some* or *any* when these forms stand alone. (For partitive article, see § 6).

J'en ai. I have *some*.
En avez-vous? Have you any?

It is also equivalent to a prepositional phrase consisting of *de* followed by a pronoun referring to a thing.

J'en parle. I am speaking *of it*.
J'en parle. I am speaking *of them* (things).

BUT: **Je parle d'eux.** I am speaking *of them* (persons, masculine).

It translates *de* in the sense of *from* followed by a pronoun stand-

ing for a place (more commonly in English, we use *there* in that sense).*

Il en vient. He is coming *from there*.

The pronoun *en* must be used automatically before the verb whenever an adverb of quantity [see § 22] or a number stand alone in the predicate.

J'en ai beaucoup. I have many.
J'en ai six. I have six.

(g) With the affirmative imperative, pronoun objects do not follow the rule given in § 25(a). Instead they come after the verb form, to which they are attached by hyphens, and they occur in the following order:

AFFIRMATIVE IMPERATIVE—DIRECT OBJECT—INDIRECT OBJECT—Y—EN.

Y and *en* always occur last, whether they seem to be direct or indirect objects. As noted previously [§ 25(a), footnote], a verb will never have more than one direct and one indirect pronoun object, and this remark applies as well to the affirmative imperative.

The forms of the pronouns and their meanings remain the same as in the basic chart § 25(a), except that *me* becomes *moi* (disjunctive) and *te* becomes *toi* (disjunctive). On the other hand, when *me* and *te* are to occur before *y* or *en* they elide instead of changing to *moi* and *toi*.

Donnez-les-lui. Give *them* to *him*.
Donnez-le-moi. Give *it* to *me*.
Donnez-lui-en. Give to *him* *some*.
Donnez-m'en. Give to *me* *some*.
Assieds-toi. Sit down (seat *thyself*).

(h) In compound tenses the pronoun objects go before the auxiliary verb by virtue of the rule [see § 23(b)] that, in a compound tense, the auxiliary is the verb and all changes or additions normally made in terms of the verb are now made in terms of the auxiliary.

Je les leur ai donnés. I gave *them* to *them*.
Elle m'en a donné. She gave *me* *some*.

(i) If the verb is made negative, pronoun objects follow the *ne*.

Il ne les lui donne pas. He does not give *them* to *him*.
Il ne les lui a pas donnés. He did not give *them* to *him*.
Ne les lui avez-vous pas donnés. Didn't you give them to him?

* In this connection, we call attention to the common idiom *en venir à* (to come to a point). *J'en viens maintenant à mon explication*: Now I come to my explanation.

This remark also applies to the negative imperative which is not an exception like the affirmative imperative [see § 25(g)].

Ne m'en donnez pas. Don't give *me any*.

For the position of the pronoun object with a negative infinitive, see § 23(c).

§ 26 The Disjunctive Personal Pronoun

(a) The pronoun forms ending in mute "e" [such as those enumerated in § 25(a)] have a longer form which must be used in stressed positions in the sentence. In such stressed positions *me*, for example, becomes *moi*, *te* becomes *toi*, etc. These longer forms are called disjunctive pronouns.

(b) The disjunctive personal pronouns are as follows:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st Pers.	moi me	nous us
2nd Pers.	toi thee, thyself	vous you, yourself
3rd Pers.	lui him	eux them (masc.)
	elle her	elles them (fem.)
	soi oneself	

(c) The disjunctive personal pronouns have the following functions:

(1) A pronoun in a compound subject or a compound object will be in the disjunctive.

Jean et moi (nous) sommes ici.	John and <i>I</i> are here.
Toi et elle (vous) êtes ici.	<i>Thou</i> and <i>she</i> are here.
J'ai vu Jean et elle.	I saw John and <i>her</i> .

In the first two examples above, note that a conjunctive (simple) pronoun subject may be, and frequently is, inserted. Whether the conjunctive pronoun subject is present or not, the verb will have the same form as though it were there.

(2) Any pronoun governed by a preposition or introduced by the conjunction *que* in the sense of *than* will be disjunctive.

avec moi	with <i>me</i>
sans eux	without <i>them</i>
Il est plus grand que moi.	He is bigger than <i>I</i> .

In an expression of quantity, the preposition *entre* (among) must be used before a disjunctive pronoun introduced by *de*.

beaucoup d'entre eux	many of them
trois d'entre nous	three of us

(3) Any pronoun set apart by punctuation will be in the disjunctive form.

Qui est là? *Moi*. Who is there? *I*.
***Lui*, malgré son âge, ne s'est jamais marié.**
He, in spite of his age, never married.

(4) If the pronoun subject is modified by an adjective, a prepositional phrase or a relative clause, the disjunctive pronoun must be used. The normal tendency in such a case is to repeat the subject with a conjunctive pronoun before the verb.

***Moi* seul, j'ai raison.** *I* alone am right.
***Elle* seule a raison.** *She* alone is right.
***Moi* qui le connais*, je crois ce qu'il dit.**
I who know him believe what he says.

(5) When a pronoun is repeated for emphasis, both a disjunctive and a conjunctive form are used. Repetition for emphasis is a common device in French and is particularly necessary in the case of atonic (unstressed) forms which cannot be pronounced with emphasis. Atonic forms like *je*, *tu*, *il*, *ils*, *me*, *te*, *se* can be emphasized only by a system of repetition.

***Moi*, je suis son ami.** *I* am his friend.
Je l'ai vue *elle*. *I* saw *her*.

(6) Any pronoun after the verb *être* will be disjunctive.

C'est *moi*. *It* is *I*.

(7) After the affirmative imperative, disjunctive is required for object pronouns in the first and second person singular. For a full discussion of this point see § 25(g).

(8) If the direct object of the verb, including the affirmative imperative, is first person, second person or reflexive (that is to say *me* [*moi*], *te* [*toi*], *se*, *nous*, *vous*), and there is also an indirect object pronoun, this indirect object pronoun will be expressed by *à* with the disjunctive.

Il s'explique *à elle*. He explains himself *to her*.
Ne me vendez pas *à eux*. Do not sell me *to them*.

(9) If the pronouns *we*, *us*, or *you* have nouns in apposition to them, it is necessary to insert the adjective *autres*.

Nous *autres* Américains, nous croyons cela. *We* Americans believe this.
Je vous le dis, *à vous autres* Français. *I* say it to you Frenchmen.

* Note the form of the verb. In any relative clause, in English as well as in French, it is necessary to know the antecedent of the relative pronoun in order to select the proper form of the verb. In English one does not say *I who is his friend* but rather *I who am his friend*. Precisely the same thing is true of French.

Sometimes the *autres* is omitted, in which case the English translation requires *as* to complete the meaning.

Je vous le dis, à vous Français. I say it to you as Frenchmen.

This last expression also exists in a singular:

Moi, professeur, je l'accepte. As a professor, I accept it.

(10) To clarify the meaning of a possessive adjective when it is ambiguous as to the gender of the possessor or to emphasize possession with a possessive adjective, the disjunctive pronoun may be used with the preposition *à*.

son livre à lui	<i>his</i> book
son livre à elle	<i>her</i> book
leur livre à eux	<i>their (masculine)</i> book
leur livre à elles	<i>their (feminine)</i> book
mon livre à moi	<i>my (emphasized)</i> book

§ 27 The Reflexive Pronoun

(a) The reflexive pronoun reflects or refers back to the subject of the sentence.

She does it *herself*.

She does it to *herself*.

She, herself, does it.

(b) As an object pronoun, the reflexive has already been mentioned. See § 25(b) for the forms and positions of this type of pronoun.

When a reflexive pronoun object is placed before a verb, the verb then becomes a reflexive verb, which means in a compound tense [55(a)2] that it is conjugated with *être*.

Je me le suis fait. I did it to *myself*.

(c) The reflexive pronoun of the French may also have a *reciprocal* force, in which case it translates in English as *each other*, to *each other*.

Nous nous regardons. We look at *ourselves*. We look at *each other*.

Ils se regardent. They look at *themselves*. They look at *each other*.

Generally the context is sufficiently clear to indicate whether the pronoun is a simple reflexive or a reciprocal reflexive. If the context is not clear, it is necessary to add *l'un l'autre*, etc., as follows:

Nous nous aimons l'un l'autre.

We love *each other*.

(Two masculine or one masculine and one feminine)

Nous nous aimons l'une l'autre.

We love *each other*.
(Two feminine).

Nous nous aimons les uns les autres.

We love *each other*.
(More than two masculine or
more than two mixed genders).

Vous vous parlez l'un à l'autre.

You speak *to each other*.

Vous vous parlez l'une à l'autre.

You speak *to each other*.

Vous vous parlez les uns aux autres.

You speak *to each other*.

Vous vous parlez les unes aux autres.

You speak *to each other*.

In the above examples, the phrase *l'un l'autre* stands in apposition to (that is to say, it repeats) the object pronouns. In English *each other* is a direct or indirect object with no apposition.

They love *each other*.

But *each other* may also be the object of some preposition other than *to* in English, in which case the French preposition goes between the parts of the phrase *l'un l'autre*.* Study carefully the following examples:

Je les ai mis l'un sur l'autre.

I put them *on top of each other* (the one on the other).

Je les ai mis les uns sur les autres.

I put them *on top of each other* (more than two).

Il les trouve les uns sous les autres.

He finds them *under each other*.

(d) If the reflexive pronoun is in apposition to the subject or the object, or if the reflexive pronoun object is repeated for emphasis (such repetition being characteristic of French), the disjunctive pronoun is used with the adverb *même* attached to it by a hyphen. Note carefully the position of this type of reflexive pronoun in the following examples:

Je le fais moi-même.

I do it *myself*.

J'ai vu Robert lui-même.

I saw Robert *himself*.

J'ai parlé à Anne elle-même.

I spoke to Anna *herself*.

On le fait soi-même.

One does it *oneself*.

Il se parle à lui-même.

He speaks *to himself*.

Elles se regardent elles-mêmes.

They look at *themselves*
(emphasized or to distinguish from
reciprocal when context requires).

* Never translate *the one* as *l'un, l'une* except in the phrase *l'un l'autre*. Sometimes, when a contrast is made, *les uns... les autres* is split into two parts and then has the meaning *some... others. Some do this; (the) others do that*. Les uns font ceci; les autres font cela. In all other cases, use the demonstrative pronoun [see § 28(b)].

§ 28 The Demonstrative Pronoun

(a) When the pronouns *this* or *that* have no precise antecedent giving number and gender, they translate as *ceci* and *cela*.

Cela n'est pas difficile. *That* is not difficult.
Ceci n'est pas difficile. *This* is not difficult.

French usage differs from English in the choice of *ceci* and *cela* to refer to a previously mentioned idea. In such a case, English can say either *this* or *that*, whereas French can say only *cela* (that).

Je ferai de mon mieux. *Cela* était toujours son dernier mot.
 I will do my best. *This* was always his last word.

(b) If the English reads *this one*, *that one*, *these* or *those*, the equivalent French forms indicate the gender of the antecedent. The forms of this pronoun are as follows:

Singular		Plural	
celui-ci	this one (masculine)	ceux-ci	these (masculine)
celle-ci	this one (feminine)	celles-ci	these (feminine)
celui-là	that one (masculine)	ceux-là	those (masculine)
celle-là	that one (feminine)	celles-là	those (feminine)

Examples:

Il y a trois livres sur la table. *Celui-ci* est le mien.
 There are three books on the table. *This one* is mine.

Voici trois cravates. *Celle-ci* est rouge.
 Here are three neckties. *This one* is red.

(c) The adverbial suffixes *-ci* and *-là* must be omitted after the demonstrative pronoun when a relative clause or a prepositional phrase follow.

***Ceux de mes amis qui viennent* . . .** *Those* of my friends who come . . .
***Ceux qui viennent* . . .** *Those* who come . . .

In English the singular of *those who* (*which*) come is *the one who* (*which*) comes. In French *the one* is likewise a demonstrative pronoun [see § 27 (c), footnote].

***Celui qui vient* . . .** *The one* who (which) comes . . .

If *the one* is a person, English may also say *he who*, *she who*, but in French this is still a demonstrative pronoun. *He who* and *she who* have a plural *they who*, which is likewise a demonstrative pronoun.

Celui qui gagne reçoit un prix. *The one who* } wins receives a prize.
He who }

Ceux qui le font auront une prime.	<i>The ones who</i>	} do it will get a bonus.
	<i>They who</i>	
	<i>Those who</i>	

From the above illustrations the following rule may be deduced: As subject of the sentence, never use a third person disjunctive pronoun followed by a relative clause, but always use a demonstrative pronoun instead.

However, the reverse is true if the same kind of grammatical construction follows a pronoun subject plus the verb *to be*.^{*} In such a case, the disjunctive pronoun rather than the demonstrative pronoun must be used before the relative clause, and the sentence must be reorganized according to the following pattern:

Never say: *I am the one who will do it.*

But say: *It is I who will do it.*

C'est moi qui le ferai.

(d) If, in English, a noun in the possessive modifies an unexpressed noun, the French will supply a demonstrative pronoun for the unexpressed noun.

Il y a trois cravates dans cette boîte. Celle de Jean est verte.

There are three neckties in this box. *John's* is green.

(e) The demonstrative pronoun is used to translate *the latter* and *the former*. *The latter*, being the nearer of the two, is *celui-ci*, *celle-ci*, *ceux-ci*, *celles-ci*. *The former*, being more remote, is *celui-là*, *ceux-là*, *ceux-là*, *celles-là*.

J'ai vu Jean et Marie. Celle-ci est mon amie.

I saw John and Mary. *The latter* is my friend.

J'ai vu Jean et Marie. Celui-là est mon ami.

I saw John and Mary. *The former* is my friend.

The latter † may also be translated as *ce dernier*, in the masculine only.

J'ai vu Marie et Jean. Ce dernier est mon ami.

I saw Mary and John. *The latter* is my friend.

(f) The demonstrative pronoun *ce* is used only as the subject of

* The same kind of grammatical pattern can occur after a noun subject as well. In that case, neither the demonstrative nor the disjunctive pronoun will be used but instead the noun subject will move into the predicate of the verb *to be*. Do not say: *John is the one who will do it*. Say instead: *It is John who will do it*: *C'est Jean qui le fera*.

† *The latter*, as an adjective, is *dernier* with any type of agreement. In that sense, a demonstrative adjective always precedes. *Ce dernier individu*: The latter individual.

the verb *être* or the verb *devoir* compounded with *être*. It has the following functions:

(1) If the word *it*, as subject of the verb *to be*, refers to a previous idea but to no precise antecedent having number and gender, use *ce*.

Il aime peindre. C'est un métier intéressant.
He likes to paint. *It* is an interesting trade.

(2) If a modified noun (even modified by a simple article), a pronoun, a superlative, or a proper noun follows the verb *to be*, the pronoun *ce* is used in the sense of *it, he, she, they*. If the form in the predicate of the verb is third person plural, the subject will still be *ce* but the verb will be third plural.

C'est une longue leçon.	<i>It</i> is a long lesson.
C'est une amie de Marie.	<i>She</i> is a friend of Mary.
C'est moi.	<i>It</i> is I.
C'est Jean Lambert.	<i>He</i> is Jean Lambert.
Ce sont Jean et Marie qui viennent.	<i>It</i> is John and Mary who are coming.

(3) If a clause is the subject of the verb *être*, the pronoun *ce* serves as the functional subject of *être*.

Tout ce que je sais, c'est qu'il a raison. All I know is that he is right.

There is also a natural tendency in French to repeat with a pronoun subject *ce* if a phrase or a clause intervenes between the subject and the verb *être*.

L'ami sur lequel j'ai toujours pu compter, c'est Jean.
The friend on whom I have always been able to count is John.

(4) In situations where the pronoun *ce* would be expected according to the rules set forth in paragraphs 1, 2, and 3 above but where the verb is something other than *être*, the pronoun *cela* will replace the pronoun *ce*.

Il aime peindre. Cela l'intéresse beaucoup.
He likes to paint. *It* interests him very much.

§ 29 The Impersonal Pronoun *il* (*it*)

(a) Certain verbs in both English and French are defective in that they can take only the impersonal pronoun *it* (in French *il*) as subject. This pronoun is called impersonal because it refers to no antecedent whatever and merely serves as the functional subject of the verb.

Il neige.	<i>It</i> is snowing.
Il pleut.	<i>It</i> is raining.

(b) When *il* is followed by the verb *to be*, then by an adjective, then by a preposition, and finally by an infinitive having an object, *il* will be the functional subject *il* (since it is also a functional subject in English).

Il est facile de faire la leçon. It is easy to do the lesson.

(c) In literary style, to add variety to the expression, *il* impersonal may serve as the functional subject of the verb with the real subject following.* In the corresponding English *il* is replaced by the adverb *there*. With *il* as the subject, the French verb can be nothing but third singular. Note that English uses a third plural verb if the real subject is plural.

Il vient un homme. There comes a man.
Il vient des hommes. There come some men.

§ 30 The Relative Pronoun

(a) The relative pronoun in English has the forms *who* (subject) or *whom* (object) for persons, and *which* (subject or object) or *that* for things. In French the forms are *qui* subject, *que* object for persons or things.

<i>L'homme qui est ici ...</i>	The man <i>who</i> is here ...
<i>Le livre qui est sur la table ...</i>	The book <i>which</i> is on the table ...
<i>L'homme que j'ai vu ...</i>	The man <i>whom</i> I saw ...
<i>Le livre que j'ai trouvé ...</i>	The book <i>that</i> I found ...
<i>Le livre qu'on a trouvé ...</i>	The book <i>that</i> was found ...

Note in the last example above that *que* elides before a vowel.

(b) If the relative pronoun is the object of a preposition, the forms are *qui* for persons, *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles* for things. The longer relative indicates in its form the gender of the antecedent. It may also be used for persons after a preposition, but *qui* is more common.

L'homme avec { *qui*
lequel *je travaille ... The man with whom I work ...*

Le crayon avec lequel j'écris ...
 The pencil with *which* I am writing ...

* Another construction frequently found in literary style is the signpost *que*. For emphasis or for variety, the real subject may be replaced by *ce* before the verb *être*. In that case, the real subject, pointed out by the signpost *que*, will follow the normal predicate. *C'est un grand écrivain que Molière*: Molière is a great writer (Literally: He is a great writer *namely* Molière). This same signpost *que* occurs at the end of the phrase *qu'est-ce que c'est que* [see § 17(b)]. *Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un pronom?* (Literally: What is it that it is *namely* a pronoun? Meaning: What is a pronoun?).

La cravate sur laquelle il y a une tache . . .

The tie on *which* there is a spot . . .

(c) If the relative pronoun *which* refers not to a precise antecedent but to a whole phrase or clause, use *ce qui* (subject) or *ce que* (object).

Je chante tous les matins sous la douche, ce qui ennuie ma femme.

I sing every morning in the shower, *which* annoys my wife.

Je chante tous les matins sous la douche, ce que ma femme n'aime pas.

I sing every morning in the shower, *which* my wife does not like.

(d) By using the relative pronouns, *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles* which indicate gender and number, the French language can sometimes construct with greater grammatical clarity a more complicated sentence than English.

Ce territoire est une province, gouverné par un préfet, laquelle a comme capitale une ville importante.

This region is a province, governed by a prefect, *which* (the province) has as its capital an important city.

(e) When *lequel*, *lesquels* or *lesquelles* follow the prepositions *de* or *à*, the normal rules of contraction apply [see § 2].

de + lequel = duquel	à + lequel = auquel
de + lesquels = desquels	à + lesquels = auxquels
de + lesquelles = desquelles	à + lesquelles = auxquelles

(f) The possessive relative pronoun *whose*, or *of whom* or *of which* translates as *dont*, but only if the relative clause can be organized in such a manner that *dont* is the first word.

In order to organize properly the French sentence replace *whose* with *of whom* or *of which* and rearrange the sentence so that *whom* or *of which* comes first in the relative clause.

C'est l'homme dont je parlais.

He is the man *of whom* I was speaking.

(No change in word order necessary).

Voici la femme dont le mari est parti.

Here is the woman *whose* husband left.

(Changed to: *of whom* the husband left.

Note additional article "the").

Voici la femme dont j'ai vu le mari.

Here is the woman *whose* husband I saw.

(Changed to: *of whom* I saw the husband.

Note that English is inverted whereas French is not).

Il y avait une vieille maison dont la porte était ouverte.

There was an old house the door *of which* was open.

(Rearranged to: *of which* the door was open).

Il y avait deux maisons, dont une était la mienne.

There were two houses, one *of which* was mine.

(Changed to: *of which* one was mine).

In other words, there are two guiding principles in this rearrangement: 1) *Dont* will always come at the end of the clause except when the possessive relative modifies a noun introduced by a preposition (discussed immediately hereafter). 2) After *dont* there will always be normal declarative order, that is to say: subject, verb, object.

If *whose* or *of which* modify a noun governed by a preposition, *dont* must be replaced by *de qui* or *duquel*, etc. The French sentence must then be reorganized so that the possessive relative follows the noun introduced by the preposition.

Voici l'homme avec le fils de qui (duquel) j'ai voyagé.

Here is the man with *whose* son I traveled.

(Rearranged as: with the son *of whom*).

C'est un problème avec les détails duquel vous aurez beaucoup de difficultés.

It is a problem with the details *of which* you will have many difficulties.

(No rearrangement necessary).

(g) The adverb *où* (where) is substituted for the phrase *dans lequel* when the relative refers to a thing.

C'est la ville où je suis né.

It is the city *in which* (*où* substituted for *dans laquelle*) I was born.

(h) After the relative pronoun *que*, particularly in literary style, inversion is frequent, especially if the subject is longer than the verb or even more so if the subject is modified by some additional phrase or clause.

La difficulté qu'ont les hommes à comprendre . . .

The difficulty men have in understanding . . .

Les complications qu'avaient prévues tous les hommes clairvoyants . .

The complications which all clear-sighted men had foreseen . . .

Note in the second illustration above that the noun subject follows the verb, even a compound verb. In other words, this inversion after the relative does not follow the normal rules of inversion in interrogative sentences [see § 60].

§ 31 The Interrogative Pronoun

(a) Interrogative pronouns are used in questions. Since they frequently resemble relative pronouns, it is easy to confuse the two types. Review especially § 30(a) and then study carefully the following chart:

	PERSONS		THINGS	
SUBJECT	qui*	who	qu'est-ce qui	what
OBJECT	qui	whom	que	what
OBJECT OF PREPOSITION	qui	whom	quoi	what

Examples:

Avec qui travaillez-vous?	With <i>whom</i> do you work.
Qui est là?	<i>Who</i> is there?
Qu'est-ce qui est sur la table?	<i>What</i> is on the table?
Avec quoi travaillez-vous?	<i>What</i> are you working with?

(b) In an indirect question (a question within a declarative sentence) the interrogative pronoun for persons is still *qui* in all cases but for things it is *ce qui* (subject), *ce que* (object), *ce [preposition] quoi* (object of a preposition).

Je ne sais pas qui l'a fait.	I do not know <i>who</i> did it.
J'ignore qui il a consulté.	I do not know <i>whom</i> he consulted.
Je ne sais pas ce qui est sur la table.	I do not know <i>what</i> is on the table.
Je ne sais pas ce qu'il a fait.	I do not know <i>what</i> he did.

J'ignore ce à quoi il fait allusion.
I do not know *what* he is alluding to.

J'ignore à quoi il fait allusion.
(*A quoi* may be used without *ce*)
I do not know *what* he is alluding to.

J'ignore ce dont vous parlez.
I do not know *what* you are talking about.
(Literally: *that of which* you are speaking).

J'ignore de quoi vous parlez.
(*De quoi* may replace *ce dont*).
I don't know what you are talking about.

(c) *Which* as a pronoun, *which one* or *which ones* translate as *lequel* (masculine singular), *laquelle* (feminine singular), *lesquels* (masculine plural), *lesquelles* (feminine plural). This type of in-

* For emphasis there is an alternate form *qui est-ce qui*. Who is there? *Qui est-ce qui est ici?*

terrogative pronoun indicates the gender of the noun to which the pronoun refers.

Il y a trois cravates sur la table. Laquelle est la vôtre?
There are three neckties on the table. *Which one* is yours?

Lequel de ces livres voulez-vous?
Which one of these books do you want?

§ 32 The Possessive Pronoun

(a) The possessive pronoun has the following forms:

PERSON	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	MASCULINE	FEMININE
1ST	le mien mine	la mienne	les miens	les miennes
2ND	le tien thine	la tienne	les tiens	les tiennes
3RD	le sien his, hers, its	la sienne	les siens	les siennes
1ST	le nôtre ours	la nôtre	les nôtres	les nôtres
2ND	le vôtre yours	la vôtre	les vôtres	les vôtres
3RD	le leur theirs	la leur	les leurs	les leurs

The gender of the possessive pronoun is determined by the gender of the antecedent. Its number, of course, is determined by the sentence in which it is used. In the third person singular the same confusion is likely to arise as in the case of the possessive adjective (see § 16) since the English by the use of *his, hers, its* distinguishes the gender of the possessor whereas the French indicates only the gender of the thing possessed. Thus *le sien* means, according to the context, either *his, hers* or *its*.

The article which precedes the possessive pronoun is part of the pronoun. Nevertheless the usual rules of contraction with *à* and *de* apply [see § 2].

Study the following examples:

Voici trois cravates. Celle-ci est la mienne.
Here are three neckties. This one is *mine*.

Voici trois cravates. Celle-ci est la tienne (thine).

Voici trois cravates. Celle-ci est la sienne (his, hers).

Voici trois cravates. Celle-ci est la nôtre (ours).

Voici trois cravates. Celle-ci est la vôtre (yours).

Voici trois cravates. Celle-ci est la leur (theirs).

Les pères des deux jeunes filles attendent au salon. La première jeune fille parle au sien.

The fathers of the two girls are waiting in the living room. The first girl is speaking *to hers*.

(b) After the verb *être*, if a distinction is being made between or among the various objects, the possessive adjective will be used. On the other hand, for simple possession after the verb *to be* (no distinction among objects), *à* is used with the possessor expressed as a disjunctive pronoun rather than as a possessive pronoun.

Voici trois livres. Celui-ci est *le mien*.

Here are three books. This one is *mine*.

Il n'y a qu'un seul livre et il est *à moi*.

There is only one book and it is *mine*.

§ 33 The Pronoun *tout* (*all*)

(a) The adjective *all* [see § 12(e)] may also function as a pronoun, in which case it takes the gender of the word to which it refers.

Tous sont ici. *All are here.*

More commonly the English says: *They are all here*. The French can also say the same thing.

**Ils sont *tous* ici. } *They are all here.*
Elles sont *toutes* ici. }**

In a compound tense, the pronoun object *all* tends to take the position of an adverb, which is to say that it goes between the auxiliary verb and the past participle.

Je les ai *tous* vus.

I saw them *all*.

Pour *tout* dire en un mot . . .

To put *everything* into a nutshell.

Frequently the English uses more complicated constructions which should be transposed as follows:

***All of them* are here = They are *all* here.**

I saw *all of them* = I saw them *all*.

(b) When a relative pronoun follows the pronoun *all*, it will be the compound relative [see § 30(c)].

Tout *ce que* je sais, c'est qu'il n'est pas malade.

All I know is that he is not sick.

Tout *ce qui* est sur la table est à moi.

All that is on the table is mine.

§ 34 The Pronoun *on* (*one*)

(a) "One" as an indefinite pronoun translates as *on* which is never anything but third singular grammatically in spite of its many connotations. In English we frequently give the pronoun *you*, and even the pronoun *we*, an indefinite sense, in which case it should be

replaced by the pronoun *one* before translation. In the same sense in English, we frequently say *people*.*

A Paris <i>on</i> parle français.	}	In Paris <i>one</i> speaks French. In Paris <i>people</i> speak French. In Paris <i>you</i> speak French. In Paris <i>we</i> speak French.
-----------------------------------	---	---

(b) *On* is commonly used to avoid a passive. See § 59(c).

The Preposition (La Préposition)

NOTE: Only a few important generalizations about the preposition will be mentioned here since prepositional usage is largely idiomatic. The student should form the habit of observing and learning separately every prepositional usage which differs from English. He should note that one gets *on* a train in English but *in* (dans) a train in French; that, in French, one walks *in* a street but *on* a boulevard; that, in French, one returns not five dollars *out of* ten but five dollars *on* ten (*trois dollars sur dix*); etc.

§ 35 The Preposition *à* (*to, in, at, with*)

(a) This preposition is used to introduce an indirect noun object.

Jean parle <i>à</i> Paul.	John is speaking <i>to</i> Paul.
---------------------------	----------------------------------

Frequently the^o preposition *to* is omitted in English. In French the preposition *à* cannot be omitted before an indirect noun object.

Il donne le livre <i>à</i> Robert.	}	He gives Robert the book. He gives the book <i>to</i> Robert.
------------------------------------	---	--

(b) The preposition *à* serves in the sense of *in, to* or *at* with the name of a city.

Je vais <i>à</i> Paris.	I am going <i>to</i> Paris.
Il n'a jamais été <i>à</i> Paris.	He has never been <i>in</i> Paris.

(c) With masculine countries [for feminine countries see § 39(b)],

* In a sense of nationality or social class, *the people* is *le peuple* which takes a singular verb. *Le peuple français est de cet avis*: the French people are of this opinion. On the other hand, *the people* in a collective sense with no reference to nationality or social class is *les gens* which takes a plural verb. *Les gens vraiment compétents sont rares*: Truly competent people are rare (obviously *on* will not fit here since *one* cannot be inserted with meaning in the English sentence). Sometimes *les personnes* will have the meaning *people* when the speaker is thinking in terms of a series of individuals and not a group. *Les personnes qui paient leurs impôts à temps n'auront pas d'amende*: People (acting as individuals, not collectively) who pay their taxes on time will have no fine.

the preposition *à* has the meaning of *in* or *to*. In this case the masculine country retains its usual definite article [see § 3(c)].

Il va au Canada. He is going to Canada.

(d) The preposition *à* is used in some idioms in the sense of *in* where *dans* might be expected [see § 37].

au jardin in the garden
au salon in the living room

(e) As noted previously [see § 32(b)], *à* is used after the verb *to be* to indicate simple possession.

(f) A prepositional phrase with *à* frequently indicates the purpose for which a thing serves.

une tasse à café { a coffee cup
a cup for coffee
une machine à écrire a writing machine (typewriter)

(g) A prepositional phrase with *à* frequently translates a descriptive phrase beginning with *with* in English.

la dame au chapeau the lady *with* a hat
un chapeau à plumes a feathered hat (with feathers)
un chasseur à réaction a jet fighter (with a jet)

(h) The preposition *à* may never be used with a person after a verb of motion. Another verb which is not a verb of motion must be found to replace the verb of motion.

I *shall go to* John for his opinion.

Say: **Je demanderai son avis à Jean.** (I shall ask John for his opinion).

(i) For *à* with an infinitive, see § 47(c)3.

§ 36 The Preposition *chez* (*to, at the home of*)

This preposition means *to* or *at a place belonging to someone*, the nature of the place not being specified (although it is frequently implied by the rest of the context).

Il est chez Jean. He is *at John's* [place] (John's room,
John's house, John's barber shop, etc.).
Il va chez Jean. He is going *to John's*.
Il va chez le docteur. He is going *to the doctor*.

NOTE: In the light of the principle noted in § 35(h), the last example really has the meaning: *He is going to the doctor's [place]*. A common error is to wish to introduce another preposition before *chez* in the second and third illustrations above because the English

reads *going to*. It is contrary to the nature of both English and French to have two prepositions in a row.

§ 37 The Preposition *dans* (*in*)

(a) *Dans* is the common preposition indicating physical location. It translates as either *in* or *into*.

Jean est *dans* la maison. John is *in* the house.

Il plonge son épée *dans* le corps de la bête.
He plunges his sword *into* the body of the beast.

(b) If the name of a country is modified by an adjective, a prepositional phrase or a relative clause, the preposition *dans*, instead of *en* (see § 39) or *à* [see § 35(c)], will be used in the sense of *in*, *into*, or *to*.

<i>dans la Nouvelle Angleterre</i>	<i>in</i> New England
<i>dans la vieille France</i>	<i>in</i> old France
<i>dans la France du moyen âge</i>	<i>in</i> France of the Middle Ages

In the above examples, observe that the article normally used with the name of the country [see § 3(c)] is present.

§ 38 The Preposition *de* (*of*)

(a) The preposition *de* is used to indicate simple possession.

le livre *de* Jean John's book

See also the remark on possession after the verb *to be* [see § 32(b)].

(b) If, in the equivalent English, a noun modifies another noun, the tendency in French is to place the modifying noun in a prepositional phrase with *de*.

une leçon <i>de</i> géographie	a <i>geography</i> lesson
une devanture <i>de</i> magasin	a <i>store</i> window

(c) If, in a comparison, a number follows the word *than*, *de* replaces *que*.

J'en ai plus *de* trois. I have more *than* three.

(d) When an adjective or a past participle modify *quelque chose* (something), *rien* (nothing), or a number, the adjective or past participle will be placed in a prepositional phrase with *de*.

rien <i>de</i> bon	nothing <i>good</i>
quelque chose <i>de</i> bon	something <i>good</i>
rien <i>de</i> cassé	nothing <i>broken</i>
J'en ai trois <i>de</i> rouge et un <i>de</i> noir.	I have three <i>red</i> and one <i>black</i> .
Il y en a eu trois <i>de</i> tué.	There were <i>three</i> <i>killed</i> .

(e) In French, *de* also has its original Latin meaning of *from*.

Il vient *de* Paris. He comes *from* Paris.

When *de* is used with a feminine country in the sense of *from* the article is omitted, as already noted in § 4(b)4.

(f) In a sense of literary or artistic authorship, *de* has the meaning of *by*.

un roman <i>de</i> Balzac	a novel <i>by</i> Balzac
<i>De</i> qui est ce roman?	<i>By</i> whom is this novel?
une peinture <i>de</i> Greuze	a painting <i>by</i> Greuze
<i>De</i> qui est cette peinture?	<i>By</i> whom is this painting?
	(<i>Whose</i> painting is this?)

In the last example, *A qui est cette peinture?* would mean *Who owns this painting?* [See §32(b)].

(g) The material of which a thing is made is generally expressed with the preposition *de*.

une maison <i>de</i> bois	a wooden house
une montre <i>d'</i>or	a gold watch

§ 39 The Preposition *en* (*in, into*)

(a) This preposition translates *in* or *into* when these words are used in an intangible sense rather than in the sense of location [see § 37].

Il s'exprime <i>en</i> français.	He expresses himself <i>in</i> French.
Il le traduit <i>en</i> français.	He translates it <i>into</i> French.

(b) With unmodified [see § 37(b)] feminine [see § 8(a)] countries, *to, in* or *into* will translate as *en*.

Je vais <i>en</i> France cet été.	I am going <i>to</i> France this summer.
Je l'ai vu <i>en</i> France.	I saw him <i>in</i> France.
Est-elle allée <i>en</i> Belgique?	Did she go <i>into</i> Belgium?

(c) It is contrary to the nature of the preposition *en* to have an article following it, and yet there are a few expressions in which an article does follow that preposition. [See § 4(a)].

(d) For *en* with the present participle, see § 48(b).

§ 40 Repetition of Prepositions

When, in English, one preposition governs two words connected by the conjunction *and*, it will be necessary in French to repeat the preposition.

Je parle <i>à</i> Jean <i>et à</i> Marie.
I am speaking <i>to</i> John and Mary.
Il a parlé <i>sur</i> la France <i>et sur</i> la Belgique.
He spoke <i>on</i> France and Belgium.

§ 41 Compound Prepositions

From the French point of view there are no compound prepositions but rather adverbs with prepositions or prepositional phrases. Since these expressions correspond to simple prepositions in English, we shall refer to them as compound prepositions.

The following compound prepositions* should be noted:

Il marche <i>autour de</i> la maison.	He walks <i>around</i> the house.
L'avion passe <i>au-dessus de</i> la maison.	The airplane passes <i>above</i> the house.
Je ne connais pas les locataires <i>au-dessous de</i> nous.	I do not know the tenants <i>beneath</i> us.
Le tunnel passe à <i>travers</i> la montagne.	The tunnel passes <i>through</i> the mountain.
L'église est <i>en face de</i> la mairie.	The church is <i>opposite</i> the town hall.
Il ne le fait pas à <i>cause du</i> règlement.	He does not do it <i>because of</i> the regulation.
C'est <i>près d'</i>ici.	It is <i>near</i> here.
J'ai vu Marie <i>au lieu de</i> Jean.	I saw Mary <i>instead of</i> John.

In some cases, the English has a compound preposition, whereas the French has a simple preposition.

Il le fait <i>malgré</i> la difficulté.	He does it <i>in spite of</i> the difficulty.
Il arrive <i>devant</i> la maison.	He arrives <i>in front of</i> the house.

In cases where it is necessary to repeat compound prepositions [see § 40], the final element only of the preposition will be repeated if the last element is a simple preposition; otherwise the entire compound preposition must be repeated.

Il marche <i>autour de</i> la maison <i>et de</i> l'église.	He walks <i>around</i> the house and church.
--	--

§ 42 Position of the Preposition

It is contrary to the nature of the French language to end a sentence or a clause in a preposition. The English sentence must be rearranged so that the preposition no longer comes at the end.

This is the man I was speaking of = This is the man
of whom I was speaking.

Voici l'homme dont je parlais.

* Most of these forms exist also as simple adverbs or as adverbial phrases. *Il marche tout autour*: He walks all around. *Elle habite en face*: She lives opposite. *C'est tout près*: It is near. *Ils habitent en dessous*: They live below. *Ils habitent au-dessus*: They live above. In this connection, note that *above* and *below* can never be followed by a pronoun referring to a thing; instead the adverb must be used. *Je n'ai rien mis au-dessous*: I put nothing beneath (it).

It is not normal in French to place a coördinating conjunction between prepositions as is sometimes done in rather stilted English.

Do not say: It was done *by* and *for* John.

Say: It was done *by* John and *for* John.

Cela a été fait par Jean et pour Jean.

The Conjunction (La Conjonction)

§ 43 Coördinating Conjunctions

These are *and* (*et*), *or* (*ou*), *but* (*mais*). They present no problem in translation. When repeated, the first will have the meaning *both . . . and*; the second, *either . . . or*.

Et Jean et Marie viennent. *Both John and Mary are coming.*
Ou Jean ou Marie viendra. *Either John or Mary will come.*

Particular care should be taken with the French conjunctions *car* (*for*) and *or* (*now*). The first is frequently confused with the preposition *pour* (*for*) and the second with the adverb *maintenant* (*now*).

Il le fera certainement, car il réussit toujours.
 He will certainly do it, *for* he always succeeds.

Or, il n'a jamais été question d'autre chose.
Now it was never a matter of anything else. (In this sentence *now* is a conjunction since it does not mean *at the present time*).

The coördinating conjunction *ni** has already been discussed under the heading of negatives [see § 23(i)]. In addition, we must note here that a preceding negation in French will tend to change *ou* to *ni* (*nor*) in situations where English says *or*.

Il n'a pas compris ni même vu la difficulté.
 He has not understood *or* even seen the difficulty.

§ 44 Subordinating Conjunctions

All other conjunctions are called subordinating conjunctions. We shall not seek to define this term further, but shall restrict the remarks to a few practical observations.

* When *either* or *neither* are not used as coördinating conjunctions but rather as simple adverbs, both of them will translate as *non plus*. *Jean ne l'aime pas non plus*: John does not like it either. *Ni moi non plus*: Nor I either. *Ni Jean non plus*: John *neither*.

(a) Many subordinating conjunctions are in two parts: *avant que* (before), *après que* (after), *depuis que* (since), *afin que* (so that), *parce que* (because), etc. A common error in translation is to fail to recognize the function of *before*, *after*, and *since* as conjunctions when they introduce a clause (a clause contains a verb of its own) and to translate them by the prepositions *avant*, *après*, and *depuis*.

Je suis ici *depuis* son arrivée.
I have been here *since* his arrival.

BUT: Je suis ici *depuis* qu'il est arrivé.
I have been here *since* he arrived.

(b) It is necessary to distinguish between *puisque* (*since* in the sense of *because*) and *depuis que* (*since* in a time sense); and between *tandis que* (*while* in the sense of *whereas*) and *pendant que* (*while* in time sense).

Il est ici *depuis* qu'elle est tombée malade.
He has been here *since* she fell ill.

Elle n'a pas pu venir *puisque* elle est tombée malade.
She was not able to come *since* she fell ill.

Il chantera *pendant* que j'écoute.
He will sing *while* I listen.

Marie viendra *tandis* que Jean ne viendra pas.
Mary will come *while* (*whereas*) John will not.

(c) *Quand* and *lorsque* both mean *when*, the latter conjunction being more or less restricted to literary style. In some cases in English we use the word *when* in somewhat the function of a relative pronoun, as in the following expressions: *the moment when . . .*; *the time when . . .*; *the period when . . .*; etc. French will say in such a case: *the moment in which. . .* But this will become in reality *the moment where . . .* (*le moment où . . .*) by virtue of the rule mentioned in § 30(g).

(d) The conjunction *que* in the sense of *that* can never be omitted.
Je crois *que* Jean vient.
I think John is coming; I think *that* John is coming.

(e) If the same conjunction is repeated in English at the beginning of two subordinate clauses connected by *and*, the French will not repeat the conjunction but will use *que* the second time.

***Quand* Jeanne est venue *et que* Marie l'a vue, il y a eu de la bagarre.**
When Jane came and *when* Mary saw her, there was a free for all.

If *si* is the conjunction to be replaced by *que*, the second clause will require a verb in the subjunctive [see § 57].

Si vous désobéissez *et que* je m'en aperçois, je vous punirai.
If you disobey and *if* I notice it, I will punish you.

The Verb (Le Verbe)

§ 45 The Nature of the French Verb

In English the form of the verb changes according to the subject. We say: *I am*, *he is*, *thou art*, *we are*, etc. In many cases, however, the English verb differs very little. For example, we say: *I read*; *thou readest*; *he reads*; *we read*; *you read*; *they read*. Since four of the six possible forms are identical, we are not especially conscious of the problem of *verb endings*. On the other hand, the French verb has an infinite variety of endings which differ according to the subject and according to the tense. Never use a French verb without being sure what ending it should have to meet the requirements of the context. The only way to learn verbs properly in French is to memorize them with their endings. It will take a lifetime to learn verb endings by intuition.

§ 46 Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

(a) Verbs which take a direct object are said to be *transitive*. Those which take no object or an object introduced by a preposition are said to be *intransitive*.

TRANSITIVE: *I see the boy.*

INTRANSITIVE: *The boy goes.*

INTRANSITIVE: *I look for the boy.*

In general transitive verbs in English correspond to transitive verbs in French, and similarly for intransitives.

(b) The following common verbs are intransitive in English but transitive in French:

<i>Il regarde le livre.</i>	<i>He looks at the book.</i>
<i>Il cherche le livre.</i>	<i>He looks for the book.</i>
<i>Nous attendons le train.</i>	<i>We wait for the train.</i>
<i>Il écoute la musique.</i>	<i>He listens to the music.</i>
<i>Il ôte son chapeau.</i>	<i>He takes off his hat.</i>

(c) The following verbs are transitive in English but intransitive in French:

<i>Il entre dans la maison.</i>	<i>He enters the house.</i>
<i>Il entre en Belgique.</i>	<i>He enters Belgium.</i>
<i>Je réponds à votre lettre.</i>	<i>I answer your letter.</i>
<i>Marie ressemble à son frère.</i>	<i>Mary resembles her brother.</i>
<i>Il obéit à son père.</i>	<i>He obeys his father.</i>
<i>Cette remarque plaît à Jean.</i>	<i>This remark pleases John.</i>
<i>Cela convient à Jean.</i>	<i>That suits John.</i>

Il se sert de cette enveloppe.	He uses this envelope.
Il se souvient de Jean.	He remembers John.
Il s'aperçoit de sa faute.	He notices his mistake.

§ 47 The Infinitive (l'infinitif)

(a) The infinitive is the basic form of the verb from which all other forms are derived in the case of all regular verbs. In English the infinitive is always accompanied by a preposition: *to go, to read, to look*, etc. In French there are three main types of infinitives by which we distinguish the three regular conjugations: those ending in *-er* (first conjugation), those ending in *-ir* (second conjugation), and those ending in *-re* (third conjugation).

donner to give **finir** to finish **vendre** to sell

In all tenses we shall observe the forms which are derived from these three basic infinitives.

(b) The infinitive without a preposition may be used in the function of a noun as the subject of a verb.

Parler n'a jamais été son fort.
Speaking (to speak) has never been his strong point.

(c) The infinitive may depend directly on another verb. In that case there are three possible constructions: no preposition, the preposition *à*, or the preposition *de* before the infinitive. The presence or absence of the preposition will depend not on the infinitive but on the verb which introduces the infinitive. Verbs may be classified in three categories according to whether they take no preposition, the preposition *à* or the preposition *de* to introduce a dependent infinitive. The following tables list the most common verbs in these three categories. Since it is not practical to memorize these lists, the student should form the habit of noting, every time such a grammatical construction occurs, whether the preposition is absent or present with a given introductory verb.

(1) The following verbs take no preposition to introduce a dependent infinitive:

aimer to like	 falloir to be necessary
aimer mieux to prefer	laisser to leave, allow, let
aller to go	oser to dare
compter to intend	pouvoir to be able
croire to believe	préférer to prefer
désirer to desire	savoir to know (how)
devoir to have to	sembler to seem

entendre to hear
 espérer to hope
 faire to do, make

venir to come
 voir to see
 vouloir to want, wish

EXAMPLES: J'aime mieux le faire.
 Elle vient me voir.

I prefer *to do it*.
 She is coming to see me.

(2) The following verbs take the preposition *de* to introduce a dependent infinitive:

avoir peur de to be afraid
 cesser de to cease
 craindre de to fear
 défendre de to forbid
 demander de to ask
 se dépêcher de to hurry
 dire de to tell, order
 écrire de to write (to do)
 essayer de to try

finir de to finish
 ordonner de to order
 oublier de to forget
 permettre de to permit
 prier de to beg, ask
 promettre de to promise
 refuser de to refuse
 regretter de to regret
 remercier de to thank

EXAMPLES: Elle essaie de travailler.

She tries to work.

Il oublie de faire son travail.

He forgets to do his work.

After the verbs of ordering (*défendre, demander, dire écrire, ordonner, permettre, prier, promettre*) the person affected by the order, etc., will be expressed as an indirect object.

Je lui dis de travailler.

I tell *him* to work.

Elle ordonne à Jean de travailler.

She orders *John* to work.

In this connection the special idiom *venir de* must be mentioned. *Venir de* with the verb in the present tense means *to have just done something*.

Elle vient de partir.

She has just left.

If the English uses a pluperfect tense in the same construction, the French will use an imperfect tense.

Elle venait de partir.

She had just left.

(3) The following verbs take the preposition *à* to introduce a dependent infinitive:

aider à to help
 s'amuser à to amuse oneself
 apprendre à to learn, teach
 arriver à to succeed
 avoir à to have (to)
 chercher à to see, try
 commencer à to begin
 consentir à to consent
 continuer à to continue

enseigner à to teach
 s'habituer à to accustom oneself
 hésiter à to hesitate
 inviter à to invite
 se mettre à to begin
 recommencer à to begin again
 réussir à to succeed
 songer à to think, dream
 tarder à to delay in

EXAMPLES: Elle cherche à le trouver. She tries *to* find him.
 Elle réussit à le voir. She succeeds *in* seeing him.

(d) The infinitive may also depend on an adjective or a noun, in which case it will be introduced by either *à* or *de*. If the infinitive has a direct object either following it or directly preceding it, the preposition *de* will generally introduce the infinitive.

Il est facile *de* préparer la leçon. It is easy *to* prepare the lesson.
 Il est facile *de* la préparer. It is easy *to* prepare it.
 J'ai envie *de* le faire. I want very much *to* do it.

An exception to the rule may be noted in this idiom, for example:

J'ai du mal à faire cela. I have trouble (*in*) doing that.

If the infinitive is obviously without an object of its own following it or directly preceding it as a pronoun, the infinitive will act upon the subject or the object of the main verb of the sentence, in which case it will be introduced by the preposition *à*.

J'ai beaucoup de leçons à faire. I have many lessons *to* do.
 Cette leçon est facile à faire. This lesson is easy *to* do.
 C'est facile à faire. It is easy *to* do.*

When a passive [see § 59] infinitive follows a noun in English it will generally translate as *à* plus an active infinitive.

C'est un livre à lire. It is a book *to be read*.

From this we may deduce the following rule: if an infinitive depending on a noun and having no object of its own can be *construed as a passive*, use *à* before it.

Il y a des devoirs à préparer pour demain.
 There are exercises *to prepare* (*to be prepared*) for tomorrow.

On the other hand, if the passive infinitive is followed by an *agent* [see § 59], the introductory preposition will still be *à* but the infinitive will remain passive.

C'est un livre à être lu par tout le monde.
 It is a book *to be read* by everyone.

(e) The infinitive, introduced by *to* in English, may stand alone in the sentence and not depend on a verb, noun or adjective. In that

* Compare this with *Il est facile de faire cela* mentioned a few lines above. In *It is easy to do that* the pronoun *it* is a functional subject [having no antecedent; see § 29] and is therefore *il*. Also the infinitive *faire* has an object following it; therefore it is introduced by *de*. In *C'est facile à faire*, the pronoun *it* (*ce*) must refer to something previously mentioned, although not a precise antecedent. On the other hand, the infinitive *faire* has no object of its own and really acts upon the subject of the main verb (*ce*); hence the infinitive is introduced by *à*.

case, the English can be paraphrased as *in order to*. If the English reads *in order to* or if *to* can be construed as *in order to*, the French will use the preposition *pour*.

Il vous faudra beaucoup de temps *pour* apprendre cette leçon.

You will need a lot of time *to* (*in order to*) learn this lesson.

With *venir* and *aller* the infinitive may be constructed without *pour* even though there are intervening words.

J'irai en ville demain matin *voir* mes amis.

I shall go in town tomorrow morning *to see* my friends.

(f) All prepositions in French, with the exception of *en* [see §48(b)] govern the infinitive form of the verb and not the present participle as in English.

sans le *voir* without *seeing* him

pour le *voir* in order *to see* him

au lieu de le *voir* instead of *seeing* him

afin de le *voir* in order *to see* him

The following special problems should also be noted:

(1) Before an infinitive, the preposition *before* translates as *avant de* instead of *avant*.

avant de* le *voir *before seeing* him

But: J'arriverai *avant* lui. I shall arrive *before* him.

(2) The preposition *après* (after) requires after it, not the simple infinitive, but the past infinitive.

après l'avoir vu { *after seeing* him
 after having seen him

§ 48 The Present Participle (le participe présent)

(a) The present participle in French ends in *-ant* and corresponds to the ending *-ing* in English. In the case of regular verbs of the first and second conjugations, this ending is added to the stem obtained by removing the infinitive ending. In the case of regular second conjugation verbs, the characteristic *-iss-*, found also in the present indicative plural, the imperfect indicative, the present subjunctive, and the plural imperative, is also included in the verb.

donn-er **donn-ant** giving

fin-ir **fin-iss-ant** finishing

vend-re **vend-ant** selling

(b) The present participle is never used to form a tense in French.

It exists only as a *gerundive*, which is to say a participle standing alone with no auxiliary verb.

As a gerundive, the present participle *without a preposition* indicates that the action occurred previous to the action of the main verb.

Sortant sa main de sa poche, il lui a donné quelques sous.
Taking his hand out of his pocket, he gave him a few pennies.

In the above example the action indicated by the participle *sortant* precedes that of the main verb *a donné*.

If the action indicated by the present participle is simultaneous with the action of the main verb, the preposition *en* will introduce the participle. In the corresponding English, this *en* will be either untranslated or will translate as *while* or *on*.

En le voyant, il a éclaté de rire. *Seeing him, he burst out laughing.*
On seeing him, he burst out laughing.

En visitant la malle, le douanier a découvert de la contrebande.
While inspecting the trunk, the customs agent discovered contraband.

En is the only preposition which may occur before the present participle. As noted previously [see § 47(f)], all other prepositions govern the infinitive form of the verb.

Constructed with *en*, the present participle will always refer to the subject of the sentence.

Jean a dit quelques mots à Robert en regardant le livre.
Looking at the book, John said a few words to Robert.

(c) In both English and French there is a form called the *perfect* participle which consists of the present participle of *avoir* or *être* plus the past participle.

ayant regardé having looked

(d) As noted previously [see § 11(a)], the present participle is frequently used as an adjective. The adjectival function of the present participle can easily be recognized by the position of the word in English: it always precedes its noun.

une leçon intéressante an interesting lesson

If the present participle follows the noun in English, it is no longer an adjective but a *gerundive* [see § 48(b) above] and, in that case, *it will not agree like an adjective* in French.

La cérémonie finissant à trois heures, Jean a décidé de partir.
The ceremony finishing at three o'clock, John decided to leave.

NOTE: There is a tendency in French to use a phrase containing a participle, as in the example above, in the sense of *since* or *because*.

The English translation given above is awkward and should be paraphrased.

In some cases the *gerundive* may modify the object of the verb.

J'ai vu Jean descendant la rue. I saw John *coming down* the street.

In such a case, the more common tendency in French is to substitute a relative clause for the present participle.

J'ai vu Jean qui descendait la rue. I saw John coming down the street.

After the verbs of sensual perception, *voir* (to see), *entendre* (to hear), *sentir* (to feel), an infinitive construction commonly replaces a present participle.

J'ai entendu Marie chanter. I heard Mary *sing* (*singing*).

One may also say:

J'ai entendu Marie qui chantait. I heard Mary *sing* (with the meaning: *and she was singing*).

§ 49 The Past Participle (le participe passé)

(a) The past participle is formed by adding *-é* (FIRST CONJUGATION); *-i* (SECOND CONJUGATION), *-u* (THIRD CONJUGATION) to the stem of the verb obtained by removing the infinitive ending.

donn-er	donn-é	given
fin-ir	fin-i	finished
vend-re	vend-u	sold

(b) For the use of past participles in the formation of compound tenses, see § 55(a).

(c) The past participle is also found in what might be called an *ablative absolute* construction, to borrow a term from Latin grammar. In such a construction, the auxiliary verb of the English is not translated.

La ville une fois prise, César continua sa campagne.

The city once *having been taken*, Cæsar continued his campaign.

In the above example, the past participle agrees like an adjective because the auxiliary verb *to be* is understood and this is in reality a passive construction [see § 59].

(d) For the use of the past participle as an adjective, see § 11(a).

§ 50 The Present Indicative* (le présent de l'indicatif)

(a) The present indicative tense indicates an action going on at the present time. If we take the sample verb *to give* in English, we find that there are three ways to indicate an action going on in the present: *I give, I am giving, I do give*. The French can say only *I give (je donne)*. In other words, the present tense of a French verb is always expressed in one word. The present indicative of regular verbs in French will be formed by taking the *stem* of the verb [the part remaining after the infinitive endings *-er, -ir, and -re* are removed; see § 47(a)] and adding to it the endings *italicized* in the illustrations below.

FIRST CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	<i>je donne</i> I give, am giving, do give	<i>nous donnons</i>	we give, are giving, do give
2nd Pers.	<i>tu donnes</i> thou givest, art giving, dost give	<i>vous donnez</i>	you give, are giving, do give
3rd Pers.	<i>il donne</i> he gives, is giving, does give	<i>ils donnent</i>	they give, are giving, do give
	<i>elle donne</i> she gives, is giving, does give	<i>elles donnent</i>	they give, are giving, do give

SECOND CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	<i>je finis</i> I finish, am finishing, do finish	<i>nous finissons</i>	
2nd Pers.	<i>tu finis</i> (etc.)	<i>vous finissez</i>	
3rd Pers.	<i>il (elle) finit</i>	<i>ils finissent</i>	

THIRD CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	<i>je vends</i> I sell, am selling, do sell	<i>nous vendons</i>	
2nd Pers.	<i>tu vends</i> (etc.)	<i>vous vendez</i>	
3rd Pers.	<i>il vend</i>	<i>ils vendent</i>	

In the above examples, note that an *-iss-* is added to the stem of a regular *-ir* verb in the present indicative plural before the endings are attached [see remark under § 48(a)]. Note also that the third singular of an *-re* verb has no ending. Theoretically, the ending

* Since there are also present, imperfect and pluperfect *subjunctives* we shall use each time the word *indicative* in the sense of "not subjunctive" without attempting to define the term further. The term *subjunctive* will be defined in due course.

should be *-t*, but, since the stem of all *-re* verbs except *rompre* (to break) ends in *d*, a *t* could not be added in the days when every letter was pronounced in French. The third singular of *rompre* is *rompt* (now pronounced rôⁿ).

(b) In addition to its normal functions, the present tense is used in French to indicate an action begun in the past but continuing in the present. English will express the same notion by various past tenses.

Jean est ici depuis l'arrivée de Marie.

John has been here since Mary's arrival (*but* he is still here).

When the amount of time is specified, English will tend to use the preposition *for** in such a construction, whereas the French continues to use the word *depuis* (since).

Je suis ici depuis trois jours.

I have been here for three days (*but* I am still here).

To make a question of the above sentence, the French will continue to use *depuis* (since). Note how the equivalent English has changed:

Depuis combien de jours êtes-vous ici?

How many days (for how many days) have you been here?

Depuis quand êtes-vous ici?

How long have you been here?

The same notion of time beginning in the past but continuing in the present is commonly expressed by the idiom *il y a* + the amount of time + *que* + the present tense. *Voici* and *voilà* are frequently substituted for *il y a* in this idiom.

Il y a trois ans que je suis ici.

I have been here for three years.

Voici (voilà, cela fait) trois ans que je suis ici.

I have been here for three years.

This idiom may also be made into a question.

Combien de temps y a-t-il que vous êtes ici?

How long have you been here?

* With a future verb, *for* in this situation translates as *pour*. *Je serai ici pour trois jours*: I shall be here (for) three days. If the verb is in a past tense of any type or a conditional tense, *for* will translate as *pendant* (during) or will be omitted altogether, as it frequently is in English. *J'y ai été (pendant) trois jours*: I was there (for) three days.

§ 51 The Imperfect Indicative (l'imparfait de l'indicatif)

(a) The imperfect indicative of the three model regular verbs is as follows:

FIRST CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	<i>je donnais</i>	I was giving	<i>nous donnions</i> we were giving
2nd Pers.	<i>tu donnais</i>	thou were giving	<i>vous donniez</i> you were giving
3rd Pers.	<i>il donnait</i>	he was giving	<i>ils donnaient</i> they were giving

SECOND CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	<i>je finissais</i>	I was finishing	<i>nous finissions</i>
2nd Pers.	<i>tu finissais</i>	(etc.)	<i>vous finissiez</i>
3rd Pers.	<i>il finissait</i>		<i>ils finissaient</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	<i>je vendais</i>	I was selling	<i>nous vendions</i>
2nd Pers.	<i>tu vendais</i>	(etc.)	<i>vous vendiez</i>
3rd Pers.	<i>il vendait</i>		<i>ils vendaient</i>

Note that the imperfect indicative of the second conjugation regular verb adds an *-iss-* to the stem before attaching the endings [see § 48(a)].

(b) The imperfect indicative has the following functions:

(1) It indicates an incomplete action in the past. In English the imperfect tense employs the auxiliary verbs *was* or *were*. As can readily be seen from the illustrations above, the imperfect indicative in French is not a compound tense but rather a simple tense.

Je finissais ma leçon à ce moment-là.
I was finishing my lesson at that time.

Sometimes in English we use a simple past tense where an imperfect would be more precise. If the imperfect tense can replace the simple past tense in an English sentence and thereby clarify the meaning, it is obvious that the French, which is infinitely more accurate in tense usage, will require the imperfect. *Note carefully the following example:*

I FINISHED THE BOOK WHILE JOHN READ HIS NEWSPAPER. This means either *I was finishing the book while John was reading his newspaper* or *I finished (completed action) the book while John was reading his newspaper*. In either case, the second verb clearly means

was reading and not *read*. Hence there are two possible translations in French:

Je finissais le livre pendant que Jean lisait son journal.
J'ai fini le livre pendant que Jean lisait son journal.

(2) Description is normally expressed by the imperfect tense no matter what the equivalent English says as a past tense.

La maison était bleue. The house *was* blue.
Le château dominait le village. The castle *overlooked* the village.

(3) Customary, habitual or continually recurring action is expressed by the imperfect. These notions are conveyed in English by the phrase *used to* or *kept [doing]*. Hence if the meaning of the English verb is uncertain and *used to* or *kept [doing]* can be inserted to clarify, it is certain that French requires an imperfect tense in this situation.

Tous les matins il se levait à six heures. { Every morning he *got up* at six o'clock.
 { Every morning he *used to get up* at six o'clock.
 { Every morning he *would¹ get up* at six o'clock.

Toutes les cinq minutes il regardait la pendule.² { Every five minutes he *looked* at the clock.
 { Every five minutes he *kept looking* at the clock.

(4) In short, it may be said that, unless the action is precise and occurring at a point of time (negation or interrogation will not make it imprecise), however, the imperfect will be preferred to a more precise past tense.

Le roi Jean régnait à cette époque.
 King John *reigned* at that time.

BUT: Le roi Jean mourut en 1600.
 King John *died* in 1600.

As an extension of this notion, verbs of mental state and the verbs *avoir*, *être*, *pouvoir* and *devoir* are commonly put in the imperfect tense unless the speaker or writer desires greater vividness, in which case he will use a preterit [see § 54] or a compound past [see § 55(b)].

Jean était roi à cette époque.
 John *was* king at that period.

¹ *Would* is also the characteristic sign of the conditional tense [see § 53(b)]. If *would* means *used to*, however, the tense required is not conditional but imperfect.

² It is possible to say also *Toutes les cinq minutes il a regardé la pendule*, giving emphasis to each individual action.

Jean a été roi jusqu'à la défaite de son armée.

John *was* king until the defeat of his army. (Time more precise because of exact statement which ends sentence; also notion that action of verb was complete since he ceased to be king).

Le petit garçon avait une pomme quand je l'ai vu.

The little boy *had* an apple when I saw him. (He had the apple and continued to have it; no end indicated for action).

Le garçon a eu une pomme mais quelqu'un l'a volée.

The boy *had* an apple but someone stole it. (He lost his apple; hence the action of *having* was completed).

Je croyais qu'il avait raison.

I *thought* he *was* right. (Neither verb has any precise limits in time; the mental action is continuous).

J'ai cru qu'il avait raison, mais je me trompais.

I *thought* he *was* right, but I *was* mistaken. (The action of the first verb is given precise limits to convey the idea that the thinking came to an end).

(5) Action begun in the remote past (the zone usually limited to the pluperfect tense) but continuing in the simple past (the zone usually indicated by the imperfect or the compound past tenses), is expressed by *depuis* and the imperfect tense. For a detailed analysis of this construction, turn back to § 50(b).

Note in the following examples how the English translation changes when the imperfect tense replaces the present in the examples already used in § 50(b):

Jean était ici depuis l'arrivée de Marie.

John *had been* here since Mary's arrival.

J'étais ici depuis trois jours.

I *had been* here for three days.

**Il y avait trois jours que j'étais là. }
Cela faisait trois jours que j'étais là. }**

I *had been* there for three days.

In the last example above, note that not only has the main verb been put in the imperfect but also the *il y a* and *cela fait* part of the idiom. *Voilà* may also be used with an imperfect tense but not *voici*.

(6) For the uses of the imperfect tense in an *if* clause, see § 53(c).

§ 52 The Future Tense (le futur)

(a) In the first two regular conjugations the future is formed by adding to the *entire infinitive* the endings¹ shown below. In the third conjugation, the final *e* of the infinitive is dropped before adding the future endings.

FIRST CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural	
1st Pers.	<i>je donnerai</i>	I shall ² (will) give	<i>nous donnerons</i>	we shall (will) give
2nd Pers.	<i>tu donneras</i>	thou (shalt) wilt give	<i>vous donnerez</i>	you will give
3rd Pers.	<i>il donnera</i>	he will give	<i>ils donneront</i>	they will give

SECOND CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	<i>je finirai</i>	I shall (will) finish	<i>nous finirons</i>
2nd Pers.	<i>tu finiras</i>	(etc.)	<i>vous finirez</i>
3rd Pers.	<i>il finira</i>		<i>ils finiront</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	<i>je vendrai</i>	I shall, will sell	<i>nous vendrons</i>
2nd Pers.	<i>tu vendras</i>	(etc.)	<i>vous vendrez</i>
3rd Pers.	<i>il vendra</i>		<i>ils vendront</i>

(b) The French future, like the English future, expresses an action which will go on at a future time. English uses the auxiliaries *shall* and *will*³ to convey this idea, whereas French, as noted above, expresses future time by a simple rather than a compound tense.

(c) When the main verb of the sentence is future and there is a clause beginning with *quand* (when), *lorsque* (when: literary style),

¹ In reality these endings are the present tense of *avoir*. In Vulgar Latin, the simple future *amabo* (I shall love), for example, was replaced by *amare habeo* (I shall have to love), which is the ancestor of the French form *aimerai*.

² *Shall* may also mean obligation, especially in a third person. Generally French will employ a simple future in this sense, although a notion of obligation may also be more clearly expressed with *devoir* [see § 62].

³ *Will* sometimes means volition and not future. *He will not do it* means either *He will not do it at a future time* or *He is not willing to do it*. In the second case, *will* indicates volition and will translate as the verb *vouloir*: *Il ne veut pas le faire*.

aussitôt que (as soon as), or *dès que* (as soon as: literary style), the verb of the clause will also be in the future.

Je le verrai quand il viendra. I shall see him when he comes.
Je le verrai aussitôt qu'il viendra. I shall see him as soon as he comes.

(d) If the main verb of a sentence is present or future, the verb of an *if* (*si*) clause *will be present*. This rule should be compared with that mentioned in § 53(c).

Je le verrai s'il vient. I shall see him if he comes.

Note that the French usage is the same as the English. A common error is to wish to use future in the *if* clause in French.

§ 53 The Conditional Tense (le conditionnel)

(a) The conditional tense is formed by placing the endings of the imperfect indicative [see § 51(a)] onto the stem for the future [see § 52(a)]. This rule knows no exceptions; it applies to irregular verbs (which frequently have irregular futures) as well as to regular verbs.

FIRST CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	je donnerais	I should, would give	nous donnerions we should, would give
2nd Pers.	tu donnerais	thou wouldst give	vous donneriez you would give
3rd Pers.	il donnerait	he would give	ils donneraient they would give

SECOND CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	je finirais	I should, would finish	nous finirions
2nd Pers.	tu finirais	(etc.)	vous finiriez
3rd Pers.	il finirait		ils finiraient

THIRD CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	je vendrais	I should, would sell	nous vendrions
2nd Pers.	tu vendrais	(etc.)	vous vendriez
3rd Pers.	il vendrait		ils vendraient

(b) The conditional tense in English uses the auxiliaries *should* and *would*, whereas the French conditional, as noted above, is in one piece. Before deciding that these auxiliaries are an indication of the conditional, they must be analyzed according to the following principles:

§ 54 The Preterit (le passé simple)

(a) The preterit has scarcely been used in this book because it is a literary tense rarely encountered in conversation, and this book emphasizes oral French. However, the student will deal with it incessantly in reading so that he would do well to study it thoroughly.

(b) The preterit is formed by adding to the stem of the verb, if the verb is regular, the endings shown in the following examples:

FIRST CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	<i>je donnai</i>	I gave	<i>nous donnâmes</i> we gave
2nd Pers.	<i>tu donnas</i>	thou gavest	<i>vous donnâtes</i> you gave
3rd Pers.	<i>il donna</i>	he gave	<i>ils donnèrent</i> they gave

SECOND CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	<i>je finis</i>	I finished	<i>nous finîmes</i>
2nd Pers.	<i>tu finis</i>	(etc.)	<i>vous finîtes</i>
3rd Pers.	<i>il finit</i>		<i>ils finirent</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	<i>je vendis</i>	I sold	<i>nous vendîmes</i>
2nd Pers.	<i>tu vendis</i>	(etc.)	<i>vous vendîtes</i>
3rd Pers.	<i>il vendit</i>		<i>ils vendirent</i>

(c) The preterit indicates, in literary style, a *completed precise action* in the simple past. In other words, French literary style makes a distinction which conversational French has lost. Refer at this point to § 55 (b) to make the comparison. In English we distinguish between *she went* and *she has gone*. Literary French makes the same distinction.

elle alla she went
elle est allée she has gone

If, in literary style, the action is not precise or if the time is not limited, the French will still use *compound past*. Compare the two examples:

Montaigne publia ses *Essais* en 1580.
 Montaigne published his *Essays* in 1580.

Montaigne a écrit les *Essais*.
 Montaigne wrote the *Essays*.

In the second example above we have only a general statement that Montaigne wrote the *Essays* without any reference to any precise

act of writing at a given time. Hence the English *wrote* translates as *a écrit* instead of *écrivit*, even in literary style.

§ 55 Compound Tenses of the Indicative

(a) All compound tenses of both the indicative and the subjunctive [see § 57] are formed by the proper tense of the auxiliary plus the past participle [see § 49]. The auxiliary will be either *avoir* or *être* according to the following rules:

(1) If the verb is any one of the following, it will be conjugated with *être*:

aller to go	partir ² to leave
arriver to arrive	passer ¹ to pass
descendre ¹ to descend, go down	rentrer ¹ to return (home)
devenir to become	rester to remain
entrer to enter	retourner ¹ to return ³
monter ¹ to go up	revenir ³ to return
mourir to die	sortir ² to go out, leave
naître to be born	tomber to fall
	venir to come

Most of the verbs in the above list are so-called *verbs of motion*, but not all verbs of motion (example: *courir*) are in the list. The only way to be sure that a verb is conjugated with *être* is to memorize the preceding list or else to consult it frequently. At any rate, it is certain that no verb, except a reflexive verb (see next paragraph), will be conjugated with *être* if it has a direct object.

(2) If the verb is reflexive [see § 58], the auxiliary used in the compound tense will be *être*. A verb becomes reflexive whenever a reflexive pronoun occurs before it.

Elle a coupé le pain. She *cut* the bread.

BUT: Elle s'est coupée. She *cut herself*.

¹ These verbs also exist as transitives. In their second meaning, they are conjugated with *avoir*. Note the transitive meanings: *descendre* (to carry down, to go down [a stair, etc.]); *monter* (to go up [a stair, etc.], to carry up); *passer* (to pass [a thing]); *rentrer* (to pull in, carry in); *retourner* (to turn [a thing] around).

² *Partir de* means to leave (a place). *Sortir de* means to leave (go out of) (a place). French also has the transitive verb *quitter* which means to leave (a place). The transitive verb *laisser* means to leave in the sense of to leave behind.

³ *Retourner* means to return in the following sense: The speaker is at Point A and is going to return to Point B. *Revenir* means to return in the following sense: The speaker starts at Point A, goes to Point B, and returns or comes back to Point A.

(3) All other verbs, both transitive and intransitive, will be conjugated with *avoir*.

(b) In all compound tenses the past participle will agree *like an adjective* with the object, the subject, or will not agree as specified hereafter.

(1) Verbs conjugated with *avoir* have the past participle agreeing like an adjective with the *preceding direct object*. This rule must be taken most literally* ; if the direct object as a pronoun, or even as a noun, precedes the verb, there will be an agreement of the past participle.

Je les ai vus.

I saw *them*.

Marie l'a donnée à Jean.

Mary gave it (feminine) to John.

Voici les livres que vous avez demandés.

Here the books *which* you asked for.

Combien de livres avez-vous lus?

How many books have you read? [See § 22(f)]

If there is no *preceding direct object*, there is no agreement of the past participle.

J'ai donné le livre à Jean. I gave the book to John.

(2) Verbs conjugated with *être* (with the exception of reflexive verbs) have the past participle agreeing like an adjective with the *subject*.

Elle est allée. She went.

Nous sommes allés. We went.

(3) All reflexive verbs have the past participle agreeing with the preceding direct object (exactly the same as for *avoir*).

Elle s'est coupée. She cut *herself*.

Elle s'est levée. She got up.

But: Elle s'est coupé le doigt. She cut her finger.

By virtue of the rule that no verb in French can have two direct objects, it is clear in the third example above that *le doigt* is the direct object and that therefore *se* is an indirect object. Hence there is no agreement of the past participle.

* There is never any agreement, however, with the pronoun *en*. *Avez-vous vu des roses? Oui, j'en ai vu.* Did you see any roses? Yes, I saw some.

(c) **The Compound Past (Le passé composé)**

(1) This tense indicates in conversation a *completed* action in the past. In English we say *I gave, I have given, I did give* in such a case. In conversation, French makes no such distinction. In all cases it says *I have given (j'ai donné)*.

The uses of this tense should be contrasted with those of the imperfect indicative [§ 51] and the preterit [§ 54]. For the compound past in literary style, see particularly § 54(c).

(2) The compound past is expressed by the *present indicative* of the auxiliary plus the past participle.

FIRST CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	j'ai donné I gave, have given, did give	nous avons donné	we gave, have given, did give
2nd Pers.	tu as donné thou gavest, hast given	vous avez donné	you gave, have given, did give
3rd Pers.	il a donné he gave, has given, did give	ils ont donné	they gave, have given, did give

SECOND CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	j'ai fini I finish, have finished, did finish	nous avons fini	
2nd Pers.	tu as fini (etc.)	vous avez fini	
3rd Pers.	il a fini	ils ont fini	

THIRD CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	j'ai vendu I sell, have sold, did sell	nous avons vendu	
2nd Pers.	tu as vendu (etc.)	vous avez vendu	
3rd Pers.	il a vendu	ils ont vendu	

As noted above [§ 55(a)1], certain verbs are conjugated with *être* and have the past participle agreeing with the subject. Observe the various agreements of the past participle:

SINGULAR

je suis allé	I (<i>masc.</i>) went, have gone, did go
je suis allée	I (<i>fem.</i>) went, have gone, did go
tu es allé	thou (<i>masc.</i>) wentest, hast gone
tu es allée	thou (<i>fem.</i>) wentest, hast gone
il est allé	he went, has gone, did go
elle est allée	she went, has gone, did go

PLURAL

nous sommes allés	we (<i>masc.</i>) went, have gone, did go
nous sommes allées	we (<i>fem.</i>) went, have gone, did go
vous êtes allé	you (<i>masc. sing.</i>) went, have gone, did go
vous êtes allée	you (<i>fem. sing.</i>) went, have gone, did go
vous êtes allés	you (<i>masc. pl.</i>) went, have gone, did go
vous êtes allées	you (<i>fem. pl.</i>) went, have gone, did go
ils sont allés	they went (<i>masc.</i>) have gone, did go
elles sont allées	they went (<i>fem.</i>) have gone, did go

(d) The Pluperfect Indicative (Le plus-que-parfait)

(1) This tense is formed with the auxiliary *had* in English and with the *imperfect tense* of the auxiliaries *avoir* and *être* in French.

FIRST CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural	
1st Pers.	j'avais donné	I had given	nous avions donné	we had given
2nd Pers.	tu avais donné	thou hadst given	vous aviez donné	you had given
3rd Pers.	il avait donné	he had given	ils avaient donné	they had given

SECOND CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	j'avais fini	I had finished	nous avions fini
2nd Pers.	tu avais fini	(etc.)	vous aviez fini
3rd Pers.	il avait fini		ils avaient fini

THIRD CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	j'avais vendu	I had sold	nous avions vendu
2nd Pers.	tu avais vendu	(etc.)	vous aviez vendu
3rd Pers.	il avait vendu		ils avaient vendu

(2) The pluperfect in French has the same function as the pluperfect in English and presents no problem in translation.

(e) The Future Perfect (Le futur antérieur)

(1) This tense in English has a double auxiliary *shall have* or *will have*. In French it is composed of the *future tense* of the auxiliary *avoir* or *être* plus the past participle.

FIRST CONJUGATION:

	Singular			Plural		
1st Pers.	j'aurai donné	I shall have given, will have given		nous aurons donné	we shall have given, we will have given	
2nd Pers.	tu auras donné	thou wilt have given		vous aurez donné	you will have given	
3rd Pers.	il aura donné	he will have given		ils auront donné	they will have given	

SECOND CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural	
1st Pers.	j'aurai fini	I shall have finished	nous aurons fini	
2nd Pers.	tu auras fini	(etc.)	vous aurez fini	
3rd Pers.	il aura fini		ils auront fini	

THIRD CONJUGATION:

	Singular		Plural	
1st Pers.	j'aurai vendu	I shall have sold	nous aurons vendu	
2nd Pers.	tu auras vendu	(etc.)	vous aurez vendu	
3rd Pers.	il aura vendu		ils auront vendu	

(2) Ordinarily this tense presents no problem in translation. When the English is *future perfect* the corresponding French is likewise.

(3) The rule set forth in § 52(c) also applies to the future perfect. In a sentence requiring the future after *quand*, *lorsque*, *aussitôt que* or *dès que*, either part of the sentence may have the verb in the future perfect.

Quand il viendra, elle sera déjà partie.

When he comes, she will already have left.

Quand elle aura compris, il sera trop tard.

When she has understood, it will be too late.

Note particularly in the second illustration above that the English past tense translates as a future perfect.

(4) The future perfect is sometimes used to indicate probability.

Elle sera déjà partie.

She has probably left already.

(f) **The Conditional Perfect** (Le conditionnel passé).

(1) The conditional perfect is recognized by the compound auxiliaries *should have* and *would have* (with the exceptions noted

in § 53(b)3. In French it is formed by the *conditional* of the auxiliary plus the past participle.

FIRST CONJUGATION

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	j'aurais donné I should have given, I would have given		nous aurions donné we should have given, we would have given
2nd Pers.	tu aurais donné thou wouldst have given		vous auriez donné you would have given
3rd Pers.	il aurait donné he would have given		ils auraient donné they would have given

SECOND CONJUGATION

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	j'aurais fini I should have finished, I would have finished		nous aurions fini
2nd Pers.	tu aurais fini (etc.)		vous auriez fini
3rd Pers.	il aurait fini		ils auraient fini

THIRD CONJUGATION

	Singular		Plural
1st Pers.	j'aurais vendu I should have sold, I would have sold		nous aurions vendu
2nd Pers.	tu aurais vendu (etc.)		vous auriez vendu
3rd Pers.	il aurait vendu		ils auraient vendu

(2) In a sentence containing an *if* clause, if the main verb is conditional perfect, the verb of the clause will be pluperfect [see § 55(d)].

Si elle était venue, il l'aurait vue.
If she *had come*, he *would have seen* her.

(3) After *quand même*, *quand* in the sense of *quand même* or *au cas où*, the conditional perfect will translate as English pluperfect [see § 53(d)].

Quand même il serait venu, il n'aurait rien vu.
Even if he *had come*, he *would have seen* nothing.
Au cas où¹ il serait venu, je le lui aurais dit.
In case he *had come*, I *would have told* him so.²

¹ *Au cas où* is always followed by a conditional tense. *Vous le lui direz au cas où il viendrait*: You will tell him so in case he should come.

² With *dire* (to say), *espérer* (to hope), *faire* (to do), *croire* (to believe), the English word *so* translates as the pronoun object *le*. *Je le crois*: I believe so. If the verb *être* has no predicate, this same pronoun object *le* must be supplied. *Etes-vous Américain? Oui, je le suis*. Are you an American? Yes, I am (so).

(g) **The Past Anterior (Le passé antérieur)**

(1) This tense has no equivalent in English. It is a literary tense used after *quand*, *lorsque*, *aussitôt que* and *dès que* in situations where English and conversational French would both use a pluperfect.

Quand le roi eut été informé du complot, il ordonna qu'on lui tranchât la tête.

When the king *had been* informed of the plot, he ordered that his head be chopped off.

(2) This tense is formed by the *preterit of avoir* or *être* plus the past participle.

FIRST CONJUGATION

	Singular		Plural	
1st Pers.	j'eus donné	I had given	nous eûmes donné	we had given
2nd Pers.	tu eus donné	thou hadst given	vous eûtes donné	you had given
3rd Pers.	il eut donné	he had given	ils eurent donné	they had given

§ 56 **The Imperative (l'impératif)**

(a) The imperative is the form of the verb used in giving a direct command. In English there is but one imperative, and it corresponds only to the unexpressed pronoun *you*. In the case of the verb *to give*, for example, the imperative would be *give!* French has two imperatives, one corresponding to an unexpressed *vous* in formal address or in a plural sense in informal address, and one corresponding to *tu* for informal address in the singular. There is also in French a first personal plural imperative which, since it has no English equivalent, must be translated by the phrase *let us*.

In almost every case, including irregular verbs, the imperative is spelled the same as the present indicative form corresponding to the unexpressed pronoun.

SECOND CONJUGATION

	Singular	Plural
1st Pers.	.....	finissons let us finish!
2nd Pers.	finis finish!	finissez finish!
3rd Pers.	.....	.....

THIRD CONJUGATION

	Singular	Plural
1st Pers.	.....	vendons let us sell
2nd Pers.	vends sell	vendez sell
3rd Pers.	.....	.....

In the first conjugation, however, the second singular imperative lacks the *s* found in the present indicative.

FIRST CONJUGATION

	Singular	Plural
1st Pers.	.....	donnons let us give
2nd Pers.	donne give	donnez give
3rd Pers.	.....	.....

This remark applies also to the irregular verb *aller* whose second singular imperative is *va* and to irregular verbs like *ouvrir* whose present singular has the same endings as a first conjugation verb and whose second singular imperative is therefore *ouvre*.

If the pronoun object forms *y* or *en*, however, follow the second singular imperative in the first conjugation (or a second conjugation verb which resembles a first conjugation verb in its present tense), the *s* will reappear.

Donnes-en à Marie. Give Mary some.
Vas-y! Go ahead (literally: go there)!

(b) For the first person singular and third person singular and plural, there is no true imperative. Instead the present subjunctive [see § 57(b)] with *que* is used in the sense of *let*.

	Singular	Plural
que je donne*	let me give	.....
.....
qu'il donne	let him give	qu'ils donnent let them give

(c) The imperative has a future connotation, and therefore future will occur after *quand*, *lorsque*, *aussitôt que* and *dès que* if the main verb is imperative [see § 52(c)].

Donnez-le-lui quand il viendra. Give it to him when he comes.

§ 57 The Subjunctive (le subjonctif)

(a) The subjunctive mood exists in English but rarely does it correspond to a subjunctive in French. In English, we say *If I were*

* If *let* means *permit* or *allow*, as it generally does in modern French, the verb *laisser* (to let or allow) will be preferred, particularly in conversation. Say *Laissez-moi vous parler* (Let me speak to you) and not *Que je vous parle*.

king, which is subjunctive, but we already know [see § 53(c)] that the corresponding verb in French will be imperfect indicative. On the other hand, we say *I wish I were king*, which happens to correspond to a subjunctive in French.

In general, we may say that the French subjunctive conveys a notion that a thing is *not necessarily so*. In reality, this generalization is of little help. Practically speaking, we must learn to recognize a series of individual cases in French where *certain conditions in the main part of the sentence* bring about automatically a *not necessarily so* (subjunctive) situation in a following subordinate clause. These automatic situations will be enumerated in § 57(c) to § 57(f).

(b) **The Present Subjunctive** (Le présent du subjonctif)

The present subjunctive of regular verbs is formed, in the case of the first and third conjugations, by adding to the stem of the verb the endings given in the examples below. In the second conjugation the regular verb has between the stem and the ending the same *-iss-* which occurs also in the plural of the present indicative, the imperfect indicative, the plural imperative and the present participle. There being no one characteristic translation for the French subjunctive, as we shall note presently, it would be more misleading than helpful to translate the following examples:

	FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION	THIRD CONJUGATION
	SINGULAR		
1st Pers.	je donne	je finisse	je vende
2nd Pers.	tu donnes	tu finisses	tu vendes
3rd Pers.	il donne	il finisse	il vende
	PLURAL		
1st Pers.	nous donnions	nous finissions	nous vendions
2nd Pers.	vous donniez	vous finissiez	vous vendiez
3rd Pers.	ils donnent	ils finissent	ils vendent

(c) The subjunctive will be used in *noun clauses* (a noun clause begins with *que* [that] and serves as the object of the verb, occupying the place usually held by a noun) which are the objects of verbs or phrases expressing the following conditions:

(1) *Emotion.*

Je regrette qu'il vienne.	I am sorry that he <i>is coming</i> .
C'est dommage qu'il vienne.	It is a pity that he <i>is coming</i> .

J'ai peur qu'il vienne †.
Il est bon qu'il vienne.

I am afraid he is coming.
It is good he is coming.

(2) *Volition.*

Je veux qu'il le fasse.
Elle entend que Jean soit prêt.

I want him to do it.
She intends that John be ready.

In the first example above, observe that English uses an infinitive construction with the object pronoun *him* serving as the subject of the infinitive. In French, infinitives cannot have subjects. Instead a noun clause must replace the infinitive.*

I want John to do it = I want that John do it.
Je veux que Jean le fasse.

(3) *Doubt.*

Je doute que Jean vienne.
Il n'est pas sûr que Jean vienne.
Je ne crois pas que Jean vienne.
Croyez-vous que Jean vienne?

I doubt that (whether) John is coming.
It is not certain that John is coming.
I don't think John is coming.
Do you think John is coming?

In the last example above the speaker is exceedingly doubtful that John is coming and he conveys his doubt by a subjunctive in the noun clause. If it was certain that John was coming and he wanted only confirmation, he would say: *Croyez-vous que Jean viendra?* Do you think John will come?

(4) *Necessity.*

Il faut que Jean vienne.
It is absolutely necessary that John come.

Il n'est pas nécessaire que Jean vienne.
There is no need for John to come.

(d) The subjunctive will occur automatically in relative clauses depending on the following types of antecedents.

(1) *An indefinite antecedent.*

Je ne connais personne qui puisse faire cela.
I know no one who can do that.

† In literary style one says *J'ai peur qu'il ne vienne*. Verbs of fearing take not only a subjunctive but also a pleonastic *ne* [see §23(n)] in a following noun clause.

The only time any French construction appears to approximate the English infinitive construction is in a sentence like this: *I ask John to do it*. But in this case, the French says: *Je demande à Jean de le faire* (I ask John to do it). *Je demande que Jean le fasse* means *I demand that John do it*.

Il cherche *quelqu'un* qui *puisse* faire cela.
He is looking for *someone* who *can* do that.

Je cherche *un homme* qui *puisse* faire cela.
I am looking for *a man* who *can* do that.

In the last example this man does not necessarily exist; he is therefore indefinite. If he exists, there is no subjunctive.

J'ai trouvé *un homme* qui *peut* faire cela.
I have found *a man* who *can* do that.

(2) *An antecedent modified by a superlative* or the words "first," "last," "only" (which have a superlative force).

C'est le livre *le plus intéressant* que j'*ai* jamais lu.
It is *the most interesting* book I *have* ever read.

C'est la *dernière* statue qu'*il ait* faite.
It is the *last* statue which he *made*.

(e) The subjunctive occurs *automatically* after the following conjunctions:

***Bien qu'il soit* malade, il viendra.**
Although he *is* sick, he will come.

Il viendra *quoiqu'il soit* malade.
He will come *although* he *is* sick.

Il parlera lentement *afin que vous puissiez* comprendre.
He will speak slowly *so that* you *may* understand.

Il parlera lentement *pour que vous puissiez* comprendre.
He will speak slowly *so that* you *may* understand.

Il viendra *à moins qu'il soit* malade.
He will come *unless* he *is* sick.

Il vous le dira *pourvu que vous ne le disiez* à personne.
He will tell you *provided (that)* you *tell* no one.

Il viendra *avant que vous partiez*.
He will come *before* you *leave*.

Il l'a fait *sans que vous le sachiez*.
He did it *without* your *knowing* it.

***Autant que je sache*, c'est Marie qui l'a fait.**
As far as I know, it is Mary who did it.

Avant que and *à moins que* take a pleonastic *ne* in literary style [see § 23(n)]. Note also in the above illustration the peculiar English construction which results as a translation of *sans que*. *Sans* alone normally translates the preposition *without*, and, like all prepositions in French except *en*, it governs the infinitive form of

the verb: *sans le voir* (without seeing him). If, in English, the present participle following *without* has a subject expressed as a simple noun or as a possessive adjective, French will have a subordinate clause with *sans que* and a subjunctive.

<i>sans que Jean le voie</i>	<i>without John seeing him</i>
<i>sans qu'il le voie</i>	<i>without his seeing him</i>

(f) The subjunctive is required in various more or less idiomatic expressions involving the words *whoever*, *whatever*, *however*, etc. In some cases no subjunctive occurs because, as will be seen from the illustrations below, French substitutes demonstratives and relatives for the more complicated constructions. Study carefully the following examples:

(1) *Whoever, whomever, whomsoever.*

Celui qui le fera sera puni.

Whoever does it will be punished. (No subjunctive).

Qui veut le voir n'aura qu'à demander.

Whoever wishes to see him will have only to ask. (No subjunctive).

Quiconque le trouvera, pourra le regarder.

Whoever finds it will be able to look at it. (No subjunctive).

Qui que vous soyez, parlez.

Whoever you are, speak. (Qui que requires subjunctive).

Qui que ce soit qui ait écrit cela, c'est un imbécile.

Whoever it was who wrote that, he is an imbecile. (Qui que requires subjunctive).

Qui que ce soit qu'ils choisissent, ils auront un bon président.

Whomever they choose, they will have a good president. (Qui que requires subjunctive).

(2) *Whatever, whatsoever.*

Quoi que vous fassiez, vous ne vous tromperez pas.

Whatever you do, you will not make a mistake. (Quoi que requires subjunctive).

Quoi que ce soit qui le rende malade, il se remettra bientôt.

Whatever is making him sick, he will recover soon. (Quoi que requires subjunctive).

Quelque désire qu'il ait de bien faire, il est incompétent.

Whatever desire he may have to do well, he is incompetent. (Quelque in sense of whatever requires subjunctive).

Quelle que soit la raison, il n'a pas compris.

Whatever the reason is, he did not understand. (Quel que in sense of whatever requires subjunctive).

Il n'a jamais dit quoi que ce soit.

He has never said *anything whatever*. (Idiom; *quoi que* requires subjunctive).

Il n'a pas la moindre raison de le faire.

He has not *the least** reason to do it (He has no reason whatever [whatsoever] to do it). (No subjunctive).

N'importe qui pourra le faire.

Anyone (whatever) can do it. (Idiom; no subjunctive).

Il fera n'importe quoi.

He will do *anything (whatever)*. (Idiom; no subjunctive).

(3) *However.***Quelque grande qu'elle soit, elle fait l'enfant.**

However big she is, she acts like a child. (*Quelque plus que* requires subjunctive).

Quelque longtemps qu'il ait travaillé, il n'a rien produit.

However long he worked, he produced nothing. (Subjunctive).

Si experte qu'elle soit, elle n'y comprend rien.

However expert she is, she doesn't understand a thing about it. (*Si...que* is a synonym for *quelque...que*).

Quelle que soit votre méthode, vous y arriverez.

However you do it, you will succeed. (No translation in French; expression must be paraphrased).

(4) *Wherever, whenever.***Où que vous soyez, je vous trouverai.**

Wherever you are, I shall find you. (*Où que* takes subjunctive).

Quand vous viendrez, je vous le dirai.

Whenever you come, I shall tell you. (No subjunctive; there is no word for *whenever*).

(g) Once it has been determined that conditions in the main part of the sentence require a subjunctive in the subordinate clause, the next two problems are to select the proper verb and to put it into the proper tense with little regard for what the English says. In the following examples, note how the English verb is expressed in the part of the sentence which requires a subjunctive in French.

I doubt that (if) he *will come*. (COME)

I preferred that he *should go*. (GO)

* Do not confuse *least* as an adjective, which is *moindre*, with *least* as an adverb. *Il n'a pas la moindre raison*: He hasn't the least reason. *Il l'aime le moins*: He likes it the least. See also § 14.

I preferred to *have* him *go*. (Go)
 It is necessary that he *give* a reason. (GIVE)
 He is looking for someone who *may do* the work. (Do)

In the above sentences we are interested in knowing three things: 1) that the main part of the sentence sets up a condition requiring a subjunctive; 2) that the verb in the subjunctive will be COME, GO, GIVE, DO; 3) that the action of the subjunctive clause did not occur before the action of the main verb.

If the action in the subjunctive clause did not occur before the action of the main verb, the present tense will be used even though the English may have a future.

Je doute qu'il vienne. I doubt whether he $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{is coming.} \\ \text{will come.} \end{array} \right.$

(h) The Perfect Subjunctive) (Le passé du subjonctif).

This tense is formed by the present tense of *avoir* or *être* plus the past participle. It might be described as the compound past tense turned into the subjunctive.

FIRST CONJUGATION SECOND CONJUGATION THIRD CONJUGATION

SINGULAR

1st Pers.	j'aie donné	j'aie fini	j'aie vendu
2nd Pers.	tu aies donné	tu aies fini	tu aies vendu
3rd Pers.	il ait donné	il ait fini	il ait vendu

PLURAL

1st Pers.	nous ayons donné	nous ayons fini	nous ayons vendu
2nd Pers.	vous ayez donné	vous ayez fini	vous ayez vendu
3rd Pers.	ils aient donné	ils aient fini	ils aient vendu

If the main verb of the sentence is *present* or *future*, the *perfect subjunctive* is used in both conversational and literary style to indicate that the action in the subjunctive clause occurred *prior to the action of the main verb*.

Je suis content qu'il *soit venu*. I am glad that he *has come*.
 Je doutais qu'il *soit venu*. I doubted whether he *had come*.

In conversational style [see § 57(j) for literary style in this regard], the perfect subjunctive is used *in every case* where the action of the subjunctive clause occurred before the action of the main verb, *no matter what the English says*.

(i) **The Imperfect Subjunctive** (L'imparfait du subjonctif)

In the case of regular verbs, this tense is formed by adding the following endings to the stem of the verb:

	FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION	THIRD CONJUGATION
	SINGULAR		
1st Pers.	je donnasse	je finisse	je vendisse
2nd Pers.	tu donnasses	tu finisses	tu vendisses
3rd Pers.	il donnât	il finît	il vendît
	PLURAL		
1st Pers.	nous donnassions	nous finissions	nous vendissions
2nd Pers.	vous donnassiez	vous finissiez	vous vendissiez
3rd Pers.	ils donnassent	ils finissent	ils vendissent

Note from the above examples that the endings are identical in the second and third conjugations and that the imperfect subjunctive of the second conjugation happens to be identical in spelling with the present subjunctive, except in the third person singular (*il finît*). The imperfect subjunctive is used *in literary style only* when the main verb is any past or either conditional tense and when the action of the subjunctive clause *did not occur prior to the action of the main verb*.

Je doutais qu'il vînt. *I doubted that he was coming.*

(j) **The Pluperfect Subjunctive** (Le plus-que-parfait du subjonctif)

(1) This tense consists of the imperfect subjunctive of the auxiliaries *être* or *avoir* plus the past participle.

	FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION	THIRD CONJUGATION
	SINGULAR		
1st Pers.	j'eusse donné	j'eusse fini	j'eusse vendu
2nd Pers.	tu eusses donné	tu eusses fini	tu eusses vendu
3rd Pers.	il eût donné	il eût fini	il eût vendu
	PLURAL		
1st Pers.	nous eussions donné	nous eussions fini	nous eussions vendu
2nd Pers.	vous eussiez donné	vous eussiez fini	vous eussiez vendu
3rd Pers.	ils eussent donné	ils eussent fini	ils eussent vendu

(2) The pluperfect subjunctive is found only in literary style when the main verb is in a past or conditional tense and when the action in the subjunctive clause occurred *prior to the action of the main verb*.

Le roi était très fâché qu'il l'eût fait.
The king was very angry that he had done it.

(3) The pluperfect subjunctive is frequently used in literary style in place of a conditional perfect.

Le roi lui demanda s'il l'eût fait.

The king asked him whether he *would have done* it.

Le roi lui a demandé s'il l'aurait fait. (Conversational).

In a sentence involving an *if* clause, the pluperfect subjunctive will also be used in the *if* clause if it is used in place of a conditional perfect in the main clause.

S'il eût fait cela, il eût été puni.

If he had done that, he would have been punished.

A double pluperfect subjunctive may replace a double conditional perfect.

Eût-il fait cela, il eût été puni.

Had he done that, he would have been punished.

(k) If the subject of a noun clause is the same as the subject of the main verb, the tendency in French is to avoid a noun clause.

Il croit avoir raison.

He thinks he *is* right.

This frequently has the effect of avoiding a subjunctive, which is considered desirable in French.

Il a peur de le manquer.

He is afraid of *missing* it (to replace: *He is afraid that he will miss it*).

Il a peur de l'avoir manqué.

He is afraid that he *missed* it.

Similarly, French will avoid a clause beginning with a subordinating conjunction if the same person is the subject of the main clause and of the subordinate clause.

Il l'a fait avant de partir.

He did it before *leaving* (to replace: *He did it before he left*).

Après l'avoir vu, il lui a parlé.

After *having seen* him, he spoke to him (to replace: *After he had seen him, he spoke to him*).

§ 58 The Reflexive Verb (le verbe pronominal)

(a) Any verb becomes reflexive when a reflexive pronoun object occurs before it. *I wash myself* is reflexive both in English and in French. The reflexive verb is much more common in French than in English. For example, French cannot say *I sit down*; it has to say *I seat myself*. In some cases, there is not even a reflexive equivalent in English for a reflexive verb in French. Thus French says *Je me sers de cela* (which can be translated in English only as *I use that*, which is obviously not reflexive). For the sake of simplification, we

may say that some verbs are already reflexive as we look them up in a dictionary or vocabulary list while other verbs we accidentally make reflexive when we place a reflexive pronoun before them. From the French point of view there is, in reality, no difference between these two types of reflexive verbs.

(b) For a discussion of the reflexive pronoun, turn to § 27. Since verbs are so frequently used in the reflexive in French, the student should learn to conjugate them rapidly in all tenses, beginning with the present.

SINGULAR

1st Pers.	je <i>me</i> lave	I wash <i>myself</i>
2nd Pers.	tu <i>te</i> laves	thou wastest <i>thyself</i>
3rd Pers.	il <i>se</i> lave elle <i>se</i> lave	he washes <i>himself</i> she washes <i>herself</i>

PLURAL

1st Pers.	nous <i>nous</i> lavons	we wash <i>ourselves</i>
2nd Pers.	vous <i>vous</i> lavez	you wash <i>yourself</i> (<i>yourselves</i>)
3rd Pers.	ils <i>se</i> lavent elles <i>se</i> lavent	they wash <i>themselves</i> (<i>masc.</i>) they wash <i>themselves</i> (<i>fem.</i>)

For the construction of reflexive verbs in the compound tense, see § 55(a)2 and § 55(b)3. Study the following illustrations of *se laver* in the compound past, noting the agreement of the past participle:

SINGULAR

1st Pers.	je <i>me</i> suis lavé je <i>me</i> suis lavée	I washed <i>myself</i> (<i>masc.</i>) I washed <i>myself</i> (<i>fem.</i>)
2nd Pers.	tu <i>t'es</i> lavé tu <i>t'es</i> lavée	thou didst wash <i>thyself</i> (<i>masc.</i>) thou didst wash <i>thyself</i> (<i>fem.</i>)
3rd Pers.	il <i>s'est</i> lavé elle <i>s'est</i> lavée	he washed <i>himself</i> she washed <i>herself</i>

PLURAL

1st Pers.	nous <i>nous</i> sommes lavés nous <i>nous</i> sommes lavées	we washed <i>ourselves</i> (<i>masc.</i>) we washed <i>ourselves</i> (<i>fem.</i>)
2nd Pers.	vous <i>vous</i> êtes lavé vous <i>vous</i> êtes lavée vous <i>vous</i> êtes lavés vous <i>vous</i> êtes lavées	you washed <i>yourself</i> (<i>masc. sing.</i>) you washed <i>yourself</i> (<i>fem. sing.</i>) you washed <i>yourselves</i> (<i>masc.</i>) you washed <i>yourselves</i> (<i>fem.</i>)
3rd Pers.	ils <i>se</i> sont lavés elles <i>se</i> sont lavées	they washed <i>themselves</i> (<i>masc.</i>) they washed <i>themselves</i> (<i>fem.</i>)

(c) For the use of the reflexive verb to avoid a passive, see § 59(c).

§ 59 The Passive Voice (la voix passive)

(a) A verb is said to be passive when the subject no longer acts but is acted upon.

ACTIVE: The dog bites the man.

PASSIVE: The man is bitten by the dog.

In a passive construction the person or thing performing the action (the *dog* in the illustration above) is called the *agent*. It is clear from the illustration above that the passive is formed in English by the proper tense of the auxiliary *to be* plus the past participle. The French passive is constructed in exactly the same manner: the proper tense of *être* plus the *past participle*. The first problem is to recognize a passive, and the second problem is to select the proper tense of the auxiliary.

The man *had been* bitten.

In the above illustration, the verb *to bite* is in the passive. Since its auxiliary is obviously pluperfect, we get as a result:

L'homme avait été mordu.

In a passive construction, the past participle of the verb (but not of the auxiliary) agrees like an adjective with the subject.

La femme est mordue par un chien.

The woman is bitten by a dog.*

La femme a été mordue par un chien.

The woman has been bitten by a dog.

(b) Normally the agent of a passive construction is introduced by *par* (by). However, when there is no real action indicated by the passive (in other words, when the situation is completely static), the agent will be introduced by *de* which sometimes translates as *by* and sometimes as *with*.

La femme a été mordue par un chien.

The woman has been bitten by a dog.

La table est couverte d'une nappe.†

The table is covered by (*with*) a tablecloth.

(c) When the *agent* is expressed with the passive there is no way to avoid the passive except by changing the meaning of the sen-

* Never attempt to translate literally *The woman is being bitten by a dog*. The idea is too vivid to be rendered by a passive in French. Say something such as: *Il y a un chien qui mord la femme*.

† If a pronoun were to replace the word *nappe*, it would be *en*. [See § 25(f)].
La table en est couverte: The table is covered by it.

tence. If the *agent* is not expressed, but would be introduced by *par* if expressed, French prefers to avoid the passive in the following manner:

(1) *If the subject is a thing*, use the impersonal pronoun subject *on* with an active verb or use a reflexive verb as follows:

- On parle français ici.** French is spoken here (literally: *One speaks French here*).
Le français se parle ici. French is spoken here.
Ces livres se publient à Paris. These books are published in Paris.

(2) *If the subject is a person*, the *on* construction, but not the reflexive, may be used, provided that the action is one which can logically be done by another person.

On m'a piqué plusieurs fois.
 I have been given injections several times.

But: J'ai été blessé. I have been wounded (there is no indication that a person wounded me; it might have been a thing).

(d) A common error in constructing a passive is to forget that the subject of the English passive might logically be an indirect object if the verb were not passive, as in the following example:

John was given an apple = To John an apple was given.
On a donné une pomme à Jean.

The same problem arises when an English transitive verb translates as a French intransitive.

The letter was answered yesterday (But French says: The letter was answered to yesterday).

On a répondu à la lettre hier.

§ 60 Inversion of the Verb

(a) Any verb with a pronoun subject may be made interrogative by placing the pronoun subject after the verb if it is a simple verb form or after the auxiliary if it is a compound form. The pronoun subject is then attached to the verb by a hyphen. If the third singular verb form ends in a vowel, a *-t-* with hyphens on each side is inserted.

SINGULAR

	INTERROGATIVE PRESENT	INTERROGATIVE PAST
1st Pers.	.....	(ai-je donné) have I given?
2nd Pers.	donnes-tu? dost thou give?	as-tu donné hast thou given?
3rd Pers.	donne-t-il? does he give?	a-t-il donné has he given?

PLURAL

1st Pers.	donnons-nous? do we give?	avons-nous donné? have we given?
2nd Pers.	donnez-vous? do you give?	avez-vous donné? have you given?
3rd Pers.	donnent-ils? do they give?	ont-ils donné? have they given?

(b) ' For negative interrogative, see § 23.

(c) To invert with a noun subject, the word order is *noun subject* + *verb* + *pronoun subject* (referring back to noun subject).

Jean est-il ici?	Is John here?
Marie est-elle partie?	Did Mary leave?

(d) In conversation, inversion is frequently avoided by the use of *est-ce que* (is it that) which is placed before any declarative sentence to make it interrogative.

Est-ce que Jean vient?	Is John coming?
-------------------------------	-----------------

Since the form *donné-je* is no longer used in modern French, it is almost always necessary to express interrogation in the first person with *est-ce que*. In conversation about the only forms now inverted are *dois-je*, *puis-je* and sometimes *ai-je* or *suis-je*.

Especial care must be exercised in placing *est-ce que* in a question beginning with an interrogative word. The English sentence should be paraphrased in terms of *is it that*.

Combien de dollars est-ce que cela coûte?
How many dollars <i>does</i> that cost? (Literally: How many dollars <i>is it that</i> that costs?)

Qu'est-ce que Jean va faire?
What <i>is</i> John going to do? (What <i>is it that</i> John is going to do?)

(e) With *que*, *où*, *combien*, *comment*, and *quand* a simple verb form may precede a noun subject in spite of the rule in § 60(c).

Quand partira votre mère?	When <i>will</i> your mother <i>leave</i> ?
Combien coûte ce livre?	How much <i>does</i> this book <i>cost</i> ?
Comment va Jean?	How <i>is</i> John?
Que répond Robert?	What does Robert <i>answer</i> ?

§ 61 Uses of the Verb *avoir*

(a) For the conjugation of the verb *avoir*, see § 66, tables of irregular verbs.

(b) In expressions involving a person's health, the verb *avoir* is found in the following idioms:

J'ai mal à la tête, aux yeux, etc.

My head, my eyes, etc., hurt me (literally: I have a hurt in my head, my eyes, etc.)

J'ai la migraine, etc.

I have a headache, etc.

Qu'avez-vous?

What is the matter with you?

(c) *Avoir* is used in expressions of age.

Quel âge avez-vous? How old are you? (Literally: What age have you?)

J'ai trois ans. I am three years old. (Literally: I have three years).

(d) *Avoir à* is sometimes used in sense of *devoir* (see § 62).

J'ai à travailler ce soir. I have to work tonight.

(e) The idiom *il y a* means *there is* or *there are* as a statement of fact.

Il y a un livre sur la table.

There is a book on the table. (The fact is true that there is a book on the table).

Y a-t-il des livres sur la table?

Are there some books on the table?

Il doit y avoir des livres sur la table.

There must be some books on the table.

Il y a should be compared with *voilà*, which implies a gesture.

Voilà un livre.

There is a book (look at it).

Voici, similar in construction to *voilà*, means *here is* or *here are*. Never say *Ici est*.

Voici un livre. Here is a book.

Voilà and *voici* may have pronoun objects. Observe carefully the translation.

Le voilà. There he is (Literally: See him there).

Les voici. Here they are (Literally: See them here).

§ 62 The Verb *devoir*

(a) For the conjugation of *devoir* see tables of irregular verbs in § 66.

(b) *Devoir* is a main verb expressing a notion of necessity or obligation. When it has a direct object it means to *owe*.

Je dois trois dollars. I *owe* three dollars.

When it is followed by a dependent infinitive it expresses obligation or necessity with relation to the time normally indicated by the tense or with relation to a time which would be considered future to the normal time of that tense. Study the following examples carefully:

	NORMAL TIME	FUTURE TIME
je dois partir	I <i>must</i> leave, I <i>have</i> to leave, I <i>am obliged</i> to leave	I <i>was (supposed) to</i> leave
je devais partir	I <i>had</i> to leave, I <i>was obliged</i> to leave	I <i>was (supposed) to</i> leave
j'ai dû partir	I <i>must have</i> left, I <i>have had</i> to leave, I <i>have been obliged</i> to leave, I <i>was obliged</i> to leave	.....
je devrai partir	I <i>shall have</i> to leave, I <i>shall be</i> obliged to leave	.....
je devrais partir	I <i>should</i> leave, I <i>ought</i> to leave	.....
j'avais dû partir	I <i>had had</i> to leave	.....
j'aurais dû partir	I <i>would have had</i> to leave, I <i>ought to have</i> left	I <i>was (supposed) to</i> have left
je dus partir	I <i>had</i> to leave, I <i>was obliged</i> to leave	.....

From the above illustrations, it is evident, for example, that the English auxiliary *must* becomes the main verb *devoir* in French and that the main verb of the English becomes a dependent infinitive. Another principle to observe is that all notion of tense should be conveyed by the verb *devoir* under normal circumstances.

J'ai dû partir à onze heures. I *must have* left at eleven o'clock.

Devoir in the present tense is incorrect in the above sentence. On the other hand, if the force of the action continues through the present, it is possible to say:

Elle doit être partie. She *must be* gone (she is still gone).

§ 63 The Verb *faire*

(a) For the conjugation of *faire* see tables of irregular verbs in § 66.

(b) *Faire* means *to make* or *to do* as main verbs. It does not exist as an auxiliary verb in French [review § 50(a) and § 55(c)1]. Never attempt to use *faire* when *do* or *did* stand alone in English with another verb understood.

Etes-vous allé en ville aujourd'hui? Oui, j'y suis allé.

Did you go to town today? Yes I did.

(c) In a *causal* construction *faire* means *to have something done*. Note the difference in word order in French.

Je fais lire le livre. I have the book read. (I cause the book to be read.)

The dependent infinitive must always follow *faire*.

If the object acted upon is a *normal pronoun object*, it will go before *faire* and not before the infinitive.

Je le fais lire. I have it read.

Je le fais lire par Jean. I have it read by John.

If the agent is a pronoun, it will normally be expressed as an indirect pronoun object before the verb *faire*.

Je le lui ai fait faire. I had it done by him.

(I had him do it.)

(d) The verb *faire* is used in the following expressions having to do with the weather:

Quel temps fait-il?	What kind of weather is it?
il fait beau (temps)	it is good weather
il fait mauvais (temps)	it is bad weather
il fait froid	it is cold
il fait chaud	it is hot
il fait frais	it is cool
il fait doux	it is mild
il fait du vent	it is windy
il fait sec	it is dry
il fait jour	it is day
il fait nuit	it is night

§ 64 The Verb *pouvoir*

(a) For the conjugation of *pouvoir* see tables of irregular verbs in § 66.

(b) *Pouvoir* conveys a notion of physical ability, expressed in

English as *to be able* or by the auxiliaries *can* or *could*. Note the translations of the following synopsis:

je peux le faire	I can do it	I am able to do it
je pouvais le faire	I could do it	I was able to do it
j'ai pu le faire	I could do it, I could have done it	I have been able to do it, I was able to do it.
je pus le faire	I could do it	I was able to do it
je pourrai le faire	.....	I shall be able to do it
je pourrais le faire	I could do it	I would be able to do it
j'avais pu le faire	.....	I had been able to do it
j'aurais pu le faire	.....	I would have been able to do it

(c) Mental ability is frequently expressed with *savoir*.

Je sais le faire. I can do it (lit.: I know how to do it).

(d) As with *devoir* [see § 62(b)], all notion of tense must be expressed with *pouvoir* rather than the dependent infinitive.

§ 65 Orthographical Changing Verbs

In the first conjugation there are certain classes of verbs which are regular in every respect except that the spelling has to make certain compensations for the pronunciation which remains consistent and regular.

(a) Verbs ending in *-cer*. The pronunciation of this verb remains entirely consistent but a cedilla (ç) must be written under the letter *c* whenever it occurs before the vowels *a* or *o* to prevent it from having a *k* pronunciation. Note the following examples for the verb *effacer* (to erase).

PRESENT PARTICIPLE	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE	PRETERIT
effaçant	j'efface	j'effaçais	j'effaçai
	tu effaces	tu effaçais	tu effaças
	il efface	il effaçait	il effaça
	nous effaçons	nous effaçions	nous effaçâmes
	vous effacez	vous effaciez	vous effaçâtes
	ils effacent	ils effaçaient	ils effacèrent

(b) Verbs ending in *-ger*. The pronunciation of this verb also remains entirely consistent but an *e* must be inserted after the letter *g* whenever it occurs before *a* or *o* so that the soft *zh* pronunciation

may be retained. Note the following examples for the verb *changer* (to change).

PRESENT PARTICIPLE	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE	PRETERIT
changeant	je change	je <i>changeais</i>	je <i>changeai</i>
	tu changes	tu <i>changeais</i>	tu <i>changeas</i>
	il change	il <i>changeait</i>	il <i>changea</i>
	nous <i>changeons</i>	nous <i>changions</i>	nous <i>changeâmes</i>
	vous changez	vous <i>changiez</i>	vous <i>changeâtes</i>
	ils changent	ils <i>changeaient</i>	ils <i>changèrent</i>

(c) Verbs in *-yer*. Such verbs alter both spelling and pronunciation. Whenever, in the conjugation, *y* occurs before a mute *e* verb ending, it changes to *i*. For the purposes of this rule, the *e* of the *er* infinitive ending when the infinitive is used as the stem for the future or conditional is considered to be a mute *e* and the pronunciation changes. Example: *nettoyer* (nètwayay) changes to *nettoierai* (nètwaray). Study the following illustrations of *nettoyer* (to clean):

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	FUTURE	CONDITIONAL
je <i>nettoie</i>	que je <i>nettoie</i>	je <i>nettoierai</i>	je <i>nettoierais</i>
tu <i>nettoies</i>	que tu <i>nettoies</i>	tu <i>nettoieras</i>	tu <i>nettoieras</i>
il <i>nettoie</i>	qu'il <i>nettoie</i>	il <i>nettoiera</i>	il <i>nettoierait</i>
nous <i>nettoyons</i>	que nous <i>nettoyions</i>	nous <i>nettoierons</i>	nous <i>nettoierions</i>
vous <i>nettoyez</i>	que vous <i>nettoyiez</i>	vous <i>nettoierez</i>	vous <i>nettoieriez</i>
ils <i>nettoient</i>	qu'ils <i>nettoient</i>	ils <i>nettoieront</i>	ils <i>nettoieraient</i>

(d) Verbs ending in “*e + consonant + er*.”

In such cases the rule that an “*e*” before a mute “*e*” takes a grave accent applies. For the purposes of the rule, the *e* of the *er* infinitive used as the stem for the future or conditional is a mute *e*. Note that the application of this rule means also a change in pronunciation; one says *vous menez* (voo m^ˆnay) but *ils mènent* (eel mèn), *mener* (m^ˆnay) but *mènerai* (mènray). Study carefully the following examples of *mener* (to lead).

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	FUTURE	CONDITIONAL
je <i>mène</i>	que je <i>mène</i>	je <i>mènerai</i>	je <i>mènerais</i>
tu <i>mènes</i>	que tu <i>mènes</i>	tu <i>mèneras</i>	tu <i>mènerais</i>
il <i>mène</i>	qu'il <i>mène</i>	il <i>mènera</i>	il <i>mènerait</i>
nous <i>menons</i>	que nous <i>menions</i>	nous <i>mènerons</i>	nous <i>mènerions</i>
vous <i>menez</i>	que vous <i>meniez</i>	vous <i>mènerez</i>	vous <i>mèneriez</i>
ils <i>mènent</i>	qu'ils <i>mènent</i>	ils <i>mèneront</i>	ils <i>mèneraient</i>

If the stem of the infinitive already has an acute *é*, this will likewise change to grave *è* before a mute *e*, except in the future and conditional. Note following examples of verb *espérer* (to hope).

PRESENT INDICATIVE		PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>j'espère</i>	nous espérons	que <i>j'espère</i>	que nous espérons
<i>tu espères</i>	vous espérez	que <i>tu espères</i>	que vous espériez
<i>il espère</i>	ils espèrent	qu' <i>il espère</i>	qu'ils espèrent

Verbs ending *-eler* and some verbs ending *-eter* double the consonant before a mute *e*, which phonetically has the same effect as writing a grave accent. Note *appeler* (to call).

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	FUTURE	CONDITIONAL
<i>j'appelle</i>	que <i>j'appelle</i>	<i>j'appellerai</i>	<i>j'appellerais</i>
<i>tu appelles</i>	que <i>tu appelles</i>	<i>tu appelleras</i>	<i>tu appellerais</i>
<i>il appelle</i>	qu' <i>il appelle</i>	<i>il appellera</i>	<i>il appellerait</i>
nous appelons	que nous appelions	nous appellerons	nous appellerions
vous appelez	que vous appeliez	vous appellerez	vous appelleriez
ils appellent	qu'ils appellent	ils appelleront	ils appelleraient

§ 66 Irregular Verbs

(a) Verbs are said to be irregular when they do not conform to the pattern of the three regular verbs *donner*, *finir* and *vendre* which have been used as illustrations for each tense. Even in irregular verbs, distinct patterns can be noted and studied.

(b) In the second conjugation there is a class of irregular verbs, of which *dormir* (turn to next page) is an example, which follow an almost regular pattern. Other such verbs are *partir*, *sentir*, *servir*, *sortir*. These verbs drop not only the infinitive ending to form the present singular but also the final consonant of the stem (*dor-*, *par-*, *sen-*, *ser-*, *sor-*); they then add *-s*, *-s*, *-t*. All other forms of the verb are regular except that the characteristic *-iss-* of the second conjugation is missing in the present participle, plural of the present tense, imperfect indicative, present subjunctive, and plural imperative.

(c) Another characteristic feature of irregular verbs is that many of them have a change of vowel in the present tense, the first and second plural having the vowel of the infinitive and the entire singular and the third plural having another vowel. Such a verb is *pouvoir* (to be able; can):

PRESENT INDICATIVE	
<i>je peux</i>	nous pouvons
<i>tu peux</i>	vous pouvez
<i>il peut</i>	ils peuvent

(d) Generally speaking the following relationships should be carefully observed in the study of irregular verbs.

(1) *The present participle.* Note first its relation to the infinitive. If it is not regularly derived from the infinitive, it will be italicized. If it is regular, it will be in bold face. From it, we get the following:

Present Plural
Imperfect Indicative
Imperative Plural
Present Subjunctive

If these forms are regularly derived from the present participle, they will be italicized. If not, they will bear an asterisk. If they derive regularly from a present participle which is itself regular, they will be in bold face (used for completely regular forms).

(2) *Infinitive.* The *future tense* is derived from the infinitive. If the future tense of the irregular verb is regular, it will be in bold face. If the future is irregular, it will bear an asterisk. Whether the future is irregular or not, the *conditional* will always have the same stem.

(3) *Past Participle.* If this is regularly derived from the infinitive, it will be in bold face. If it is irregular, it will be light face roman. Frequently there is a relationship between the *past participle* and the *preterit*. If there is such a relationship, it will be indicated by the symbol (§).

(4) *Preterit.* The *imperfect subjunctive* will always derive from the *preterit*, whether that form is regular or irregular. This relationship is denoted by the symbol (§), if the past participle is the basis for the derivation of the preterit. If the preterit is not related to the past participle, the connection between the preterit and the imperfect subjunctive is pointed out by the dagger symbol (†). To form the imperfect subjunctive, remove from the forms of the preterit the following letters *-s, -s, -t, -mes, -tes, -rent*; add to what remains the subjunctive endings *-sse, -sses, -t, -ssions, -ssiez, -ssent*.

Model 2nd Conjugation Irregular Verbs

INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES	INDICATIVE			
	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PRETERIT	FUTURE
2d Class <i>-ir</i> Verbs Dormir (<i>to sleep</i>) dormant dormi	dors dors dort dormons dormez dorment	dormais dormais dormait dormions dormiez dormaient	dormis dormis dormit dormimes dormîtes dormirent	dormirai dormiras dormira dormirons dormirez dormiront
	COMPOUND PAST	PLUPERFECT	PAST ANTERIOR	FUTURE PERFECT
	ai dormi as dormi a dormi avons dormi avez dormi ont dormi	avais dormi avais dormi avait dormi avions dormi aviez dormi avaient dormi	eus dormi eus dormi eut dormi eûmes dormi eûtes dormi eurent dormi	aurai dormi auras dormi aura dormi aurons dormi aurez dormi auront dormi

Auxiliary Verbs

Auxiliary Verb Avoir (<i>to have</i>) ayant eu	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PRETERIT	FUTURE
	ai as a avons avez ont	avais avais avait avons aviez avaient	eus eus eut eûmes eûtes eurent	aurai auras aura aurons aurez auront
	COMPOUND PAST	PLUPERFECT	PAST ANTERIOR	FUTURE PERFECT
	ai eu as eu a eu avons eu avez eu ont eu	avais eu avais eu avait eu avons eu aviez vu avaient eu	eus eu eus eu eut eu eûmes eu eûtes eu eurent eu	aurai eu auras eu aura eu aurons eu aurez eu auront eu
Auxiliary Verb Etre (<i>to be</i>) étant été	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PRETERIT	FUTURE
	suis es est sommes êtes sont	étais étais était étions étiez étaient	fus fus fut fûmes fûtes furent	serai seras sera serons serez seront
	COMPOUND PAST	PLUPERFECT	PAST ANTERIOR	FUTURE PERFECT
	ai été as été a été avons été avez été ont été	avais été avais été avait été avons été aviez été avaient été	eus été eus été eut été eûmes été eûtes été eurent été	aurai été auras été aura été aurons été aurez été auront été

MODEL 2ND CONJUGATION IRREGULAR VERBS

CONDITIONAL	IMPERATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT CONDITIONAL		PRESENT	IMPERFECT
dormirais		dorme	dormisse
dormirais	dors	dormes	dormisses
dormirait		dorme	dormît
dormirions	dormons	dormions	dormissions
dormiriez	dormez	dormiez	dormissiez
dormiraient		dorment	dormissent
PAST CONDITIONAL		PAST	PLUPERFECT
aurais dormi		aie dormi	eusse dormi
aurais dormi		aies dormi	eusses dormi
aurait dormi		ait dormi	eût dormi
aurions dormi		ayons dormi	eussions dormi
auriez dormi		ayez dormi	eussiez dormi
auraient dormi		aient dormi	eussent dormi

AUXILIARY VERBS

PRESENT CONDITIONAL		PRESENT	IMPERFECT
aurais		aie	eusse
aurais	aie	aies	eusses
aurait		ait	eût
aurions	ayons	ayons	eussions
auriez	ayez	ayez	eussiez
auraient		aient	eussent
PAST CONDITIONAL		PAST	PLUPERFECT
aurais eu		aie eu	eusse eu
aurais eu		aies eu	eusses eu
aurait eu		ait eu	eût eu
aurions eu		ayons eu	eussions eu
auriez eu		ayez eu	eussiez eu
auraient eu		aient eu	eussent eu
PRESENT CONDITIONAL		PRETERIT	IMPERFECT
serais		sois	fusse
serais	sois	sois	fusses
serait		soit	fût
serions	soyons	soyons	fussions
seriez	soyez	soyez	fussiez
seraient		soient	fussent
PAST CONDITIONAL		PAST	PLUPERFECT
aurais été		aie été	eusse été
aurais été		aies été	eusses été
aurait été		ait été	eût été
aurions été		ayons été	eussions été
auriez été		ayez été	eussiez été
auraient été		aient été	eussent été

Irregular Verbs

INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES	INDICATIVE			
	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PRETERIT	COMPOUND PAST
1. Acquérir (to acquire) <i>acquérant</i> § acquis	*acquiers *acquiers *acquiert <i>acquérons</i> acquérez *acquièrez	<i>acquérais</i> <i>acquérais</i> <i>acquérait</i> <i>acquériions</i> <i>acquériez</i> <i>acquéraient</i>	§ acquis acquis acquit acquimes acquites acquirent	ai § acquis as acquis a acquis avons acquis avez acquis ont acquis
2. Aller (to go) <i>allant</i> allé	*vais *vas *va <i>allons</i> <i>allez</i> *vont	<i>allais</i> <i>allais</i> <i>allait</i> <i>allions</i> <i>alliez</i> <i>allaient</i>	allai allas alla allâmes allâtes allèrent	suis allé(e) es allé(e) est allé(e) sommes allé(e)s êtes allé(e)s sont allé(e)s
3. S'asseoir (to seat) <i>asseyant</i> § assis	*assieds ¹ *assieds *assied <i>asseyons</i> asseyez asseyent	<i>asseyais</i> ¹ <i>asseyais</i> <i>asseyait</i> <i>asseyions</i> asseyiez asseyaient	§ assis assis assit assimes assites assirent	me suis § assis(e) t'es assis(e) s'est assis(e) nous sommes assis(es) vous êtes assis(e)s se sont assis(es)
<i>assoyant</i> ²	*assois *assois *assoit <i>assoyons</i> assoyez assoient	<i>assoyais</i> <i>assoyais</i> <i>assoyait</i> <i>assoyions</i> assoyiez assoyaient		
4. Battre (to beat) <i>battant</i> § battu	*bats *bats *bat <i>battions</i> <i>battez</i> battent	<i>battais</i> <i>battais</i> <i>battait</i> <i>battions</i> <i>battiez</i> battaient	battis battis battit battimes battîtes battirent	ai § battu as battu a battu avons battu avez battu ont battu
5. Boire (to drink) <i>buvant</i> § bu	*bois *bois *boit <i>buvons</i> buvez boivent	<i>buvais</i> <i>buvais</i> <i>buvait</i> <i>buvions</i> buviez buvaient	§ bus bus but bûmes bûtes burent	ai § bu as bu a bu avons bu avez bu ont bu

¹ For lack of space, the reflexive pronoun objects are omitted. These should be understood to read: *je m'assieds, je m'asseyais*, etc.

² This verb has alternate forms.

IRREGULAR VERBS

		IMPERATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	
FUTURE	CONDITIONAL		PRESENT	IMPERFECT
*acquerrai acquerras acquerra acquerrons acquerrez acquerront	*acquerrais acquerrais acquerrait acquerrions acquerriez acquerraient	*acquiens <i>acquérons</i> <i>acquérez</i>	*acquière acquières acquière <i>acquériions</i> <i>acquériez</i> acquièrent	§ acquisse acquisses acquît acquissions acquissiez acquissent
*irai iras ira irons irez iront	*irais irais irait irions iriez iraient	*va <i>allons</i> <i>allez</i>	*aille *ailles *aille <i>allions</i> <i>alliez</i> *aillent	allasse allasses allât allassions allassiez allassent
*assiérai assiéras assiéra assiérons assiérez assiéront	*assiérais assiérais assiérait assiérions assiériez assiéraient	*assieds-toi <i>asseyons-nous</i> <i>asseyez-vous</i>	<i>asseye</i> <i>asseyes</i> <i>asseye</i> <i>asseyions</i> <i>asseyiez</i> <i>asseyent</i>	§ assisse assisses assît assissions assissiez assissent
*assoirai assoiras assoira assoirons assoirez assoiront	*assoirais assoirais assoirait assoirions assoiriez assoiraient	*assois-toi <i>assoyons-nous</i> <i>assoyez-vous</i>	*assoie *assoies *assoie <i>assoyions</i> <i>assoyiez</i> *assoient	
battraï battras battra battrons battrez battront	battrais battrais battrait battrions battriez battraient	*bats <i>battons</i> <i>battez</i>	batte battes batte battions battiez battent	battisse battisses battît battissions battissiez battissent
boirai boiras boira boirons boirez boiront	boirais boirais boirait boirions boiriez boiraient	*bois <i>buvons</i> <i>buvez</i>	*boive *boives *boive <i>buvions</i> <i>buviez</i> *boivent	§ busse busses bût bussions bussiez bussent

INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES	INDICATIVE			
	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PRETERIT	COMPOUND PAST
6. Conclure (to conclude) <i>concluant</i> § <i>conclu</i>	* <i>conclus</i> * <i>conclus</i> * <i>conclut</i> <i>concluons</i> <i>concluez</i> <i>concluent</i>	<i>concluais</i> <i>concluais</i> <i>concluait</i> <i>concluions</i> <i>concluiez</i> <i>concluiaient</i>	§ <i>conclus</i> <i>conclus</i> <i>conclut</i> <i>conclûmes</i> <i>conclûtes</i> <i>conclurent</i>	ai § <i>conclu</i> as <i>conclu</i> a <i>conclu</i> avons <i>conclu</i> avez <i>conclu</i> ont <i>conclu</i>
7. Conduire (to lead) <i>conduisant</i> § <i>conduit</i>	* <i>conduis</i> * <i>conduis</i> * <i>conduit</i> <i>conduisons</i> <i>conduisez</i> <i>conduisent</i>	<i>conduisais</i> <i>conduisais</i> <i>conduisait</i> <i>conduisions</i> <i>conduisiez</i> <i>conduisaient</i>	† <i>conduisis</i> <i>conduisis</i> <i>conduisit</i> <i>conduisîmes</i> <i>conduisîtes</i> <i>conduisirent</i>	ai § <i>conduit</i> as <i>conduit</i> a <i>conduit</i> avons <i>conduit</i> avez <i>conduit</i> ont <i>conduit</i>
8. Connaître (to be acquainted) <i>connaissant</i> § <i>connu</i>	* <i>connais</i> * <i>connais</i> * <i>connait</i> <i>connaissons</i> <i>connaissez</i> <i>connaissent</i>	<i>connaissais</i> <i>connaissais</i> <i>connaissait</i> <i>connaissions</i> <i>connaissiez</i> <i>connaissaient</i>	§ <i>connus</i> <i>connus</i> <i>connut</i> <i>connûmes</i> <i>connûtes</i> <i>connurent</i>	ai § <i>connu</i> as <i>connu</i> a <i>connu</i> avons <i>connu</i> avez <i>connu</i> ont <i>connu</i>
9. Coudre (to sew) <i>cousant</i> § <i>cousu</i>	<i>couds</i> <i>couds</i> <i>coud</i> <i>cousons</i> <i>cousez</i> <i>cousent</i>	<i>cousais</i> <i>cousais</i> <i>cousait</i> <i>couions</i> <i>cousiez</i> <i>cousaient</i>	† <i>cousis</i> <i>cousis</i> <i>cousit</i> <i>cousîmes</i> <i>cousîtes</i> <i>cousirent</i>	ai § <i>cousu</i> as <i>cousu</i> a <i>cousu</i> avons <i>cousu</i> avez <i>cousu</i> ont <i>cousu</i>
10. Courir (to run) <i>courant</i> § <i>couru</i>	* <i>cours</i> * <i>cours</i> * <i>court</i> <i>courons</i> <i>courez</i> <i>courent</i>	<i>courais</i> <i>courais</i> <i>courait</i> <i>courions</i> <i>couriez</i> <i>couraient</i>	§ <i>courus</i> <i>courus</i> <i>courut</i> <i>courûmes</i> <i>courûtes</i> <i>coururent</i>	ai § <i>couru</i> as <i>couru</i> a <i>couru</i> avons <i>couru</i> avez <i>couru</i> ont <i>couru</i>
11. Craindre (to fear) <i>craignant</i> § <i>craint</i>	* <i>crains</i> * <i>crains</i> * <i>craint</i> <i>craignons</i> <i>craignez</i> <i>craignent</i>	<i>craignais</i> <i>craignais</i> <i>craignait</i> <i>craignons</i> <i>craigniez</i> <i>craignaient</i>	† <i>craignis</i> <i>craignis</i> <i>craignit</i> <i>craignîmes</i> <i>craignîtes</i> <i>craignirent</i>	ai § <i>craint</i> as <i>craint</i> a <i>craint</i> avons <i>craint</i> avez <i>craint</i> ont <i>craint</i>

		IMPERATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	
FUTURE	CONDITIONAL		PRESENT	IMPERFECT
conclurai concluras conclura conclurons conclurez concluront	conclurais conclurais conclurait conclurions concluriez concluraient	*conclus <i>concluons</i> <i>concluez</i>	<i>conclue</i> <i>conclues</i> <i>conclue</i> <i>concluions</i> <i>concluez</i> <i>concluent</i>	§ conclusse conclusses conclût conclussions conclussiez conclussent
conduirai conduiras conduira conduirons conduirez conduiront	conduirais conduirais conduirait conduirions conduiriez conduiraient	*conduis <i>conduisons</i> <i>conduisez</i>	<i>conduise</i> <i>conduises</i> <i>conduise</i> <i>conduisions</i> <i>conduissiez</i> <i>conduisent</i>	† conduisisse conduisisses conduisît conduissions conduissiez conduissent
connaîtrai connaîtrás connaîtra connaîtrons connaîtrez connaîtront	connaîtrais connaîtrais connaîtrait connaîtrions connaîtriez connaîtraient	*connais <i>connaissons</i> <i>connaissez</i>	<i>connaisse</i> <i>connaises</i> <i>connaisse</i> <i>connaissons</i> <i>connaissez</i> <i>connassent</i>	§ connusse connusses connût connussions connussiez connussent
coudrai coudras coudra coudrons coudrez coudront	coudrais coudrais coudrait coudrions coudriez coudraient	couds <i>couons</i> <i>cousez</i>	<i>couse</i> <i>couses</i> <i>couse</i> <i>couions</i> <i>cousiez</i> <i>couent</i>	† couisise couisises couisît couissions couissiez couissent
* courrai courras courra courrons courrez courront	* courrais courrais courrait courrions courriez courraient	* cours <i>couons</i> <i>courez</i>	<i>coure</i> <i>coures</i> <i>coure</i> <i>courions</i> <i>couriez</i> <i>courent</i>	§ courusse courusses courût courussions courussiez courussent
craindrai craindras craindra craindrions craindrez craindront	craindrais craindrais craindrait craindrions craindriez craindraient	* crains <i>crainons</i> <i>craignez</i>	<i>craigne</i> <i>craignes</i> <i>craigne</i> <i>crainions</i> <i>craigniez</i> <i>craignent</i>	† craignisse craignisses craignît craignissions craignissiez craignissent

INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES	INDICATIVE			
	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PRETERIT	COMPOUND PAST
12. Croire (to believe) <i>croyant</i> § cru	*crois *crois *croit <i>croyons</i> <i>croyez</i> *croient	<i>croyais</i> <i>croyais</i> <i>croyait</i> <i>croyions</i> <i>croyiez</i> <i>croyaient</i>	§ crus crus crut crûmes crûtes crurent	ai § cru as cru a cru avons cru avez cru ont cru
13. Croître (to grow) <i>croissant</i> § crû	*crois *crois *croît <i>croissons</i> <i>croissez</i> <i>croissent</i>	<i>croissais</i> <i>croissais</i> <i>croissait</i> <i>croissions</i> <i>croissiez</i> <i>croissaient</i>	§ crûs crûs crût crûmes crûtes crûrent	ai § crû as crû a crû avons crû avez crû ont crû
14. Cueillir (to pick) <i>cueillant</i> cueilli	<i>cueille</i> <i>cueilles</i> <i>cueille</i> <i>cueillons</i> <i>cueillez</i> <i>cueillent</i>	<i>cueillais</i> <i>cueillais</i> <i>cueillait</i> <i>cueillions</i> <i>cueilliez</i> <i>cueillaient</i>	cueillis cueillis cueillit cueillimes cueillîtes cueillirent	ai cueilli as cueilli a cueilli avons cueilli avez cueilli ont cueilli
15. Devoir (to owe, have to) <i>devant</i> § dû, due ¹	*dois *dois *doit <i>devons</i> <i>devez</i> *doivent	<i>devais</i> <i>devais</i> <i>devait</i> <i>devions</i> <i>deviez</i> <i>devaient</i>	§ dus dus dut dûmes dûtes durent	ai § dû as dû a dû avons dû avez dû ont dû
16. Dire (to say, tell) <i>disant</i> § dit	*dis *dis *dit <i>disons</i> *dites <i>disent</i>	<i>disais</i> <i>disais</i> <i>disait</i> <i>disions</i> <i>disiez</i> <i>disaient</i>	§ dis dis dit dûmes dites dirent	ai § dit as dit a dit avons dit avez dit ont dit
17. Ecrire (to write) <i>écrivait</i> § écrit	*écris *écris *écrit <i>écrivons</i> <i>écrivez</i> <i>écrivent</i>	<i>écrivais</i> <i>écrivais</i> <i>écrivait</i> <i>écrivions</i> <i>écriviez</i> <i>écrivaient</i>	† écrivis écrivis écrivit écrivîmes écrivîtes écrivirent	ai § écrit as écrit a écrit avons écrit avez écrit ont écrit

¹ The masculine singular form of the past participle takes a circumflex accent to distinguish it from the word *du*. The other forms have no accent (*dû, due, dus, dues*).

		IMPERATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	
FUTURE	CONDITIONAL		PRESENT	IMPERFECT
croirai croiras croira croirons croirez croiront	croirais croirais croirait croirions croiriez croiraient	*crois <i>croyons</i> <i>croyez</i>	*croie *croies *croie <i>croyions</i> <i>croyiez</i> *croient	§ crusse crusses crût crussions crussiez crussent
croitrai croitras croitra croitrons croîtrez croîtront	croitrais croitrais croitrait croitrons croitriez croitraient	*crois <i>croissons</i> <i>croissez</i>	<i>croisse</i> <i>croisses</i> <i>croisse</i> <i>croissions</i> <i>croissiez</i> <i>croissent</i>	§ crusse crusses crût crussions crussiez crussent
*cueillera cueilleras cueillera cueillerons cueillerez cueilleront	*cueillerais cueillerais cueillera cueillerions cueilleriez cueilleraient	*cueille <i>cueillons</i> <i>cueillez</i>	<i>cueille</i> <i>cueilles</i> <i>cueille</i> <i>cueillions</i> <i>cueilliez</i> <i>cueillent</i>	cueillisse cueillisses cueillit cueillissions cueillissiez cueillissent
*devrai devras devra devrons devrez devront	*devrais devrais devrait devrions devriez devraient	*dois <i>devons</i> <i>devez</i>	*doive *doives *doive <i>devions</i> <i>deviez</i> *doivent	§ dusse dusses dût dussions dussiez dussent
dirai diras dira dirons direz diront	dirais dirais dirait dirions diriez diraient	*dis <i>disons</i> *dites	<i>dise</i> <i>dises</i> <i>dise</i> <i>disions</i> <i>disiez</i> <i>disent</i>	§ dise disses dît dissions dissiez dissent
écrirai écriras écrira écrivons écrirez écrivront	écrivais écrivais écrivait écrivions écriviriez écrivraient	*écri <i>écrivons</i> <i>écrivez</i>	<i>écrive</i> <i>écrivés</i> <i>écrive</i> <i>écrivions</i> <i>écriviez</i> <i>écrivent</i>	† écrivisse écrivisses écrivit écrivissions écrivissiez écrivissent

296 [§66] IRREGULAR VERBS

INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES	INDICATIVE			
	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PRETERIT	COMPOUND PAST
18. Envoyer (to send) <i>envoyant</i> envoyé	* <i>envoie</i> * <i>envoies</i> * <i>envoie</i> <i>envoyons</i> <i>envoyez</i> * <i>envoient</i>	<i>envoyais</i> <i>envoyais</i> <i>envoyait</i> <i>envoyions</i> <i>envoyiez</i> <i>envoyaient</i>	envoyai envoyas envoya envoyâmes envoyâtes envoyèrent	ai envoyé as envoyé a envoyé avons envoyé avez envoyé ont envoyé
19. Faire (to do, make) <i>faisant</i> ¹ § fait	* <i>fais</i> * <i>fais</i> * <i>fait</i> <i>faisons</i> * <i>faites</i> * <i>font</i>	<i>faisais</i> ¹ <i>faisais</i> <i>faisait</i> <i>faisions</i> <i>faisiez</i> <i>faisaient</i>	† fis fis fit fimes fîtes firent	ai § fait as fait a fait avons fait avez fait ont fait
20. Falloir ² (to be necessary) § fallu	* <i>il faut</i>	<i>il fallait</i>	§ <i>il fallut</i>	<i>il a § fallu</i>
21. Fuir (to flee) <i>fuyant</i> § fui	* <i>fuis</i> * <i>fuis</i> * <i>fuit</i> <i>fuyons</i> <i>fuyez</i> * <i>fuient</i>	<i>fuyais</i> <i>fuyais</i> <i>fuyait</i> <i>fuyions</i> <i>fuyiez</i> <i>fuyaient</i>	§ <i>fuis</i> <i>fuis</i> <i>fuit</i> <i>fûmes</i> <i>fûtes</i> <i>furent</i>	ai § <i>fui</i> as <i>fui</i> a <i>fui</i> avons <i>fui</i> avez <i>fui</i> ont <i>fui</i>
22. Haïr (to hate) <i>haïssant</i> <i>haï</i>	* <i>haïs</i> * <i>haïs</i> * <i>haït</i> <i>haïssons</i> <i>haïssez</i> <i>haïssent</i>	<i>haïssais</i> <i>haïssais</i> <i>haïssait</i> <i>haïssions</i> <i>haïssiez</i> <i>haïssaient</i>	<i>haïs</i> <i>haïs</i> <i>haït</i> <i>haïmes</i> <i>haïtes</i> <i>haïrent</i>	ai <i>haï</i> as <i>haï</i> a <i>haï</i> avons <i>haï</i> avez <i>haï</i> ont <i>haï</i>
23. Lire (to read) <i>lisant</i> § lu	* <i>lis</i> * <i>lis</i> * <i>lit</i> <i>lisons</i> <i>lisez</i> <i>lisent</i>	<i>lisais</i> <i>lisais</i> <i>lisait</i> <i>lisions</i> <i>lisiez</i> <i>lisaient</i>	§ <i>lus</i> <i>lus</i> <i>lut</i> <i>lûmes</i> <i>lûtes</i> <i>lurent</i>	ai § <i>lu</i> as <i>lu</i> a <i>lu</i> avons <i>lu</i> avez <i>lu</i> ont <i>lu</i>

¹ The *ai* of the stem of these forms is pronounced like mute *e*. (*zh^e fe^zè*).

² Used in third person singular only.

		IMPERATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	
FUTURE	CONDITIONAL		PRESENT	IMPERFECT
*enverrai enverras enverra enverrons enverrez enverront	*enverrais enverrais enverrait enverrions enverriez enverraient	* <i>envoie</i> <i>envoyons</i> <i>envoyez</i>	* <i>envoie</i> * <i>envoies</i> * <i>envoie</i> <i>envoyions</i> <i>envoyiez</i> * <i>envoient</i>	envoyasse envoyasses envoyât envoyassions envoyassiez envoyassent
*ferai feras fera ferons ferez feront	*ferais ferais ferait ferions feriez feraient	* <i>fais</i> <i>faisons</i> * <i>faites</i>	* <i>fasse</i> <i>fasses</i> <i>fasse</i> <i>fassions</i> <i>fassiez</i> <i>fassent</i>	† <i>fisse</i> <i>fisses</i> <i>fît</i> <i>fissions</i> <i>fissiez</i> <i>fissent</i>
*il faudra	*il faudrait		*il faille	§ il fallût
fuirai fuiras fuira fuirons fuirez fuiront	fuirais fuirais fuirait fuirions fuiriez fuiraient	* <i>fuis</i> <i>fuyons</i> <i>fuyez</i>	* <i>fuië</i> * <i>fuiës</i> * <i>fuië</i> <i>fuyions</i> <i>fuyiez</i> * <i>fuiënt</i>	§ <i>fuisse</i> <i>fuisse</i> <i>fût</i> <i>fussions</i> <i>fussiez</i> <i>fussent</i>
haïrai haïras haïra haïrons haïrez haïront	haïrais haïrais haïrait haïrions haïriez haïraient	* <i>hais</i> <i>haïssons</i> <i>haïssez</i>	<i>haïsse</i> <i>haïsses</i> <i>haïsse</i> <i>haïssions</i> <i>haïssiez</i> <i>haïssent</i>	haïsse haïsses haït haïssions haïssiez haïssent
lirai liras lira lirons lirez liront	lirais lirais lirait lirions liriez liraient	* <i>lis</i> <i>lisons</i> <i>lisez</i>	<i>lise</i> <i>lises</i> <i>lise</i> <i>lisions</i> <i>lisiez</i> <i>lisent</i>	§ <i>lusse</i> <i>lusses</i> <i>lût</i> <i>lussions</i> <i>lussiez</i> <i>lussent</i>

298 [§66] IRREGULAR VERBS

INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES	INDICATIVE			
	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PRETERIT	COMPOUND PAST
24. Mettre (to put) <i>mettant</i> § mis	*mets *mets *met <i>mettons</i> <i>mettez</i> <i>mettent</i>	<i>mettais</i> <i>mettais</i> <i>mettait</i> <i>mettions</i> <i>mettiez</i> <i>mettaient</i>	§ mis mis mit mîmes mîtes mirent	ai § mis as mis a mis avons mis avez mis ont mis
25. Mourir (to die) <i>mourant</i> § mort	*meurs *meurs *meurt <i>mourons</i> <i>mourez</i> *meurent	<i>mourais</i> <i>mourais</i> <i>mourait</i> <i>mourions</i> <i>mouriez</i> <i>mouraient</i>	† mourus mourus mourut mourûmes mourûtes moururent	suis § mort(e) es mort(e) est mort(e) sommes mort(e)s êtes mort(e)(s) sont mort(e)s
26. Naître (to be born) <i>naissant</i> § né	*nais *nais *naît <i>naïssons</i> <i>naïssez</i> <i>naissent</i>	<i>naïssais</i> <i>naïssais</i> <i>naïssait</i> <i>naïssions</i> <i>naïssez</i> <i>naïssaient</i>	† naquis naquis naquit naquîmes naquîtes naquirent	suis § né(e) es né(e) est né(e) sommes né(e)s êtes né(e)(s) sont né(e)s
27. Ouvrir (to open) <i>ouvrant</i> § ouvert	<i>ouvre</i> <i>ouvres</i> <i>ouvre</i> <i>ouvrons</i> <i>ouvrez</i> <i>ouvrent</i>	<i>ouvrais</i> <i>ouvrais</i> <i>ouvrait</i> <i>ouvriions</i> <i>ouvriez</i> <i>ouvraient</i>	† ouvris ouvris ouvrit ouvriîmes ouvriîtes ouvrirent	ai § ouvert as ouvert a ouvert avons ouvert avez ouvert ont ouvert
28. Peindre (to paint) <i>peignant</i> § peint	peins peins peint <i>peignons</i> <i>peignez</i> <i>peignent</i>	<i>peignais</i> <i>peignais</i> <i>peignait</i> <i>peignions</i> <i>peigniez</i> <i>peignaient</i>	† peignis peignis peignit peignîmes peignîtes peignirent	ai § peint as peint a peint avons peint avez peint ont peint
29. Plaire (to please) <i>plaisant</i> § plu	*plais *plais *plaît <i>plaisons</i> <i>plaisez</i> <i>plaisent</i>	<i>plaisais</i> <i>plaisais</i> <i>plaisait</i> <i>plaisions</i> <i>plaisiez</i> <i>plaisaient</i>	§ plus plus plut plûmes plûtes plurent	ai § plu as plu a plu avons plu avez plu ont plu

		IMPERATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	
FUTURE	CONDITIONAL		PRESENT	IMPERFECT
mettrai mettras mettra mettrons mettrez mettront	mettrais mettrais mettrait mettrions mettriez mettraient	*mets <i>mettons</i> <i>mettez</i>	<i>mette</i> <i>mettes</i> <i>mette</i> <i>mettions</i> <i>mettiez</i> <i>mettent</i>	§ misse misses mît missions missiez missent
*mourrai mourras mourra mourrons mourrez mourront	*mourrais mourrais mourrait mourrions mourriez mourraient	*meurs <i>mourons</i> <i>mourez</i>	*meure *meures *meure <i>mourions</i> <i>mouriez</i> *meurent	† mourusse mourusses mourût mourussions mourussiez mourussent
naîtrai naîtras naîtra naîtrons naîtrez naîtront	naîtrais naîtrais naîtrait naîtrions naîtrez naîtraient	*nais <i>naissons</i> <i>naissez</i>	<i>naisse</i> <i>naisses</i> <i>naisse</i> <i>naissons</i> <i>naissez</i> <i>naissent</i>	† naquisse naquisses naquît naquissions naquissiez naquissent
ouvrirai ouvriras ouvrira ouvrirons ouvrirez ouvriront	ouvrirais ouvrirais ouvrirait ouvriions ouvriez ouvriraient	<i>ouvre.</i> <i>ouvrons</i> <i>ouvrez</i>	<i>ouvre</i> <i>ouvres</i> <i>ouvre</i> <i>ouvriions</i> <i>ouvriez</i> <i>ouvrent</i>	† ouvrisse ouvrisse ouvrit ouvrissons ouvrissez ouvrisse
peindrai peindras peindra peindrons peindrez peindront	peindrais peindrais peindrait peindrions peindriez peindraient	*peins <i>peignons</i> <i>peignez</i>	<i>peigne</i> <i>peignes</i> <i>peigne</i> <i>peignons</i> <i>peigniez</i> <i>peignent</i>	† peignisse peignisses peignît peignissions peignissiez peignent
plairai plairas plaira plairons plairez plairont	plairais plairais plairait plairions plairez plairaient	*plais <i>plaisons</i> <i>plaisez</i>	<i>plaise</i> <i>plaises</i> <i>plaise</i> <i>plaisons</i> <i>plaisez</i> <i>plaisent</i>	§ plusse plusses plût plussions plussiez plussent

300 [§66] IRREGULAR VERBS

INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES	INDICATIVE			
	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PRETERIT	COMPOUND PAST
30. Pleuvoir ¹ (to rain) <i>pleuvant</i> § plu	*il pleut	<i>il pleuvait</i>	il § plut	il a § plu
31. Pouvoir (to be able) <i>pouvant</i> § pu	*peux, puis *peux *peut <i>pouvons</i> <i>pouvez</i> *peuvent	<i>pouvais</i> <i>pouvais</i> <i>pouvait</i> <i>pouvions</i> <i>pouviez</i> <i>pouvaient</i>	§ pus pus put pûmes pûtes purent	ai § pu as pu a pu avons pu avez pu ont pu
32. Prendre (to take) <i>prenant</i> § pris	prends prends prend <i>prenons</i> <i>prenez</i> *prennent	<i>prenais</i> <i>prenais</i> <i>prenait</i> <i>prenions</i> <i>preniez</i> <i>prenaient</i>	§ pris pris prit prîmes prîtes prirent	ai § pris as pris a pris avons pris avez pris ont pris
33. Recevoir (to receive) <i>recevant</i> § reçu	*reçois *reçois *reçoit <i>recevons</i> <i>recevez</i> *reçoivent	<i>recevais</i> <i>recevais</i> <i>recevait</i> <i>recevions</i> <i>receviez</i> <i>recevaient</i>	§ reçus reçus reçut reçûmes reçûtes reçurent	ai § reçu as reçu a reçu avons reçu avez reçu ont reçu
34. Résoudre (to resolve, to solve) <i>résolvant</i> § résolu	*résous *résous *résout <i>résolvons</i> <i>résolvez</i> <i>résolvent</i>	<i>résolvais</i> <i>résolvais</i> <i>résolvait</i> <i>résolvions</i> <i>résolviez</i> <i>résolvaient</i>	§ résolus résolus résolut résolûmes résolûtes résolurent	ai § résolu as résolu a résolu avons résolu avez résolu ont résolu
35. Rire (to laugh) <i>riant</i> § ri	*ris *ris *rit <i>riions</i> <i>riez</i> <i>rient</i>	<i>riaïs</i> <i>riaïs</i> <i>riaït</i> <i>riions</i> <i>riiez</i> <i>riaïent</i>	§ ris ris rit rîmes rîtes rirent	ai § ri as ri a ri avons ri avez ri ont ri

¹ Used only in third person singular.

INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES	INDICATIVE			
	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PRETERIT	COMPOUND PAST
36. Savoir (to know) <i>sachant</i> § su	sais sais sait savons savez savent	savais savais savait savions saviez savaient	§ sus sus sut sûmes sûtes surent	ai § su as su a su avons su avez su ont su
37. Suffire (to be sufficient) <i>suffisant</i> suffi	*suffis *suffis *suffit <i>suffisons</i> <i>suffisez</i> <i>suffisent</i>	<i>suffisais</i> <i>suffisais</i> <i>suffisait</i> <i>suffisions</i> <i>suffisiez</i> <i>suffisaient</i>	suffis suffis suffit suffîmes suffîtes suffirent	ai suffi as suffi a suffi avons suffi avez suffi ont suffi
38. Suivre (to follow) <i>suisvant</i> § suivi	*suis *suis *suit <i>suivons</i> <i>suivez</i> <i>suivent</i>	<i>suivais</i> <i>suivais</i> <i>suivait</i> <i>suivions</i> <i>suiviez</i> <i>suivaient</i>	§ suivis suivis suivit suivîmes suivîtes suivirent	ai § suivi as suivi a suivi avons suivi avez suivi ont suivi
39. Tenir (to hold, keep) <i>tenant</i> § tenu	*tiens *tiens *tient <i>tenons</i> <i>tenez</i> *tiennent	<i>tenais</i> <i>tenais</i> <i>tenait</i> <i>tenions</i> <i>teniez</i> <i>tenaient</i>	† tins tins tint tîmes tîmes tîmes tinrent	ai § tenu as tenu a tenu avons tenu avez tenu ont tenu
40. Vaincre (to conquer) <i>vainquant</i> § vaincu	*vains *vains *vainc <i>vainquons</i> <i>vainquez</i> <i>vainquent</i>	<i>vainquais</i> <i>vainquais</i> <i>vainquait</i> <i>vainquions</i> <i>vainquiez</i> <i>vainquaient</i>	† vainquis vainquis vainquit vainquîmes vainquîtes vainquirent	ai § vaincu as vaincu a vaincu avons vaincu avez vaincu ont vaincu
41. Valoir (to be worth) <i>valant</i> § valu	*vaut *vaut *vaut <i>valons</i> <i>valez</i> <i>valent</i>	<i>valais</i> <i>valais</i> <i>valait</i> <i>valions</i> <i>valiez</i> <i>valaient</i>	§ valus valus valut valûmes valûtes valurent	ai § valu as valu a valu avons valu avez valu ont valu

		IMPERATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	
FUTURE	CONDITIONAL		PRESENT	IMPERFECT
*saurai sauras saura saurons saurez sauront	*saurais saurais saurait saurions sauriez sauraient	<i>sache</i> <i>sachons</i> <i>sachez</i>	<i>sache</i> <i>saches</i> <i>sache</i> <i>sachions</i> <i>sachiez</i> <i>sachent</i>	§ susse susses sût sussions sussiez sussent
suffirai suffiras suffira suffirons suffirez suffiront	suffirais suffirais suffirait suffirions suffiriez suffiraient	*suffis <i>suffisons</i> <i>suffisez</i>	<i>suffise</i> <i>suffises</i> <i>suffise</i> <i>suffisions</i> <i>suffisiez</i> <i>suffissent</i>	suffisse suffisses suffît suffissions suffissiez suffissent
suivrai suivras suivra suivrons suivrez suivront	suivrais suivrais suivrait suivrions suivriez suivraient	*suis <i>suiuons</i> <i>suivez</i>	<i>suive</i> <i>suives</i> <i>suive</i> <i>suiuions</i> <i>suiviez</i> <i>suivent</i>	§ suivisse suivisses suivît suivissions suivissiez suivissent
*tiendrai tiendras tiendra tiendrons tiendrez tiendront	*tiendrais tiendrais tiendrait tiendrions tiendriez tiendraient	*tiens <i>tenons</i> <i>tenez</i>	*tienne *tiennes *tienne <i>tenions</i> <i>teniez</i> *tiennent	† tinsse tinsse tint tinssions tinsiez tinsent
vaincrai vaincras vaincra vaincrons vaincrez vaincront	vaincrais vaincrais vaincrait vaincrons vaincriez vaincraient	*vaincs <i>vainquons</i> <i>vainquez</i>	<i>vainque</i> <i>vainques</i> <i>vainque</i> <i>vainquions</i> <i>vainquiez</i> <i>vainquent</i>	† vainquisse vainquisses vainquît vainquissions vainquissiez vainquissent
*vaudrai vaudras vaudra vaudrons vaudrez vaudront	*vaudrais vaudrais vaudrait vaudrions vaudriez vaudraient	*vaux <i>valons</i> <i>valez</i>	*vaille *vailles *vaille <i>valions</i> <i>valiez</i> *vaillent	§ valusse valusses valût valussions valussiez valussent

INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES	INDICATIVE			
	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PRETERIT	COMPOUND PAST
42. Venir (to come) <i>venant</i> § venu	*viens *viens *vient <i>venons</i> <i>venez</i> *viennent	<i>venais</i> <i>venais</i> <i>venait</i> <i>venions</i> <i>veniez</i> <i>venaient</i>	† vins vins vint vîmes vîntes vinrent	suis § venu(e) es venu(e) est venu(e) sommes venu(e)s êtes venu(e)(s) sont venu(e)s
43. Vêtir (to dress) <i>vêtant</i> § vêtu	*vêts *vêts *vêt <i>vêtons</i> <i>vêtez</i> <i>vêtent</i>	<i>vêtais</i> <i>vêtais</i> <i>vêtait</i> <i>vêtions</i> <i>vétiez</i> <i>vêtaient</i>	vêtis vêtis vêtit vêtîmes vêtîtes vêtirent	ai § vêtu as vêtu a vêtu avons vêtu avez vêtu ont vêtu
44. Vivre (to live) <i>vivant</i> § vécu	*vis *vis *vit <i>vivons</i> <i>vivez</i> <i>vivent</i>	<i>vivais</i> <i>vivais</i> <i>vivait</i> <i>vivions</i> <i>viviez</i> <i>vivaient</i>	§ vécus vécus vécut vécûmes vécûtes vé curent	ai § vécu as vécu a vécu avons vécu avez vécu ont vécu
45. Voir (to wish) <i>voyant</i> § vu	*vois *vois *voit <i>voyons</i> <i>voyez</i> *voient	<i>voyais</i> <i>voyais</i> <i>voyait</i> <i>voyions</i> <i>voyiez</i> <i>voyaient</i>	† vis vis vit vîmes vîtes virent	ai § vu as vu a vu avons vu avez vu ont vu
46. Vouloir (to wish, want) <i>voulant</i> § voulu	*veux *veux *veut <i>voulons</i> <i>voulez</i> *veulent	<i>voulais</i> <i>voulais</i> <i>voulait</i> <i>voulions</i> <i>vouliez</i> <i>voulaient</i>	§ voulus voulus voulut voulûmes voulûtes voulurent	ai § voulu as voulu a voulu avons voulu avez voulu ont voulu

‡ *Veuille, veuillons* and *veuillez* are used to express a less strong and less personal desire, or to render a request in a polite form: *Veillez me suivre*, please be kind enough to follow me. This form of the imperative therefore does *not* express a real command to wish or desire something.

A literal order to wish or make a person wish to do something is expressed by

		IMPERATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	
FUTURE	CONDITIONAL		PRESENT	IMPERFECT
*viendrai viendras viendra viendrons viendrez viendront	*viendrais viendrais viendrait viendrions viendriez viendraient	*viens venons venez	*vienne *viennes *vienne venions veniez *viennent	† vinsse vinsse vînt vinssions vinssez vinsent
vêtirai vêtiras vêtira vêtirons vêtirez vêtiront	vêtirais vêtirais vêtirait vêtirions vêtiriez vêtiraient	*vêts vêtons vêtez	vête vêtes vête vêtions vêtiez vêtent	vêtisse vêtisses vêtît vêtissions vêtissiez vêtissent
vivrai vivras vivra vivrons vivrez vivront	vivrais vivrais vivrait vivrions vivriez vivraient	*vis vivons vivez	vive vives vive vivions viviez vivent	§ vécusse vécusses vécût vécussions vécussiez vécussent
*verrai verras verra verrons verrez verront	*verrais verrais verrait verrions verriez verraient	vois voyons voyez	*voie *voies *voie voyions voyiez *voient	† visse visses vît vissions vissiez vissent
*voudrai voudras voudra voudrons voudrez voudront	*voudrais voudrais voudrait voudrions voudriez voudraient	*veux } *veuille } voulons } *veuillons } voulez } *veuillez }	*veille *veuille *veille voulions vouliez *veillent	§ voulusse voulusses voulût voulussions voulussiez voulussent

the forms *veux*, *voulons*, *voulez*. Examples: *Voulons finir le travail*, let us make ourselves want to finish the job; *Voulez guérir*, have the will to get well again. These forms, in practice, are used mainly in a negative sense: *Ne m'en veux pas*, an idiomatic usage meaning 'Don't be angry with me.'

GUIDE TO FRENCH PRONUNCIATION

Part II

This section continues the explanation of French pronunciation offered on pages 19 through 23. While Part I describes the articulation of the French language in terms of similar English sounds (through a simplified phonetic spelling), Part II describes French sounds in relation to French spelling. After the student has progressed through some of the lessons, he should study Part II from time to time as he continues. He will then be able to pronounce any French word without needing a phonetic guide since he will know how each of the French vowels and consonants is pronounced.

Les Voyelles

THE VOWELS

(lay vwayèl)

A - a

This vowel has two pronunciations in French:

First Pronunciation¹: a

Except for the cases enumerated in the next paragraph, the vowel "a" is pronounced a:

flamme (flam) flame

là (la) there

canne (kan) cane

parla (parla) spoke

balle (bal) ball

cela (s^ela) that

bal (bal) ball, dance

mêla (mèla) mixed

Second Pronunciation: â

1. The vowel always has this long pronunciation when it is spelled with a circumflex accent:

mât (mâ) mast

mâle (mâl) male

pâte (pât) paste

château (shâtô) castle

1. For the method of articulating these sounds indicated by diacritical markings, the reader should turn back to the section entitled *Guide to French Pronunciation, Part I, Pg. 19.*

2. Most Frenchmen pronounce a long “a” when the vowel is followed by a z sound:

phrase (frâz) sentence **base** (bâz) base

3. In the speech of many, but not all, Frenchmen, the vowel “a” is long when followed by *-tion* or by *-ss*:

nation (nâsyôⁿ) nation **passion** (pâsyôⁿ) passion
consolation (kôⁿsolâsyôⁿ) **passer** (pâs^ay) to pass
 consolation

4. The letter “a” in “as” or “az” final is generally pronounced â:

pas (pâ) step **as** (âs) ace
cas (kâ) case **hélas!** (âylâs) alas!
repas (r^epâ) meal **gaz** (gâz) gaz

E - e

This vowel has three pronunciations and, in a fourth case, it is altogether mute:

First Pronunciation: ay

1. When there is an acute accent over the vowel:
défilé (dayfeelay) parade **été** (aytay) summer

2. When the vowel occurs in the infinitive ending of the *-er* conjugation:

parler (parlay) to speak **chanter** (shâⁿtay) to sing

3. When it is followed by a mute “z”:
allez (alay) go **chanterez** (shâⁿt^eray) (you)
assez* (asay) enough will sing
nez (nay) nose

4. When it is followed by a mute “d” in words ending “ied”:

pied (pyay) foot **sied** (syay) suit

5. In monosyllables, when it is followed by “s”:

mes (may)[†] my **des** (day) of the **ces** (say) these

* Note that this word is pronounced with a short a.

† Some Frenchmen pronounce mè, particularly in combinations like mèzâⁿfâq

Second Pronunciation: è

1. When there is a grave accent over the vowel:

près (prè) near **procès** (prochè) lawsuit
problème (problèm) problem **zèle** (zèl) zeal

2. When there is a circumflex accent over the vowel:

même (mèm) same **tête** (tèt) head

3. When written without an accent mark in a closed syllable (a closed syllable is one in which the last pronounced sound is a consonant):

cesser (sèsay) to cease **pelle** (pèl) shovel
appel (apèl) call **mer** (mèr) sea

4. When it precedes final mute "t" or "ct":

effet (ayfè) effect **respect** (rèspè) respect

Third Pronunciation: e

1. When written without an accent mark and when it is the last letter of a syllable in the middle of a word (i.e., when it is in an *open syllable*, which is one ending in a vowel):

leçon (lèson) lesson **reçu** (rèsy) received

2. When in monosyllables such as:

me (mè) me **le** (lè) the
te (tè) thee **de** (dè) of

3. When the *rule of the three consonants* applies (according to the rule of the three consonants, the vowel "e" without an accent mark will be pronounced if it is preceded by *more than one* consonant and followed by *one*):

chargerai (sharzhèray) (I) shall load
département (daypartèmân) department
votre chapeau (votrè shapô) your hat

Fourth Pronunciation: Completely mute

1. The vowel "e" is completely mute at the end of words, unless it is the only vowel or unless the *rule of the three consonants* causes it to be pronounced in a word group (as, for example, in the phrase "votre chapeau" noted just above):

table (tabl) table **farce** (fars) farce

2. When, in the interior of a word, the vowel "e" is preceded by *only one* consonant and followed by one:

rêverie (rèvree) reverie **seulement** (sè^olmâⁿ) only
maintenant (mèⁿtnâⁿ) now (the *rule of the three consonants*
 does not apply in this word because the first "n" is unpronounced)

3. When "s" is added in order to form the plural of words which end in "e" and in the termination "es" in the second singular of verbs:

salles (sal) halls **tu parles** (tü parl) thou speakest
fables (fabl) fables **tu regardes** (tü rëgard) thou
 lookest

4. Also, in the third person plural of verbs, the termination "ent" is silent:

ils parlent (eel parl) they speak
ils flattent (eel flat) they flatter

5. The "e" is also silent when put after "g", in order that this letter may take, before "a", "o", "u", the sound which it has before "e", "i", viz., that which we represent diacritically as *zh*, as in:

il mangea (eel mâⁿzha) he ate
changeons (shâⁿzhôⁿ) let us change

I - i

This vowel has two pronunciations. (See also *compound vowels*.)

First Pronunciation: ee

Whether written with or without a circumflex accent, the vowel "i" has this pronunciation unless it is followed by another vowel in the same syllable:

finir (feeneer) to finish **abîme** (abeem) abyss

Second Pronunciation: y

When followed by another vowel in the same syllable*:

piéd (pyay) foot **vision** (veezyôⁿ) vision
miel (myèl) honey **diable** (dyabl) devil

* Some consonant combinations make it impossible to pronounce *y*. For example: **crier** (kreeay), **oublier** (oobleey).

O - o

This vowel has two pronunciations:

First Pronunciation: ô

1. When it has a circumflex accent:

trône (trôn) throne **hotel** (ôtèl) hotel

2. At end of word when it is the last pronounced element:

bravo (bravô) bravo **pot** (pô) pot
numéro (nümayrô) number **dos** (dô) back

3. Before a z sound:

rose (rôz) rose **poser** (pôzay) to place

Second Pronunciation: o

In all other cases, the vowel "o" is short:

bosse (bos) hump **votre** (votr) your
botte (bot) boot **potage** (potazh) soup

U - u

This vowel has two pronunciations and is silent in a third case:

First Pronunciation: ü

Except when followed by another vowel in the same syllable, or except in the *compound vowels* mentioned later, the vowel "u" has this pronunciation with or without a circumflex accent:

lune (lün) moon **tribu** (trebü) tribe
bu (bü) have drunk **mûr** (mür) ripe

Second Pronunciation: ü

The vowel "u" has this pronunciation when followed by another vowel in the same syllable:

lui (lüee) to him **écuelle** (ayküèl) bowl

Third Pronunciation: Silent

Except in a few rare words, "u" is mute if it is preceded by "g" or "q":

guide (geed) guide **quitter** (keetay) to leave

Second Pronunciation: ay

In final position in word:

j'ai (*zhay*) I have **mai** (*may* or *mè*) May*Special Pronunciation for -ayer:*

In pronouncing this common type of verb or any of the forms derived from it, the letter "y" is actually pronounced twice; for example, the verb *payer* is pronounced as though it were spelled *pai-yay*. Additional examples:

essayer (*aysèyay*) to try **payons** (*pèyôⁿ*) (we) pay**Ei**Pronounced è. Example: **Seine** (*sèn*) Seine**Au and Eau**

Both are the simple vowel sound ô:

chaud (<i>shô</i>) hot	beau (<i>bô</i>) beautiful
autorité (<i>ôtoresetay</i>) authority	manteau (<i>mâⁿtô</i>) cloak

Oi and Oy

This spelling combination produces two sounds, a semi-vowel plus a vowel: **wa** or occasionally **wâ**.*

noir (<i>nwar</i>) black	gloire (<i>glwar</i>) glory
Troyes (<i>trwa</i>) Troyes	

If "oy" is followed by another vowel, "y" is pronounced twice, first in the combination "oi" and then as a semi-vowel "y":

royal (<i>rwayal</i>) royal	voyons (<i>vwayôⁿ</i>) (we) see
ployer (<i>plwayay</i>) to bend	employé (<i>âⁿplwayay</i>) employee

Ou

This simple vowel has two pronunciations.

First Pronunciation: oo

Whether with or without a circumflex or grave accent, it is a pure vowel:

goût (<i>goo</i>) taste	doux (<i>doo</i>) sweet	ouï (<i>oo</i>) or
----------------------------------	----------------------------------	-----------------------------

* With "oi" in final position in a word, many Frenchmen pronounce **wâ**. Sometimes the difference in length of the vowel is used to distinguish words as *soi* (*swa*) *oneself*, and *soie* (*swâ*) *silk*.

Les Consonnes

THE CONSONANTS

(lay kôⁿson)

B - b

This consonant has two pronunciations.

1. Normally this consonant is pronounced: **b**

balle (bal) ball **boulet** (boolè) bullet

2. Followed by "s," it is generally pronounced: **p**

absent (apsâⁿ) absent **absolu** (apsolü) absolute

C - c

This consonant has two pronunciations.

First Pronunciation: s

1. Followed by "e" or "i":

ceci (s^esee) this **facile** (faseel) easy

2. When spelled with a cedilla "ç":

garçon (garsôⁿ) boy **effaçons** (èfasôⁿ) (we) erase

Second Pronunciation: k

Followed by "a" or "o":

carton (kartôⁿ) cardboard **contrôle** (kôⁿtrôl) inspection

Ch - ch

This spelling combination, which is in reality a single consonant, has two pronunciations:

First Pronunciation: sh

This is the normal pronunciation for "ch":

charité (shareetay) charity **chercher** (shèrshay) to seek

Second Pronunciation: k

In some exceptional words "ch" has this pronunciation:

écho (aykô) echo	Christ (kreest) Christ
chronologie (kronolozhee) chronology	chaos (kaô) chaos
chœur (kê ^o r) choir	orchestre (orkèstr) orchestra

D - d

Normally this consonant is pronounced **d**:

sud (süd) south **douche** (*doosh*) shower

In linking (see section entitled *Liaison*), this consonant will become **t**:

un grand homme (*eⁿ grân^tom*) a great man

F - f

Normally this consonant is pronounced **f** as in English. The following exceptions should be noted:

1. In linking (see section entitled *Liaison*), it is pronounced **v**:

neuf ans (*nè^vâⁿ*) nine years

2. In these unusual words the "f" is unpronounced:

clef (*klay*) key **nerf** (*nèr*) nerve
chef-d'œuvre (*shaydè^{vr}*) masterpiece

3. In these unusual words, the "f" is pronounced in the singular but not in the plural:

un œuf (*eⁿnè^f*) an egg **des œufs** (*dayze^o*) some eggs
un bœuf (*eⁿ bè^f*) an ox **des bœufs** (*day be^o*) some oxen

G - g

This consonant has three pronunciations:

First Pronunciation: g

When followed by "a", "o", or "u":

garder (*garday*) to guard **gond** (*gôⁿ*) hinge

NOTE: As indicated when discussing the vowel "u", the "u" is generally unpronounced when placed after "g" to keep the "g" hard:

guide (*geed*) guide **longue** (*lôⁿg*) long

The following words may be noted as exceptions to this rule:

aiguille (*aygüeeey*) needle **linguiste** (*lèⁿgüeeest*) linguist

Second Pronunciation: zh

When followed by "e", "i", or "y":

génie (*zhaynee*) genius **gymnase** (*zheemnâz*) gymnasium

NOTE: In the conjugation of *-ger* verbs, it is necessary to keep the "g" soft by inserting an "e" whenever the verb ending begins with "a" or "o":

mangea (mâⁿzha) (he) ate **mangeons** (mâⁿzhôⁿ) (we) eat

NOTE: If there is a second "g" before an "e", the first "g" is hard:
suggéré (sügzhayray) suggested

Third Pronunciation: k

In linking (see section on *Liaison*), "g" becomes **k**:

de rang en rang (d^e râⁿkâⁿ râⁿ) from rank to rank

Gn - gn

This spelling combination is one consonant sound and is pronounced: **ny**

compagne (kôⁿpany) country

compagnon (kôⁿpanyôⁿ) companion

NOTE: Some unusual words have the "g" and "n" pronounced separately:

diagnostic (dyagnosteek) diagnostic

H - h

In no case is "h" pronounced in French, but there are two types of "h" which have a different effect on the adjacent sounds:

1. Mute "h":

When the "h" is what is called "mute," linking and elision (see sections on these subjects) will take place as though the word in question began with a vowel:

un homme (eⁿnom) a man **l'homme** (lom) the man

2. Aspirate "h":

Although the so-called "aspirate h" is no longer pronounced in French, its presence at the beginning of the word will prevent linking and elision:

le héros (l^e ayrô) the hero **une hache** (ün ash) an ax

The only way to be sure that an "h" is aspirate is to consult a French dictionary which will distinguish a "mute h" from an "aspirate h."

NOTE: In the spelling combinations "rh" and "th", the "h" is mute:
rhétorique (raytoreek) rhetoric **cathédrale** (kataydral) cathedral

J - j

Always pronounced: *zh*

jeudi (zhe^odee) Thursday

joli (zholee) pretty

K - k

Found only in words foreign to French, and pronounced the same as in English:

kangourou (kâⁿgooroo) kangaroo

L - l

This consonant has two pronunciations:

First Pronunciation: l

This is the usual pronunciation for single or double "l" (exceptions are noted in the next paragraph).

long (lôⁿ) long

salle (sal) hall

allée (alay) path

Second Pronunciation: y

In the following combinations, "l" or "ll" has the y pronunciation:

1. "l" in combination "eil" or "ail" at end of word:

soleil (solèy) sun

pareil (parèy) like

travail (travay) work

émail (aymay) enamel

2. "ll" in combination "ill":

pastille (pasteey) drop

vieillard (vyayyar) old man

NOTE: Observe the following exceptions:

1. "ll" in the initial syllable produces a double "l":

illusion (eellüzyôⁿ) illusion

illimité (eelleemeetay) unlimited

2. In certain words "ill" is pronounced: eel.

mille (meel) thousand

ville (veel) city

tranquille (trâⁿkeel) quiet

3. In most words the "l" in "il" final is pronounced:

civil (seeveel)

vil (veel) vile

fil (feel) thread

But in some words the "l" in "il" final is mute:

baril (<i>baree</i>) barrel	fusil (<i>füzee</i>) gun
gentil (<i>zhâⁿtee</i>) nice	gril (<i>gree</i>) grating
persil (<i>pèrsee</i>) parsley	sourcil (<i>soorsee</i>) eyebrow

M - m N - n

Normally these are pronounced **m** and **n**. As noted above in the section on nasal vowels, these consonants will nasalize the vowel and will not therefore be pronounced separately whenever they occur after the vowel and are in the same syllable. This is the case except when another vowel occurs directly after them, in which case they belong to the next syllable and cannot nasalize the preceding vowel. Compare:

ampleur (*âⁿplê^r*) amplitude **ami** (*amee*) friend

Note the following exceptional cases:

1. Normally the doubling of a nasal consonant prevents nasalization:

flamme (*flam*) flame **ancienne** (*âⁿsyèn*) ancient

2. In some exceptional words, doubling of the nasal consonant does not prevent nasalization:

ennoblir (*âⁿnobleer*) to ennoble **ennui** (*âⁿnüee*) boredom

3. In some unusual words such as *damner* (*dâⁿay*) and its derivatives and *automne* (*ôton*), but not *automnal* (*ôtomnal*), the "m" is altogether mute.

4. The presence of a final mute "e" after a nasal consonant will prevent nasalization:

une (*ün*) a, one **fortune** (*fortün*) fortune

P - p

Normally this consonant is pronounced **p** as in English. The following exceptions should be noted:

1. "P" is unpronounced when preceded by "m" or followed by "t":

temps (<i>tâⁿ</i>) time	sept (<i>sêt</i>) seven
compter (<i>kôⁿtay</i>) to count	baptiste (<i>bateest</i>) Baptist

2. In the word *corps*, "p" is unpronounced: (*kor*).

3. "Ph", as in English, is pronounced **f**.

philosophie (*feelosofee*) philosophy

4. In the combination "ps", "p" is pronounced, contrary to the English:

psychologie (*pseekolozhee*) psychology

Q - q

This consonant usually occurs in the combination "qu" which is pronounced **k**:

qualité (*kaleetay*) quality **quotidien** (*koteedyèn*) daily

In a few words "qu" is pronounced **kw**:

équestre (*aykwèstr*) equestrian **aquatique** (*akwateek*) aquatic
aquarelle (*akwarèl*) watercolor **équation** (*aykwâsyôⁿ*) equation
équateur (*aykwatè^{or}*) equator **quadrupède** (*kwadrüpèd*) quadruped

R - r

This consonant is pronounced **r**:

It is unpronounced in final position when preceded by "e":

parler (*parlay*) to speak **dernier** (*dèrnyay*) last

Note the following exceptions to this rule:

mer (*mèr*) sea **hiver** (*eevèr*) winter
fer (*fèr*) iron **cancer** (*kâⁿsèr*) cancer
amer (*amèr*) bitter **enfer** (*âⁿfèr*) hell
cuiller (*küeevèr*) spoon **Lucifer** (*lüseevèr*) Lucifer

The pronunciation of the double "rr" does not differ materially from that of the single letter, except perhaps in the case of words beginning "arr", "err", "irr", "orr", and in the future of verbs where the "r" is doubled in the final syllable, when the rolling sound is slightly emphasized:

irrégulier (*eerraygülyay*) irregular
je verrai (*zh^e vèrray*) I will see
il courra (*eel koorra*) he will run

net (nèt) clean	indult (è ⁿ dült) privilege
rapt (rapt) theft	mat (mat) unpolished
transit (trâ ⁿ zeet) transit	ouest (wèst) west
brut (brüt) raw (material)	tost (tost) toast
but (büit or bü) object	tact (takt) tact
correct (korèkt) correct	

Second Pronunciation: s

1. In endings *-tion, -tial, -tiel* and *-tieux*:

situation (seetüasyô ⁿ) situation	essentiel (èsâ ⁿ syèl) essential
facétieux (fasaysye ^o) facetious	

2. In verbs ending *-tier* and occasionally in the noun ending *-tie*:

balbutier (balbüsyay) to stammer
initier (eeneesyay) to initiate
prophétie (profaysee) prophesy
démocratie (daymokrasee) democracy

V - v

This letter is always pronounced: **v**

W - w

This consonant has two pronunciations:

First Pronunciation: v

In some words borrowed from English it will have this pronunciation:

wagon (vagô ⁿ) goods wagon
wagon-lit (vagô ⁿ lee) sleeping car

Second Pronunciation: w

In other words borrowed from English it will have this pronunciation:

wattman (watman) motorman
tramway (tramwè) tram, tramway

X - x

This letter has four pronunciations.

First Pronunciation: ks

The letter "x" will have this pronunciation in all cases except as noted in the following paragraphs:

sexe (sèks) sex	index (è ⁿ dèks) index
------------------------	--

fixer (*feeksay*) to fix**préfix** (*prayfeeks*) prefix**exception** (*èksèpsyôⁿ*) exception*Second Pronunciation: gz*

“X” will have the pronunciation **gz** when it occurs in the initial syllable “ex” followed by a vowel or by an “h”:

examen (*ègzamèⁿ*) examination**exact** (*ègza*) exact**exhorter** (*ègzortay*) to exhort**exalté** (*ègzaltay*) exalted*Third Pronunciation: s*

In some exceptional words “x” is pronounced **s**:

soixante (*swasâ^{nt}*) sixty**dix** (*dees*) ten**six** (*sees*) six**Bruxelles** (*brüsèl*) Brussels**Fourth Pronunciation: z*

1. In ordinals derived from *deux*, *six* and *dix*:

deuxième (*de^ozyèm*) second**dixième** (*deezyèm*) tenth**sixième** (*seezyèm*) sixth

2. In linking (see section on *Liaison*), “x” becomes **z**:

deux enfants (*de^ozâ^{nfâ}ⁿ*)

“X” will be mute as the sign of the plural (in irregular plurals) or in *deux*, *six*, and *dix* when used before a word beginning with a vowel or mute “h”:

chapeaux (*shapô*) hats**dix livres** (*dee leevr*) ten books**Z - z**

Normally this consonant is pronounced **z**. In final position, except in linking (see *Liaison*), it is mute.

CONSONNES DOUBLES

The following are the consonants which are often found doubled in French but pronounced as if they were single: **b, c, d, f, g, l, m, n, p, s, t**; the double **c** (*cc*) and double **g** (*gg*) form exceptions to this rule when followed by *e* or *i*; also the double **l** (*ll*) when preceded by *i*, and the **r** and **s**; e. g.:

accent (*ak sâⁿ*) accent**famille** (*fameey*) family

* Natives of that city pronounce it (*brüksèl*), however.

DIPHTHONGUES

When two vowels together form part of, or in themselves constitute a syllable, they are given the name of diphthong; these diphthongs, like the vowels, are divided into the *simple*, the *compound* and the *nasal*.

The simple diphthongs are: **ia, iè, io, oe, ua, ue, ui**; e. g.:

ia in diable (dyabl) devil
iè in pièce (pyès) piece
io in violer (vyolay) to violate
oe in moelle (mwal) marrow
ua in suave (süav) suave
ue in continue (kôⁿteenü) (he) continues
ui in cuivre (küeevr) copper

DIPHTHONGUES COMPOSÉES

Are those in which a simple vowel is pronounced in connection with a compound one which follows it immediately, as in:

iai (yè) in niais (nyè) silly
iau (yô) in miauler (myôlay) to miaow
oue (wè) in fouet (fwè) a whip
oui (wee) in Louis (looe) Louis
ieu (ye^o) in monsieur (m^esye^o) sir

DIPHTHONGUES NASALES

Are those formed by the simple or the compound diphthongs followed by **m** or **n**:

ien in orient (oryân) orient **oin** in loin (lwè^{n'}) far
ion in lion (lyôⁿ) lion **ouen** in Rouen (rwâ^{n'}) Rouen

SIGNES ORTHOGRAPHIQUES

The orthographical signs are: The apostrophe (*l'apostrophe*) ('), the cedilla (*la cédille*) (ç), the diæresis (*le tréma*) (¨) and the hyphen, which is used to unite words as in English (*le trait d'union*) (-).

DE L'APOSTROPHE (')

This accent is used as a substitute for the vowels **a**, **e** or **i**, and to prevent their union when any one of them is followed by the other.

A, for instance, is subject to elision in the article *la* preceding a vowel or silent *h*:

l'âme (lâm) the soul, and not **la âme**

E is subject to the same rule:

1. When preceding a vowel or silent *h* in the words **le, je, me, te, se, de, ce, ne** and **que**, *provided, however*, that in the case of **je, ce, le, la**, *these words do not occur immediately after a verb*; e. g.:

c'est (sè) it is, and not **ce est**

j'aime (zhèm) I love, and not **je aime**

l'homme (lom) man, and not **le homme**

est-ce encore vous? (ès âⁿkor voo) is that you again?

2. Whenever the words **lorsque** (lorsk^e), *when*, **puisque** (püeesk^e), *since*, or **quoique** (kwak^e), *although*, are immediately followed by **il, elle, on, un, une**; e. g.:

lorsqu'il parle (lorskeel parl) when he speaks

quoiqu'on dise (kwakôⁿ deez) although it may be said

3. Also in the words **entre** (âⁿtr), *between*, and **presque** (prèsk^e) *almost*, whenever they enter into the formation of a compound word; e. g.:

entr'acte (âⁿtrakt) between acts

presqu'île (prèskeel) peninsula

4. In the word **quelque** when used in connection with **un, une** or **autre**:

quelqu'un (kèlkeⁿ) somebody

quelqu'autre (kèlkôtr) some other person

5. Also in the word **grande** when combined with various feminine words in their compounds; e. g.:

grand'mère (grâⁿmèr) grandmother

grand'peur (grâⁿper) great fear

grand'faim (grâⁿfèⁿ) great appetite

I is suppressed in the conjunction **si** followed by the pronouns **il** and **ils**, an apostrophe being substituted:

s'il vient (seel vyèⁿ) if he comes

s'ils partent (seel part) if they go

LA CÉDILLE (,)

Is always used under the letter **c** when required to give it the sound of **s** before the vowels **a**, **o** and **u**:

façade (fasad) face (of a building) **leçon** (l^esôⁿ) lesson

LE TRÉMA (¨)

Is used, as in English, to give a distinct sound to a letter which would not have it according to ordinary rules; e. g.:

naïf (naeef) innocent, instead of **naif** (nayf)
Saül (saül) Saul, instead of **Saul** (sól)

LE TRAIT D'UNION (-)

1. Is placed between the verb and the pronoun when used in the interrogative or imperative forms:

parlerons-nous? (parlerôⁿ noo) shall we speak
donnez-moi (donay mwa) give me

NOTE.—If there are two pronouns after the verb, a hyphen is used between each of them, as in:

laissez-le-moi (lèsay l^e mwa) leave it to me
passez-la-lui (pasay la lüee) pass it (fem.) to him

2. It is used in collective compound words; e. g.:

c'est-à-dire (sè ta deer) that is to say
tête-à-tête (tè ta tèt) tete-a-tete

3. Also before and after a euphonic *t*; e. g.:

parle-t-il? (parl^e teel) does he speak?
va-t-elle? (va tel) does she go?

4. It is always used before the word **même** (mèm), *self*, preceded by a personal pronoun, as in:

moi-même (mwa mèm) myself **lui-même** (lüee mèm) himself

5. With the words **ci** (*see*) *here*, and **là** (*la*) *there*, whenever they are placed after a noun or a pronoun or before a participle; e. g.:

celui-ci (selüee see) this one **celui-là** (selüee la) that one

6. And lastly with the cardinal numbers in their compound forms:

dix-sept (dee sèt) 17 **trente-cinq** (trâⁿt sèⁿk) 35

LIAISON DES MOTS

LINKING OF WORDS

(lèzôⁿ day mô)

Final mute consonants, when followed by a word beginning with a *vowel* or *silent h*, are carried forward and pronounced at the beginning of this word when its meaning is intimately connected with that of the preceding one of the sentence. This is known as *liaison* in French. When carried forward according to this rule, the *s* and *x* are pronounced *z*, *d* becomes *t*, *f* becomes *v*, and *c* and *g* become *k*:

mes amis (mayzamee) my friends
aux armes (ôzarm) to arms
grand homme (grâⁿtom) great man
avec elle (avèkèl) with her

For the purposes of linking, words are considered to be intimately connected in the following sequences:

1. A noun and its modifiers:

les hommes importants (layzomzèⁿportâⁿ) the important men

Note these two exceptions:

First: No linking is possible between a masculine noun in the singular and a following adjective:

le port important (lè por èⁿportâⁿ) the important port

Second: In other cases linking with a following adjective is optional:

des leçons intéressantes (day lè<sup>sôⁿzèⁿtayrèsâⁿt OR
 day lè^{sôⁿ èⁿtayrèsâⁿt) some interesting lessons}</sup>

2. An adjective and a modifying adverb:

très important (trèzèⁿportâⁿ) very important

3. A pronoun subject and verb:

nous avons (noozavôⁿ) we have

4. A verbal sequence:

nous comptions employer (noo kôⁿtyôⁿzâⁿplwayay) we expected to use

il n'a jamais été (eel na zhamèzaytay) he has never been

vous avez eu (voozavayzû) you have had

EXCEPTION: There is usually no linking in an inverted compound tense:

avez-vous aimé (avay voo èmay) have you loved

5. A preposition and the word which it introduces:

sans autre explication (sâⁿzôtr êkspleekasyôⁿ) without any other explanation

6. Forms of *avoir* and *être* with whatever follows:

il est ici (eelèteesee) he is here

DIVISION DES SYLLABES

Words are divided into syllables according to the following rules:

1. Syllables should, as much as possible, begin with a consonant, as in:

Mo-ra-li-té A-ma-bi-li-té

2. If there are two consonants together they should be divided between the syllables, as in:

hom-me (om) **Vil-le** (veel) **En-ten-du** (âⁿ tâⁿ dü)

3. When **l** or **r** are the second of two consonants combined, or if the combination be *gn*, both are carried forward to the beginning of the next syllable:

E-gli-se (aygleez') **Nô-tre** (nôtr) **Vi-gne** (veeny)

4. **H** preceded by another consonant is always pronounced in connection with the vowel immediately following it. This occurs in:

Dé-shon-neur (day zo nè^or) **I-nhu-main** (eenümè)

5. The consonant **x** is always pronounced in connection with the vowel which precedes it, as in:

Ex-il (èg-zeel) exile

FRENCH-ENGLISH DICTIONARY

A

- a (avoir) has**
à at, to
abandonner to abandon
abeille f. bee
abonner, s' to subscribe
abord, d' at first
aboutir à to end in, to lead to
abréger to cut short, be brief
absent,-e absent
absenter, s' to absent oneself
abside f. apse
absolument absolutely
accélérateur m. accelerator
accent m. accent, stress
accepter to accept
accès interdit no trespassing
accident m. accident
accompagner to accompany
accord m. agreement
d' ... OK, agreed
être d' ... to agree
accuser to accuse
achat m. purchase
faire des achats to shop
acheter to buy
acide borique m. boric acid
acidité f. acidity
acier m. steel
acte m. act
activité f. activity
actuel;-le present, now
actuellement at present,
nowadays
addition f. bill
admiration f. admiration
admirer to admire
adresse f. address
adresser to address, to send
s' ... à to speak to someone
adulte grown up
aérien,-ne aerial, air
aérodrome m. airport
affaire f. affair, business
... s f. pl. business, things
affiche f. bill (of a theater)
affluence f. flow
heure d' ... rush hour
affranchir to free
affranchissement m. postage
âge m. age
moyen ... Middle Ages
âgé,-e old
agence f. agency
... de voyages travel agency
agenda m. journal
agent (de police) m.
policeman
agir to act
s' ... de to be a question of
agneau m. lamb
agréable agreeable, nice,
pleasant
aider to aid, help
aiguille f. needle
ail m. garlic
aile f. wing
ailleurs elsewhere
d' ... moreover
aimable kind, pleasant
aimer to like, to love
... mieux to prefer
ainsi thus
... que as well as
air m. air, appearance
courant d' ... draft
avoir l' ... de to look like
ajouter to add
ajusté,-e adjusted, close fitting
ajuster to adjust

alentours neighborhood

aux ... de in the
neighborhood of

allemand,-e German

aller to go

... bien to be well

s'en ... to go away

... et retour round trip

ça va that's OK

allô! hello!

allonger to lengthen

s'... to lie down

allumage *m.* ignition

allumer to light, to turn the
light on

allumette *f.* match

allure *f.* speed, clip

à bonne ... at a good clip

alors then, well!

altitude *f.* altitude

aluminium *m.* aluminum

amabilité *f.* kindness

âme *f.* soul

amener to bring

amer, amère bitter

américain,-e *m., f.* American

ami,-e *m., f.* friend

amidon *m.* starch

amoureux,-euse amorous

ample wide

ampoule *f.* electric light bulb

amusant,-e amusing

amuser to amuse

s'... to have a good time

an *m.* year

ananas *m.* pineapple

ancêtre *m.* ancestor

ancien,-ne old, ancient, former

anglais,-e *m., f.* Englishman,
Englishwoman, English

(language)

Angleterre *f.* England

année *f.* year

anniversaire *m.* anniversary,
birthday

annoncer to announce

annuaire *m.* telephone book

annuler to cancel

antiquité *f.* antiquity

août *m.* August

apercevoir to perceive

s'... de to realize

à peu près about

appareil *m.* device; camera

appartement *m.* apartment

appartenir to belong

appeler to call

s'... to be called, named

je m'appelle my name is

appétit *m.* appetite

apporter to bring

apprendre to learn, to teach

appris,-e learned

(s') approcher to approach, to
come near

approfondir to go into
deeply

appuyer to support, lean, press

après after

... que after

d'... according to

après-demain day after

tomorrow

après-midi *m., f.* afternoon

arbre *m.* tree

architecte *m.* architect

argent *m.* money, silver

argenterie *f.* silverware

argot *m.* slang

aristocratique aristocratic

arme *f.* weapon

armée *f.* army

armoire *f.* wardrobe

arranger to arrange

s'... to manage to

arrêt *m.* stop

(s') arrêter to stop

arrière *f.* back, rear

à l'... in the rear

arrivée *f.* arrival

arriver to arrive, happen

art *m.* art

artichaut *m.* artichoke

article *m.* article

artificiel,-le artificial

artiste *m.* artist; *adj.* artistic

ascenseur *m.* elevator

asperge *f.* asparagus

aspirine *f.* aspirin

assaisonnement *m.* seasoning

assemblée *f.* assembly

asseoir, s' to sit down
assez enough, rather
assiette *f.* plate
assimilé assimilated
assis,-e seated
assister à to be present at,
 attend
assortir to sort, to match
assurance *f.* assurance,
 insurance
assurément assuredly, surely
atelier *m.* workshop
attacher to attach
 ... **du prix à** to set a value
 on something
(s') attaquer (à) to attack
attaque *f.* attack
attendre to wait, to wait for
 s' ... **à** to expect
attention! watch out!
attentivement attentively
atterrir to land (an airplane)
attirer to attract, to draw
attraper to catch
au (à+le) at the, to the
 ... **contraire** on the
 contrary
aube *f.* dawn
aucun,-e any
 ne ... not any, no, none
au-dessous under, underneath
au-dessus above, on top
augmenter to increase
aujourd'hui today
 ... **même** this very day
auparavant previously
auprès close to
 ... **de** *f.* near
au revoir good bye
aussi also, too
aussitôt immediately, soon
 ... **que** as soon as
autant as much, so much
auteur *m.* author
authentique authentic
autobus *m.* bus
automatique automatic
automne *f.* autumn
automobile *f.* automobile, car
autour around

autre other
autrefois formerly
autrement otherwise,
 differently
 ... **dit** in other words
auxquelles to which
avance *f.* advance
 à l' ... in advance
 en ... fast, ahead of time
avancer to advance, to be fast
avant before
avant-hier day before
 yesterday
avec with
aventure *f.* adventure
avion *m.* airplane
avis *m.* opinion, notice
aviser to warn, inform
avoir to have
 ... **l'air de** to appear
 ... **besoin** to need
 ... **faim** to be hungry
 ... **soif** to be thirsty
 ... **tort** to be wrong
 ... **chaud** to be warm
avouer to confess
avril *m.* April

B

bachot *m.* slang for
 baccalauréat,
 bachelor's examination
bagage *m.* baggage
bague *f.* ring (on finger)
baguette *f.* wand
baigner, se to take a bath
baignoire *f.* bathtub
bail *m.* lease
bain *m.* bath
 ... **de pieds** foot bath
 ... **de soleil** sun bath
baisse *f.* subsidence, fall
 en ... dropping
bal *m.* ball (dance)
baliverne *f.* twaddle
ballon *m.* balloon
banane *f.* banana
bandage *m.* bandage
banlieue *f.* outskirts, suburbs
banque *f.* bank
bar *m.* bar

- barbe *f.* beard
 baromètre *m.* barometer
 barrer to block
 barrière *f.* barrier, gate
 bas, -se low
 bas *m.* stocking
 bassin *m.* basin
 bataille *f.* battle
 bateau, -x *m.* ship, boat
 bâtiment *m.* building
 bâton *m.* stick
 beau, bel, belle beautiful, fine
 beaucoup much, very much
 many
 ... de much, a great deal,
 a lot of, many
 beau-frère *m.* brother-in-law
 beauté *f.* beauty
 bécane *f.* bicycle
 belge Belgian
 belle-soeur *f.* sister-in-law
 bénéfice *m.* profit
 béret *m.* cap
 besoin *m.* need
 avoir ... de to need
 beurre *m.* butter
 bibliothèque *f.* library
 bicyclette *f.* bicycle
 bien all right, comfortable,
 very well
 ... entendu of course
 ... que although
 bientôt soon
 à ... see you soon, so long
 bienveillance *f.* kindness
 bière *f.* beer
 bijou, -x *m.* jewel
 bijoutier *m.* jeweler
 bijouterie *f.* jewelry
 billet *m.* bill, paper money,
 ticket
 ... de passage passage, boat
 ticket
 bisque *f.* shellfish soup
 blague *f.* kidding (slang)
 blaireau *m.* shaving brush
 blanc, blanche white
 blanchisserie *f.* laundry
 blé *m.* wheat
 bleu, -e blue
 blouse *f.* blouse
- bock *m.* glass of beer
 boeuf *m.* beef
 boire to drink
 bois *m.* wood
 boisson *f.* drink
 boîte *f.* box
 ... de nuit *f.* night club
 bon, bonne good, fine
 bonhomme *m.* old fellow
 bonjour good day, hello,
 good morning
 bon marché cheap
 bonne *f.* maid
 bonsoir good evening
 bonté *f.* goodness, kindness
 bord *m.* edge
 ... de la mer seashore
 border to border
 Bottin *m.* Bottin (Paris
 telephone directory)
 bouche *f.* mouth
 boucher *m.* butcher
 boucle *f.* curl
 ... s d'oreille earrings
 boue *f.* mud
 boulanger *m.* baker
 boulevard *m.* boulevard
 bouquet *m.* bouquet
 bourse *f.* stock exchange
 bout *m.* end
 tout au ... at the very end
 bouteille *f.* bottle
 boutique *f.* shop
 bouton *m.* button
 ... de manchette cuff link
 boxe *f.* boxing
 bracelet *m.* bracelet
 bracelet-montre *m.* wrist
 watch
 bras *m.* arm
 brave good, brave
 bredouiller to mumble
 bretelles *f.* suspenders
 brillant brilliant
 brique *f.* brick
 briquet *m.* lighter
 broder to embroider
 broderie *f.* embroidery
 brosse *f.* brush
 ... à dents *f.* toothbrush
 bruit *m.* noise

brûler to burn
brumeux,-euse foggy
brun,-e brown
bulletin *m.* bulletin, report,
 bureau,-x *m.* desk, office
 ... de poste post office
 ... de tabac cigar store
but *m.* goal
buvard *m.* blotter

C

ça that, this
c'est ... that's it, O.K.
cabaret *m.* cabaret
cabine *f.* cabine
 ... téléphonique telephone
 booth
cabinet *m.* toilet
cable *m.* cablegram
cacahuète *f.* peanut
cadeau *m.* gift
café *m.* coffee, café
cahier *m.* notebook
caisse *f.* case, cash-box
caissier, caissière cashier
calé learned (slang)
caleçon *m.* underdrawers,
 shorts
calendrier *m.* calendar
camion *m.* truck
campagne *f.* country,
 campaign
 à la ... in the country
faire la ... de to go through
 the campaign of
canapé *m.* sofa
canard *m.* duck
caoutchouc *m.* rubber
 ... s *m.* rubbers
capitale *f.* capital (city)
capitonner to pad
capotage *m.* overturn, upset
capter les ondes to tune in
 (a radio)
car for
caractère *m.* character
caractéristique characteristic
carafe *f.* decanter
carapace *f.* shell
carbone *m.* carbon
carotte *f.* carrot

carré square
carreau *m.* check, square
carrément plainly
carte *f.* card
 ... d'identité identification
 card
donner les ... s to deal the
 cards
 ... des vins wine list
carte postale illustrée *f.*
 picture postcard
cas *m.* case, circumstance
casquette *f.* cap
casser to break
cathédrale *f.* cathedral
cause *f.* cause
 a ... de because
causer to converse, to converse
 about
cave *f.* cellar, cellar club
caviar *m.* caviar
ce it, they
ce, cet, cette this, that
ceinture *f.* belt
cela that
célèbre famous
celle *f.* the one, she, it
 ... -ci *f.* this one
 ... -là that one
celui *m.* the one
 ... -ci *m.* this one
 ... -là *m.* that one
censé supposed to
cent *m.* a hundred
 pour ... per cent
centaine *f.* about a hundred
centime *m.* centime (100th
 part of a franc)
centre *m.* center
 au ... in the center
cependant however
céréale *f.* cereal
certainement certainly
cerveau *m.* brain, mind
ceux the ones, they
 ... -ci these
 ... -là those
chacun,-e each
chaise *f.* chair
chaise-longue *f.* deck-chair
chaleur *f.* heat

334 THE CORTINA METHOD

- chambre** *f.* room
 ... à coucher bedroom
chambre meublée *f.* furnished room
chance *f.* luck
 bonne ... good luck
change *m.* exchange
changer to change
chanson *f.* song
chanter to sing
chapeau,-x *m.* hat
 ... de paille straw hat
chapelle *f.* chapel
chapitre *m.* chapter
chaque each, every
charmant,-e charming
charme *m.* charm
charpentier *m.* carpenter
chasse *f.* hunt, chase
chasser to hunt, to drive away, to dismiss
chat *m.* cat
château *m.* castle
 ... fort fortress
chaud,-e hot, warm
 avoir ... to be hot, warm (said of a person)
 faire ... to be hot, warm (said of the weather)
chauffage *m.* heating
chauffer to heat, to warm
chauffeur *m.* driver, chauffeur
chaussette *f.* sock
chaussure *f.* shoe
chef *m.* chief, chef
chemin *m.* roadway
 ... de traverse crossroad, sideroad
 ... de fer railroad
chemise *f.* shirt
 ... de nuit *f.* nightgown
chèque *m.* check
 ... de tourisme *m.* travelers check
cher, chère dear, expensive
chercher to look for
 envoyer ... to send for
chéri,-e *m., f.* darling
cheval *m.* horse
cheveu,-eux a hair, hair
cheville *f.* ankle
chèvre *f.* goat
chevreau *m.* kid
chez at, at the house of
 ... Jean at John's place
 ... lui at his place
chic fine, elegant, grand
chichi *m.* frill
chien *m.* dog
chocolat *m.* chocolate
choisir to choose
choix *m.* choice
chose *f.* thing
chou *m.* cabbage
choux-fleur *m.* cauliflower
ciel *m.* sky
cigare *m.* cigar
cigarette *f.* cigarette
ciment *m.* cement
cinéma *m.* motion picture house
cinq five
cinquante fifty
cinquième fifth
circulation *f.* traffic
circuler to spread, to circulate
cirer to shine (shoes)
ciseaux *m. pl* scissors
 cité *f.* city
citer to quote, to cite
citoyen,-ne citizen
citron *m.* lemon
citronnade *f.* lemonade
clair,-e clear, light
clarté *f.* clarity, light
classe *f.* class
classique classical
clavier *m.* keyboard
clef *f.* key, wrench
client *m.* customer
climat *m.* climate
clinique *f.* clinic
clou *m.* nail
coeur *m.* heart
 avoir mal au ... to feel sick
cognac *m.* brandy
cogner to knock
coiffer to fix the hair of
 se ... to fix one's hair
coiffeur *m.* barber, hairdresser
coin *m.* corner

- col** *m.* collar
colère *f.* anger
 en ... angry
colis *m.* parcel
 ... postal parcel post
collaborateur *m.* collaborator
collège *m.* college, school
colonne *f.* column
combien de how many, how
 much
combinaison *f.* slip
comble *m.* top, zenith
 ... de malheur to top it all
comédie *f.* comedy
commander to order
comme as, like, since
 ... ci, ... ça so so
 ... il faut proper, refined
commencement *m.* beginning
 au ... in the beginning
commencer to begin, to start
 comment how
 ... va? how is ... ?
commerce *m.* commerce, trade
commercial,-e business
commissariat *m.* police
 station
commode practical
commode *f.* dresser
communément commonly
communication *f.*
 communication
communiquer to communicate
compagnie *f.* company
comparaison *f.* comparison
comparer compare
compartement *m.*
 compartment
complet *m.* suit of clothes
complet, complète complete,
 full
complètement completely
complicité *f.* agir de ...
 to act in collusion
compliment *m.* compliment
compliqué,-e complicated
composer to compose
comprendre to understand
comptabilité *f.* accounting
comptant ready, in cash
 payer au ... to pay cash
compte *m.* account; bill
 se rendre ... to realize
compter to expect, to count
compteur *m.* meter
concert *m.* concert
concierge *m., f.* building
 superintendent
conclure to conclude
conducteur *m.* driver
conduire to conduct, drive,
 take, lead
conduite *f.* conduct
conférence *f.* lecture
confiture *f.* jam
confort *m.* comfort
 ... moderne modern
 conveniences
confortable comfortable
connaissance *f.* acquaintance,
 knowledge
connaissance *m.* bill of
 lading
connaître to be acquainted
 with, to know
consacrer to devote
conscience *f.* conscience,
 mind
conseil *m.* advice, counsel
conservatoire *m.* conservatory
considération *f.* regard,
 esteem
considérer to consider
consigne *f.* checkroom (in a
 railroad station)
 mettre à la ... to check
 (a parcel)
consister to consist
constamment constantly
constater to ascertain, observe
 the fact that
construire to construct, to
 build
construit constructed
consulat *m.* consulate
consultation *f.* consultation,
 visit
consulter to consult
conte *m.* story
contemporain,-e
 contemporary
content,-e happy

- contenter to satisfy
 se ... to be satisfied
 conter to relate, to tell
 continental,-aux *m.*
 continental
 continuer to continue
 contraire contrary
 au ... on the contrary
 contrarié,-e upset
 contraste *m.* contrast
 faire ... to contrast
 contrat *m.* contract
 contre against
 par ... on the other hand
 contredire to contradict
 sans contredit without
 question
 contrôler to check
 contrôleur *m.* ticket collector
 convenable convenient
 convenir to agree, to suit
 convenu,-e agreed
 conversation *f.* conversation
 copie *f.* copy
 coque *f.* shell (of egg)
 coquet,-te dainty, trim
 corbeille *f.* basket
 cordialement cordially
 cordonnier *m.* shoemaker
 corps *m.* body
 correspondance *f.* mail,
 correspondence
 corridor *m.* corridor
 corriger to correct
 corsage *m.* blouse
 costume *m.* suit
 ... de bain *m.* bathing
 suit
 côte *f.* hill, incline, shore,
 coast
 côté *m.* side
 du ... de in the direction of
 de l'autre ... on the other
 side
 à ... de beside
 côtelette *f.* cutlet, chops
 coton *m.* cotton
 ... hydrophile *m.*
 absorbent cotton
 cou *m.* neck
 coucher to sleep
 se ... to go to sleep
 chambre à ... *f.* bedroom
 couché,-e lying down
 couchette *f.* berth
 coudre to sew
 couleur *f.* color
 coup *m.* stroke, blow
 tout à ... suddenly
 tout d'un ... suddenly
 ... de soleil *m.* sunburn
 coupe *f.* haircut
 couper to cut
 se ... to cut oneself
 cour *f.* courtyard
 couramment commonly,
 ordinarily
 parler ... to speak with
 ease, rapidly
 courant current, everyday
 courant *m.* current
 dans le ... de la semaine
 during the week
 être au ... de to be
 informed of
 coureur *m.* runner
 courir to run
 couronne *f.* crown
 courrier *m.* mail
 cours *m.* course
 course *f.* errand, race
 ... de chevaux horse race
 ... à pied foot race, track
 meet
 faire les courses to shop
 court,-e short
 courtisan *m.* courtier
 cousin,-e *m., f.* cousin
 coussin *m.* pillow
 coût *m.* cost
 couteau,-x *m.* knife
 coûter to cost
 coutume *f.* custom, habit
 couture *f.* sewing, tailoring
 couturier dressmaker
 couvert *m.* cover, shelter
 le temps est ... the weather
 is cloudy
 couverture *f.* cover, blanket
 couvrir to cover
 craindre to fear
 cravate *f.* tie, necktie

crayon *m.* pencil
 crédit *m.* credit
 à ... on credit
 créer to create
 crème *f.* cream, cold cream
 ...à barbe *f.* shaving
 cream
 crêpe *m.* crepe
 crevaison *f.* puncture
 crever to blow out (said of a
 tire)
 crier to shout
 crise *f.* crisis
 critique critical
 croire to believe, to think
 cru,-e believed, thought
 cuillère *f.* spoon
 cuir *m.* leather
 cuire to cook
 cuisine *f.* kitchen
 cuisinière *f.* cook
 cuisse *f.* leg (of meat)
 cuit,-e cooked
 bien ... well cooked
 culotte *f.* panties
 cure dent *m.* toothpick
 curieux,-euse curious, funny,
 strange
 cuvette *f.* wash basin
 cylindre *m.* cylinder

D

dactylographe *m. f.* typist
 dame *f.* lady
 damner to damn
 danger *m.* danger
 dangereux,-euse dangerous
 dans in, into
 danser dance, to
 date *f.* date
 davantage more
 de of, from, by, with
 déballage *m.* unpacking
 débarquer to disembark, to
 land
 de bonne heure early
 debout standing, up
 débrouiller,-se to manage
 décembre *m.* December
 déclaration *f.* statement
 déclarer to declare, to bid

décoller to take off (aviation)
 décolorer to bleach
 décor *m.* setting
 décorer to decorate
 dedans inside
 défaire to undo
 défendre to defend, to forbid
 défense d'entrer no
 admittance
 défier to challenge
 degré *m.* degree
 déguerpir to decamp
 dehors outside
 déjà already
 déjeuner *m.* lunch
 petit ... breakfast
 déjeuner to lunch, to have
 lunch
 délabré,-e dilapidated
 délicat,-e delicate
 délicatesse *f.* delicacy
 délicieux,-euse delicious
 demain tomorrow
 à ... see you tomorrow
 demander to ask
 se ... to wonder
 déménager to move away
 demeurer to live, to reside
 demi,-e half
 demi-tour *m.* right about face
 démocratie *f.* democracy
 demoiselle *f.* young lady
 démolir to demolish
 dent *f.* tooth
 dentelle *f.* lace
 dentiste *m.* dentist
 dépanneur *m.* service man,
 garage man
 départ *m.* departure
 dépasser to surpass
 dépêche *f.* telegram
 (se) dépêcher to hurry
 dépendre to depend
 déplacer to move
 se ... to move
 déposer to set down,
 to deposit
 depuis since, for
 ... que since
 déranger to disturb, to
 inconvenience

dernier,-ère last
dérober to steal
à la dérobée on the sly
derrière behind
des some, of the, from the
dès from
... que as early as, as soon as
désagréable unpleasant
descendre to go down, get off
désespéré,-e desperate
déshabiller, se to undress
désirer to desire, to wish
désolé sorry, dejected
dessert *m.* dessert
desservir to clear away the
dishes
dessous beneath, under
dessus above, on, over
détester to dislike, to detest
destination *f.* destination
détaillé,-e detailed
détraqué,-e out of order
détromper to undeceive
dette *f.* debt
deux two
deuxième second
devant in front of, before
développer to develop
devenir to become
devoir *m.* duty, lesson
devoir to have to, to owe,
dévoré to devour
diamant *m.* diamond
différence *f.* difference
différent-e different
difficile difficult
difficulté *f.* difficulty
digestion *f.* digestion
digne worthy
dignité *m.* dignity
dimanche *m.* Sunday
dîner *m.* dinner
dîner to dine
diplôme *m.* diploma
dire to say, to tell
à vrai ... to tell the truth
vouloir ... to mean
direct,-e direct
directement directly
direction *f.* direction,
management

discuter to argue, to discuss,
to dispute
disparaître to disappear
disposer to dispose, to arrange
distance *f.* distance
distingué,-e distinguished
dit,-e said, told
divers,-e diverse, different
diviser divide
dix ten
dix-sept seventeen
docteur *m.* doctor
doigt *m.* finger
domestique *m., f.* servant
domicile *m.* home
à ... at home
dommage *m.* damage, pity,
c'est ... it's a pity;
that's too bad
donc therefore
donner to give
... sur la rue to face the
street
dont whose, of whom, of
which
dormir to sleep
douane *f.* customs
custom-house
douanier *m.* customs officer
double double
doubler to double
douche *f.* shower
douleur *f.* pain, sorrow
doute *m.* doubt
sans ... doubtless
douter to doubt
se ... de to suspect
doux, douce sweet
douzaine *f.* dozen
douze twelve
dramaturge *m.* dramatist
drap *m.* sheet
(se) dresser to rise up
droit,-e right
à ... on the right
drôle funny
du (de+le) some
duc *m.* duke
dur,-e tough, hard
durer to last

E

- eau *f.* water
 ...courrante running water
 ...gazeuse *f.* soda water
 ...minérale *f.* mineral water
 éblouir to dazzle
 échange *m.* exchange
 échelle *f.* ladder
 éclair *m.* lightning
 éclairer to light up
 éclatant,-e brilliant
 école *f.* school
 écouter to listen (to)
 écrevisse *f.* crayfish
 écrire to write
 écrit,-e written
 écriteau *m.* sign
 écrivain *m.* writer
 édifice *m.* building
 édition *f.* edition, publication
 effet *m.* effect
 en ... that's true
 effets *m.* clothes, personal effects
 égal,-e equal
 être ... to make no difference
 égarer to mislay
 s' ... to lose one's way
 église *f.* church
 égratignure *f.* scratch
 eh bien! well!
 électricité *f.* electricity
 électrique electric
 élégant,-e elegant
 élève *m., f.* student, pupil
 élevé,-e high
 élever to lift, to raise
 élire to elect
 elle she, it, her
 elles *f.* they, them
 emballer to pack
 embêtant,-e annoying
 embarquer to embark, to sail
 embouteillage *m.* traffic jam
 embrasser to kiss
 embrouiller to mix up
 s' ... to get mixed up
 emmener to take along
 emballer to pack up
 empêcher to prevent
 empeser to starch
 emplacement *m.* site
 employé,-e *m., f.* employee
 emporter to carry off
 empresser, s' to hurry
 en in, into, of it, of them,
 some, by, on, upon, while
 enchanté,-e charmed, delighted
 encore yet, still
 pas ... not yet
 encre *f.* ink
 encrier *m.* inkstand
 endormir, s' go to sleep
 endroit *m.* place, spot
 enfance *f.* childhood
 enfant *m., f.* child
 enfer *m.* hell
 enfermer to shut up
 enfin finally
 engrais *m.* fertilizer
 ennuyer to annoy, to bother
 s' ... to be bored
 énorme enormous
 énormément enormously
 enraciné deeply rooted
 enrégistrer to check (baggage);
 to register (a letter)
 en retard late
 ensemble together
 enseigner to teach
 ensuite then, afterwards
 entendre to hear
 ... dire to hear (say)
 entendu,-e heard, agreed
 bien ... of course
 enthousiasme *m.* enthusiasm
 entier,-ère entire
 entourer to surround
 entre among, between
 entr'acte *m.* intermission
 entrée *f.* entrance
 entrer to enter
 ... dans to enter
 ... en relation to get in touch
 enveloppe *f.* envelope
 envelopper to wrap up
 envers towards
 envie *f.* fancy, desire

environs *m.pl.* surroundings,
 vicinity
 en voiture! all aboard!
 envoyer to send
 . . . chercher to send for
 épatant,-e swell, fine
 épaule *f.* shoulder
 épicerie *f.* grocery store
 épicier, épicière *m., f.* grocer
 épingle *f.* pin
 épique *adj.* epic
 éponge *f.* sponge
 époque *f.* epoch
 épreuve *f.* print
 éprouver to experience, to
 feel, to test
 erreur *f.* error, mistake
 escalier *m.* stairway
 (s') esclaffer to burst out
 laughing
 espagnol,-e Spanish
 espèce *f.* kind
 espérer to hope
 essayer to try, try on
 essence *f.* gasoline
 est *m.* east
 estimer to value
 estomac *m.* stomach
 estropier to cripple
 et and
 établir to establish
 étage *m.* floor, story
 étain *m.* tin
 état *m.* state, condition
 Etats-Unis *m.pl.* United
 States
 été *m.* summer
 éteindre to extinguish, turn
 light off
 éternité *f.* eternity
 étoffe *f.* cloth
 étoile *f.* star
 étouffer to suffocate
 étrange strange
 étranger, étrangère foreign
 étranger,-ère foreigner
 être to be
 . . . à la page to be up to
 date
 . . . au courant de to be
 informed, to be aware of

. . . en train de to be in the
 act of, to be engaged in
 étroit,-e narrow, tight
 étude *f.* study
 étudiant,-e student
 étudier to study
 européen,-ne European
 eux they, them
 évanouir, s' to faint
 évènement *m.* event
 évidemment obviously
 évier *m.* sink
 éviter to avoid
 exact,-e exact
 examen *m.* examination
 examiner to examine
 excepté except
 exception *f.* exception
 à l' . . . de with the
 exception of
 exercer to exercise, train
 excercice *m.* exercise, drill
 excursion *f.* excursion
 excuser to excuse
 exemplaire *m.* duplicate,
 copy
 exemplaire *adj.* exemplary
 exemple *m.* example
 par . . . for example
 exercer, s' to practice
 expérience *f.* experience
 expérimenté,-e experienced
 explication *f.* explanation
 expliquer to explain
 exportation *f.* export
 exporter to export
 exprès on purpose
 express *m.* express train
 exprimer to express
 extraordinaire extraordinary
 extrême extreme

F

fabrication *f.* manufacturing
 fabriquer to manufacture
 face *f.* face
 en . . . across the street
 fâché,-e angry
 fâcher to make angry
 se . . . to become angry
 facile easy

- façon** *f.* manner, way
 de cette ... in this way
 de ... que so that
 d'une ... générale in a
 general way
- facteur** *m.* postman
- factice** artificial
- facture** *f.* bill (to be paid)
- faible** weak
- faim** *f.* hunger
 avoir ... to be hungry
- faire** to do, to make
 ... attention to pay
 attention, to be careful
 ... beau to be fine weather
 ... chaud to be hot, warm
 ... froid to be cold
 ... mal à to hurt
 ... peur à to frighten
 ... plaisir to please
 ... du soleil to be sunny
 ... du vent to be windy
 ... la toilette to get ready
 (dressed)
 ... le compte to draw up a
 bill
 ... les bagages to pack for a
 trip
 ... une promenade to take a
 walk
 ... un tour to take a walk
 se ... to become
 s'en ... to worry
 s'y ... to become used to
- fait** *m.* deed, fact
 au ... to the point
 en .. de as regards
- falloir** to be necessary, to have
 to, must
- fameux,-euse** famous
- famille** *f.* family
- fatigué,-e** tired
- fatiguer** to tire
 se ... to get tired
- faute** *f.* fault, mistake
- fauteuil** *m.* armchair
- faux, fausse** false, wrong
- favori, favorite** favorite
- fée** *f.* fairy
- félicitation** *f.* congratulation
- femme** *f.* wife, woman
- ... de chambre *f.*
 chambermaid
- ... de journée charwoman
- fenêtre** *f.* window
- fer** *m.* iron
 chemin de ... railroad
 ... à cheval horseshoe
- fermer** to close, to shut
- fermeture** *f.* closing, closing
 time, fastening
- ... éclair *f.* zipper
- fête** *f.* festival
- feu** *m.* fire
- feuille** *f.* leaf
 ... de papier sheet of paper
- feutre** *m.* felt, felt hat
- février** *m.* February
- fiancé,-e** betrothed
- fièvre** *f.* fever, temperature
- figurer, se** to imagine
- fil** *m.* thread
- filer** to ride (fast)
- filet** *m.* fillet
- fille** *f.* daughter
 petite ... little girl
- film** *m.* film, moving picture
- fil** *m.* son
- filtre** *m.* filter
- fin** *f.* end
- finir** to finish
- flanelle** *f.* flannel
- flatter** to flatter
- flèche** *f.* arrow, spire
- fleur** *f.* flower
- fleuriste** *m.,f.* florist
- flottant,-e** floating
- flotter** to float
- foie** *m.* liver
- foire** *f.* fair, market
- fois** *f.* time (in the sense of
 occurrence)
 à la at once, at the same
 time
 une ... once
 deux ... twice
- foncé,-e** dark
- fonctionner** to function,
 to work
- fond** *m.* bottom
- fonds** *m.pl.* funds
- fontaine** *f.* fountain

342 THE CORTINA METHOD

football *m.* football
 forcer to force
 formalité *f.* formality
 forme *f.* form
 en . . . de in the form of
 former to form
 se . . . to be made up
 (said of a train)
 formule *f.* formula
 fort,-e strong, much, very
 much, hard
 fou, fol, folle crazy
 foule *f.* crowd
 fourchette *f.* fork
 fourneau *m.* stove
 . . . à gaz gas stove
 fourrure *f.* fur
 foyer *m.* lounge, lobby,
 hearth
 frais, fraîche fresh, cool
 fraise *f.* strawberry
 franc, franche frank, sincere
 franc *m.* franc (French
 monetary unit)
 France *f.* France
 français,-e *m.,f.* Frenchman,
 Frenchwoman, French
 frapper to hit, strike, knock
 frein *m.* brake
 fréquenter to frequent
 frère *m.* brother
 frire to fry
 froid,-e cold
 froisser to wrinkle, to
 crumple, to offend
 fromage *m.* cheese
 frontière *f.* border
 fruit *m.* fruit
 fumée *f.* smoke
 fumer to smoke
 fumeur *m.* smoking
 compartment
 fuselage *m.* fuselage
 fur *m.* rate
 au . . . et à mesure
 progressively
 future *m.* future

G

gaffe *f.* social, error, blunder
 gagner to earn, to win

gai,-e gay
 gaine *f.* girdle
 galerie *f.* gallery, department
 store
 gallo-romain Gallo-Roman
 gant *m.* glove
 garage *m.* garage
 garantir to guarantee
 garçon *m.* boy, waiter
 garder to keep
 gardien *m.* guardian
 gare *f.* railroad station
 gare *interj.* beware!
 . . . à vous watch out
 garniture *f.* trimming
 gastronomie *f.* gastronomy
 gâteau,-x *m.* cake
 gêter to spoil
 gauche *f.* left
 à . . . to the left
 gaufre *f.* waffle
 gaz *m.* gas
 gelée *f.* frost
 geler to freeze
 gendarme *m.* policeman
 général general
 genou *m.* knee
 gens *m.* people
 gentil,-le nice, kind
 géométrique geometric
 gérant *m.* manager
 gilet *m.* vest
 glace *f.* mirror, ice cream,
 ice, pane
 glacé,-e iced
 glacer to ice, freeze
 glacière *f.* refrigerator
 gloire *f.* glory
 golf *m.* golf
 gomme *f.* eraser
 gorge *f.* throat
 avoir mal à la . . . to have a
 sore throat
 gothique Gothic
 goût *m.* taste
 goûter to taste, enjoy
 gouvernement *m.* government
 gracieux,-euse graceful
 grade *m.* degree
 grand,-e big, great, large
 grandement greatly

grandeur *f.* size, bigness
gras, **se fat**
gratte-ciel *m.* skyscraper
gratter to scatch, scrape
grec, **que Greek**
grève *f.* strike (of labor)
groom *m.* bell-boy
gros, **grosse** big, fat
grotte *f.* cave
guère not much
ne . . . hardly, scarcely
guérir to cure
guerre *f.* war
guichet *m.* box office
guide *m.* guide
guider to guide

H

habillement *m.* clothing
habiller, **s'** to dress (oneself)
habit *m.* clothes, garb
habitant *m.* inhabitant
habiter to live, dwell
habitude *f.* custom, habit
d' . . . usually
habituer, **s'** to get
 accustomed to
***halte** *f.* halt
***hameau** *m.* hamlet
***haricot** *m.* bean
harmonieux, **-euse** harmonious
***hausse** *f.* rise (in prices)
***haut**, **-e** high
en . . . upstairs, above
***haut** *m.* top
***hauteur** *f.* height
hélas! alas!
***héler** to hail
hélices *f. pl.* propellers
herbe *f.* grass
hésiter to hesitate
heure *f.* hour, o'clock
à l' . . . on time
c'est l' . . . it's time
de bonne . . . early
tout à l' . . . shortly
heureusement fortunately
heureux, **heureuse** happy,
 fortunate

* An asterisk before the following words indicates that the *h* is aspirate, allowing no elision or liaison.

hier yesterday
histoire *f.* history
historiographe *m.*
 historiographer
historique historical
hiver *m.* winter
***homard** *m.* lobster
homme *m.* man
honneur *m.* honor
honoraires *m.* fee
honorer to honor
hôpital *m.* hospital
horaire *m.* timetable
horloge *f.* public clock
horloger *m.* watchmaker
horlogerie *f.* watchmaker's
 shop
***hors d'oeuvre** *m.* relish
hôtel *m.* hotel
. . . de ville city hall
huile *f.* oil
humain, **-e** human
humidité *f.* humidity

I

ici here
par . . . this way
idée *f.* idea
ignorer to be unaware of
il he, it
. . . y a there is, there are
île *f.* island
illustre illustrious
ils they
image *f.* picture
imaginer to imagine
imberbe beardless
immédiat, **-e** immediate
immédiatement immediately
impatience impatient
impériale *f.* top deck
 (of bus, etc.)
voiture à . . . double-decker
 car
imperméable *m.* raincoat
importance *f.* importance
importe, **n'** anything; it
 does not matter; I don't care
importer import, to

impôt *m.* tax
 ... sur le revenu income tax
imprégner to impregnate
impressionnant,-e impression
impressionner to impress
imprévu,-e unforeseen
inconnu,-e unknown
indicateur *m.* timetable
indiquer to indicate, to tell
indirect,-e indirect
individuel,-le individual
inférieur,-e inferior, lower
infini infinite
infiniment infinitely
infirmière *f.* nurse
information *f.* information
informer to inform
ingénieur *m.* engineer
injure *f.* insult
innombrable countless,
 innumerable
inonder to inundate
inquiéter, s' to become
 worried
inscrire to inscribe, write
 down
 se faire ... to register
 s' ... à to enroll in
insecticide *m.* insect repellent
insister to insist
installer to install, to settle
 s' ... to move in
instant *m.* instant, moment
 à P... just now
instantané *m.* snapshot
institut *m.* institute
intellectuel,-le intellectual
intelligence *f.* intelligence
intention *f.* intention,
 purpose
interdit forbidden
intéressant,-e interesting
intérêt *m.* interest
intérieur,-e interior
interprète *m.* interpreter
intersection *f.* crossing
interurbain,-e long distance
intrépide intrepid
introduction *f.* introduction
intrus *m.* intruder
inutile useless

invitation *f.* invitation
invité *m.* guest
invité invited
inviter to invite
ironique ironical
irréel,-le unreal
italien Italian
itinéraire *m.* itinerary

J

jamais never
jambe *f.* leg
jambon *m.* ham
janvier *m.* January
jaquette *f.* jacket
jardin *m.* garden
jaune yellow
je I
jeu *m.* game
 vieux ... old fashioned
jeudi *m.* Thursday
jeune young
jeunesse *f.* youth, young
 people
joie *f.* joy
joli,-e pretty
jouer to play
 ... de to play (an
 instrument)
 ... à to play (a game)
joueur *m.* player
jouir de to enjoy
jouet *m.* toy
joujou,-x *m.* toy
jour *m.* day
 ... de congé holiday
journal,-aux *m.* newspaper
journalisme *m.* journalism
ournée *f.* day
juillet *m.* July
juin *m.* June
jupe *f.* skirt
jupon *m.* petticoat
jusque until
jusqu'à till, until
jusqu'à ce que until
jusque-là up to then
juste just, exactly
 au ... exactly
justement just, precisely
justice *f.* justice

K

kilo *m.* kilogram
kilogramme *m.* kilogram
kilomètre *m.* kilometer
kiosque *m.* newsstand,
 pavillion

L

la *f.* the, her, it
là there
 ... **bas** over there
 ... **haut** up there
lac *m.* lake
lacet *m.* lace
laid, **e** ugly
laideur *f.* ugliness
laine *f.* wool
laisser to leave, to let
lait *m.* milk
laitue *f.* lettuce
lame *f.* blade
 ... **à rasoir** *f.* razor blade
lampe *f.* lamp
lancer to throw, to hurl
langouste *f.* crayfish
langue *f.* language, tongue
lapin *m.* rabbit
lard *m.* fat
 le petit ... **bacon**
large broad, wide
lavabo *m.* wash basin
laver to wash
 se ... to wash oneself
le *m.* the, him, it
leçon *f.* lesson
lecture *f.* reading
léger, **légère** *adj.* light
légume *m.* vegetable
lendemain *m.* next day
lentement slowly
lequel, **laquelle**, **lesquels**,
lesquelles who, which one
les *pl.* the, them
lettre *f.* letter
 ... **recommandée** registered
 letter
 ... **de crédit** *f.* letter of
 credit
leur their, them
 le ... theirs

lever to raise
 se ... to get up
lèvre *f.* lip
liaison liaison, connection
liberté *f.* freedom, liberty
librairie *f.* bookstore
libre free, vacancy
licence *f.* master's degree
liège *m.* cork
lieu *m.* place
 au ... **de** in place of
ligne *f.* line
limonade *f.* lemonade
linge de corps *m.* underwear
lire to read
lit *m.* bed
 ... **à deux places** *m.* double
 bed
 ... **jumeaux** *m.* twin beds
litière *f.* litter
littéraire *f.* literary
littérature *f.* literature
livraison *f.* delivery, shipment
livre *m.* book
 ... **des recettes** cash book
livre *f.* pound
livrer to deliver
loger to lodge
loi *f.* law
loin far
lointain, **e** distant
long, **ue** long
longtemps longtime
lorsque when
louer to rent, to praise
loup *m.* wolf
 avoir une **faim de** ... to be
 dying of hunger
lourd heavy
loyer *m.* rent
lui he, her, him, to her, to
 him, to it
lumière *f.* light
lundi *m.* Monday
lune *f.* moon
 ... **de miel** honeymoon
lunettes *f.* eye glasses

M

M. Mr.
ma my

machine *f.* machine
 ... à coudre sewing machine
 ... à écrire typewriter
 Madame, Mme Madam, Mrs.
 mademoiselle Miss
 magasin *m.* store
 magique *adj.* magic
 magnifique magnificent
 mai *m.* May
 main *f.* hand
 maintenant now
 dès... beginning now
 mairie *f.* town hall
 mais but
 maison *f.* house
 ... de commerce business
 firm
 majesté *f.* majesty
 majestueusement majestically
 mal badly
 pas... enough, rather well
 mal *m.* harm, evil
 ... à la gorge *m.* sore throat
 ... à la tête *m.* headache
 ... aux dents *m.* toothache
 ... au ventre *m.* stomach-
 ache
 malade *m., f.* sick person, sick
 ... imaginaire
 hypochondriac
 maladie *f.* sickness
 malentendu *m.*
 misunderstanding
 malgré in spite of
 malheur *m.* unhappiness
 malheureusement
 unfortunately
 malheureux, malheureuse
m., f. unfortunate
 malle *f.* trunk
 malsain, *e* unhealthy
 maman *f.* mother
 manche *f.* sleeve
 manchette *f.* cuff
 mandat-poste *m.* money order
 manger to eat
 manicure *m.* manicurist
 manque *m.* lack
 manquer to miss
 ... de to lack, to be out of
 manteau *m.* coat

marchand *m.* merchant
 marchander bargain, to
 marchandise *f.* merchandise
 marche *f.* walking
 marché *m.* market
 bon... cheap
 marcher to go, to walk
 le faire... make it work
 mardi *m.* Tuesday
 mari *m.* husband
 mariage *m.* marriage,
 marque *f.* mark, brand
 mars *m.* March
 massage facial face massage
 matelas *m.* mattress
 matériel *m.* equipment
 matin *m.* morning
 matinée *f.* morning,
 mauvais, *e* bad
 me me, to me, myself
 méchant, *e* bad, unimportant
 médecin *m.* physician
 médecine *f.* medicine
 (profession)
 médicament *m.* medicine (as
 prescribed by a physician)
 médisance *f.* slander
 mélange *m.* mixture
 mélanger to mix
 melon *m.* melon
 membre *m.* member
 même same, even, self
 de... likewise
 de... que just as
 mémoire *f.* memory
 avoir bonne... to have a
 good memory
 mener to lead
 mensonge *m.* lie
 menton *m.* chin
 menu *m.* menu
 mer *f.* sea
 merci thanks
 mercredi *m.* Wednesday
 mère *f.* mother
 merveilleux, merveilleuse
 marvellous, wonderful
 mes my
 mesdames *f.* ladies
 message *m.* message
 messieurs gentlemen

mesure *f.* measure
metal *m.* metal
méto subway
mettre to place, to put, to put on
 se ... à to start
 se ... au courant de to become familiar with
 se ... en to dress in
meuble *m.* piece of furniture
meubler to furnish
niche *f.* loaf
midi *m.* noon
miel *m.* honey
mien, mienne mine
mieux better
 le ... the best
milieu *m.* middle
 au beau ... in the very middle
mille a thousand
mine *f.* appearance
 avoir mauvaise ... to look bad
minuit *m.* midnight
minute *f.* minute
miroir *m.* mirror
misère *f.* misery, poverty
mode *f.* fashion, style
moderne modern
modiste *f.* milliner
moi I, me, to me
moins least
 à ... que unless
 au ... at least
 du ... at least
 ... **cher** cheaper
mois *m.* month
moiteur *f.* moistness
moitié *f.* half
molle soft
moment *m.* moment
 en ce ... now
mon, ma, mes my
mondain wordly
monde *m.* people, world
 tout le ... everybody
monnaie *f.* currency, small change
monsieur mister, sir

monter to go up, climb
montre *f.* watch
 ... **en** or goldwatch
montrer to show
monument *m.* public or historic building
moquer to mock
 se ... de to make fun of
morceau *m.* bit, piece
mordre to bite
mort *f.* death
mort,-e dead
mot *m.* word
moteur *m.* engine
mouche *f.* fly
mouchoir *m.* handkerchief
mouillé,-e wet
mourir to die
moustache *f.* moustache
moustique *m.* mosquito
moutarde *f.* mustard
mouvement *m.* movement
mouton *m.* sheep
moyen average
munir to furnish, supply
mur *m.* wall
musée *m.* museum
musicien, musicienne *m., f.* musician
musique *f.* music
mystérieux, mystérieuse mysterious

N

nage *f.* swimming
nager to swim
naissance *f.* birth
nappe *f.* tablecloth
nature *f.* nature
nature *adj.* plain
naturel,-le natural
naturellement naturally
néanmoins nevertheless
nécessaire necessary
ne ... pas not
ne ... que only
ne ... rien not anything,
 nothing
nef *f.* nave
neige *f.* snow
neiger to snow

n'est-ce pas? isn't it so?
 net,-te clear, net
 nettoyer to clean
 ... à sec to dry clean
 neuf,-ve new
 neuf nine
 neveu *m.* nephew
 ni neither
 noblesse *f.* nobility
 noir,-e black
 noix *f.* nut
 ... de coco coconut
 nom *m.* name
 nombre *m.* number
 non no, not
 non plus neither
 nord *m.* north
 nos our
 notaire *m.* notary
 notamment notably
 notre our
 nous we, us, to us, ourselves
 nous-mêmes ourselves
 nouveau, nouvel, nouvelle
 new (different)
 de nouveau again, anew
 nouvelle *f.* news, short story
 novembre *m.* November
 nuance *f.* shade of meaning,
 subtle difference
 nuire to be hurtful, injurious
 nuit *f.* night
 numéro *m.* number
 ... d'appel phone number

O

obélisque *m.* obelisk
 objectif,-ive objective
 objet *m.* object, thing
 obliger to oblige
 obscurité *f.* obscurity,
 darkness
 observation *f.* observation
 obtenir to obtain, to get
 occupant *m.* occupant
 occupation *f.* business,
 occupation
 occupé,-e busy
 occuper to occupy
 s'... de to take care of,

to be busy with
 octobre *m.* October
 octogonal octagonal
 oeil *m.* eye
 odeur *f.* odor, smell
 oeuf *m.* egg
 ... à la coque soft-boiled
 egg
 ... sur le plat fried egg
 oeuvre *f.* work
 offenser to offend
 officiel,-le official
 offre *f.* offer
 offrir to offer
 oignon *m.* onion
 oiseau *m.* bird
 ombre *f.* shadow
 ombrelle *f.* beach umbrella
 omelette *f.* omelet
 omettre to omit
 on one, they, we, you
 oncle *m.* uncle
 onde *f.* wave
 onduler (les cheveux) wave
 (the hair)
 ongle *m.* fingernail
 faire les... s manicure the
 nails
 onze eleven
 opéra *m.* opera
 opinion *f.* opinion
 opposer to oppose
 or *m.* gold
 orage *m.* storm
 orange *f.* orange
 ordonnance *f.* prescription
 (of a doctor)
 ordre *m.* order
 oreille *f.* ear
 boucle d'... s earrings
 oreiller *m.* pillow
 organiser to organize
 orienter to incline; to tend
 s'... to move towards,
 to direct oneself
 originalité *f.* originality
 os *m.* bone
 oser to dare
 ou or
 où where

oublier to forget
ouest *m.* west
oui yes
outré-mer beyond the sea
ouvert,-e open
ouvrage *m.* work
ouvrir to open

P

paiement *m.* payment
pain *m.* bread
petit ... roll
pair *m.* peer
paire *f.* pair
paix *f.* peace
palais *m.* palace, palate
 ... de justice court house
pâle pale
pamplemousse *m.* grapefruit
panne *f.* breakdown (of an automobile)
pansement *m.* dressing (*med.*)
pantalon *m.* trousers
pantoufles *f.* bedroom slippers
papeterie *f.* stationery store
papier *m.* paper
 ... à lettres writing paper
 ... carbone *m.* carbon paper
paquet *m.* package
par by, per
 ... an a year, per year
 ... jour a day, per day
 ... semaine a week, per week
 ... avion by air mail
paraître to appear
parapluie *m.* umbrella
parc *m.* park
parce que because
pardessus *m.* overcoat
pardon *m.* pardon
pardonne to pardon
pareil,-le same, similar, such a
parent *m.* parent
parent,-e relative
 paresse *f.* laziness
 paresseux,-euse lazy
parfait,-e perfect
parfaitement perfectly

parfois sometimes
parfum *m.* perfume
parisien,-ne Parisian
parler to speak
parmi among, between
parole *f.* word
part *f.* part, share
 à ... except for
 d'autre ... on the other hand
 quelque ... somewhere
participer to participate
particulier,-ère private
partie *f.* part
 faire ... de to be part of
partir to depart, to go away, to leave
 à ... de beginning with
partout everywhere
parvenir to reach
pas *m.* step, pace
 au ... de course at a run
pas not
 ... du tout not at all
passéport *m.* passport
passer to pass, to spend (time)
 se ... to take place
 se ... de to do without
passerelle *f.* gangplank
passionnant,-e exciting
pâte *f.* paste
 ... dentifrice tooth paste
pâté meat paste
 ... de foie gras goose-liver
 paste
patiner to skate
pâtisserie *f.* pastry
pâtissier,-ère *m., f.* pastry-maker
patriote *m.* patriot
patron *m.* pattern, boss
paume *f.* palm (of the hand)
pauvre poor
pavillon *m.* pavilion
payer to pay
pays *m.* country
paysage *m.* scenery (in the countryside)
peau *f.* skin
 y laisser sa ... not to come out alive

pêche f. peach
peigne m. comb
peindre to paint
peine f. pain, trouble
 à . . . hardly, scarcely
 avoir de la . . . to have
 trouble, difficulty
peinture f. painting
pellicule f. film negative
pendant during
pendule f. wall clock
pénétrer to penetrate
pensée f. thought
penser to think
 . . . à to think of (about)
 . . . de to think of (have an
 opinion of)
pension f. boarding-house
 . . . complète board and
 room
pente f. slope
percevoir to perceive
perdre to lose
père m. father
perfectionner, se to improve
périr to perish
permanente f. permanent
 wave
permettre to permit
perruque f. wig
personnage m. character
personne f. person
personnel,-e personal
perspective f. vista
persuader to persuade
peser to weigh
petit,-e little, small
pétrole m. petroleum
roi du . . . oil baron
peu little
 à . . . près about, almost
 un tout petit . . . very little
peur f. fear
 avoir . . . to be afraid
peut-être perhaps
pharmacie f. pharmacy,
 drugstore
pharmacien m. pharmacist,
 druggist
photo f. photograph
phrase f. sentence

piano m. piano
pièce f. play, room
 . . . d'identité identification
 paper
pied m. foot
piéton m. pedestrian
pilote m. pilot
pilule f. pill
pipe f. pipe
pire worse
 le . . . the worst
pis worse
 le . . . the worst
pittoresque picturesque
placard m. poster
place f. seat, square
placer to place, to put, to
 invest
plafond m. ceiling
plage f. beach
plaindre to pity
plaire to please
plaisanter to joke
plaisanterie f. joke
plaisir m. pleasure
plan m. map (of a city)
planche f. board
plancher m. floor
plante f. plant
plat m. dish, course
plat,-e flat
plateau m. tray
plate-forme f. platform
plein,-e full
pleuvoir to rain
pli m. fold
plonger to dive
pluie f. rain
plume f. pen
plupart f. majority, most
plus more, most
 au . . . at most
plusieurs several
plutôt rather
pneu m. tire
pneumatique m. special
 delivery letter (delivered by
 underground pneumatic
 tube in Paris)
poche f. pocket
poème m. poem

- poésie *f.* poetry
 poète *m.* poet
 poétique poetic
 poids *m.* weight
 point *m.* point
 ... de vue point of view
 peinture *f.* size
 poire *f.* pear
 poireaux *m. pl.* leeks
 poisson *m.* fish
 poivre *m.* pepper
 poli,-e polite
 police *f.* police
 politique political
 pomme *f.* apple
 pomme de terre *f.* potato
 ... en purée mashed potato
 pompe *f.* pump
 pont *m.* bridge
 porc *m.* pork
 porche *f.* porch (church
 architecture)
 port *m.* harbor, port
 porte *f.* door
 ... cochère carriage gateway
 porte-couteau *m.* knife rest
 portefeuille *m.* bill-fold
 porte-monnaie *m.* change
 purse
 porte-plume *m.* fountain pen
 porter to carry, to wear
 se ... bien to be well
 porteur *m.* porter
 portière *f.* car door
 portillon *m.* wicket (gate)
 portion *f.* share, helping
 poser to place, to put,
 ... une question to ask a
 question
 position *f.* position
 posséder to possess
 possible possible
 poste *m.* radio station
 poste *f.* post office
 poste aérienne *f.* airmail
 poste restante *f.* general
 delivery
 postérité *f.* posterity
 potage *m.* soup
 poudre *f.* powder
 poudrer to powder
 se ... to powder one's face
 poule au riz *f.*
 chicken fricassee
 poulet *m.* chicken
 poulx *m.* pulse
 poumon *m.* lung
 pour for, in order to
 pourboire *m.* tip
 pourquoi why
 poursuivre to pursue,
 to continue
 pourtant however,
 nevertheless
 pousser to push, to grow
 pouvoir to be able
 pratique practical
 préalablement previously
 préciser to specify
 préfecture *f.* departmental
 capital
 préfecture de police police
 headquarters
 préférer to prefer
 préjugé prejudice
 premier,-ère first
 prendre to take
 ... par to follow
 se ... à to go about (doing
 something)
 préparer to prepare
 près near
 ... de near
 de ... close up
 présent *m.* present
 à ... now
 présenter to present
 présumptueux, -euse
 presumptuous
 presser almost, nearly
 presser to hurry
 prêt,-e ready
 prétendre to pretend, to claim
 prêter to lend
 prévenir to give notice,
 to warn
 prier to beg, pray
 primer to take precedence
 principal,-e principal, main
 printemps *m.* spring

privé,-e private
 prix *m.* price, prize
 à des... raisonnables
 reasonably priced
 problème *m.* problem
 prochain,-e next
 procuration *f.* power of
 attorney
 procurer to procure
 se... to obtain
 produire to produce
 ... se to come forward
 produit *m.* product
 professeur *m.* professor,
 teacher
 professionnel,-le professional
 profiter to take advantage of
 profond,-e profound
 programme *m.* program
 projet *m.* plan
 promenade *f.* promenade
 ... en voiture ride
 faire une... to take a walk
 promener to promenade,
 to take for a walk
 se... à cheval to go horse-
 back riding
 se... à pied to walk
 se... en auto to take a ride
 promettre to promise
 propos *m.* subject;
 à... by the way
 propre clean, own
 proprement properly
 ... dit properly so-called
 propriété *f.* property
 proscrire to proscribe
 protestation *f.* protest
 prouver to prove
 prune *f.* plum
 puis then, moreover
 puisque since
 pyjamas *m.* pyjamas

Q

quai *m.* pier, dock, platform
 (of a station)
 qualité *f.* quality
 quand when
 ... même just the same
 quant à as to, as for

quart *m.* quarter
 ... d'heure quarter-hour
 quartier *m.* section (of a city)
 quatorze fourteen
 quatre four
 quatrième fourth
 que that, what, which, whom
 ce... that, which what, than
 ne... only
 quel, quelle, quels, quelles
 what, which
 quelque any, some
 quelquefois sometimes
 quelques-uns,-unes a few,
 some
 qu'est-ce que? what
 ... 'il y a? what is it?
 what's the matter?
 question *f.* question
 qui who? whom? that, which
 ce... that, which, what
 quinzaine *f.* fortnight
 quinze fifteen
 quitter to leave, to quit
 quoi? what?
 il n'y a pas de... don't
 mention it

R

raccrocher to hang up
 raconter to tell (about),
 relate
 radiateur *m.* radiator
 radio *f.* radio
 rafraîchir to refresh, to cool
 rafraîchissement refreshment
 railleur *m.* scoffer
 raisin *m.* grapes
 raison *f.* reason, right
 avoir... to be right
 raisonnable reasonable
 raisonner to reason
 ramener to bring back
 rang *m.* row; rank
 rapide fast
 rappeler to recall
 se... to remember
 rapporter to bring back
 rapprocher, se to draw
 closer to
 rasant (slang) boring

- raser** to shave
rasoir *m.* razor
rassurer to reassure
rayonne *f.* rayon
réagir to react
réaliste realistic
recaler to flunk (reject in an examination)
récemment recently
recevoir to receive
réciter to tell, recite
recommander to recommend
 ... une lettre register a letter
reconnaissant grateful
reconnaître to recognize
reçu receipt
recupérer to recover
réduire to reduce
réel,-le real
réellement really
refaire to remake
refuser to refuse
regarder to look at
 regarde, ça ne vous ... pas it's none of your business
règle *f.* rule, ruler
régler to pay (a bill); to regulate
règne *m.* reign
regret *m.* regret
reine *f.* queen
rejoindre to joint, to meet
remarquer to notice
 faire ... to call one's attention to
 se faire ... to attract attention
remercier to thank
remettre to postpone, to put again
remonter to go back
remplacer to replace
remplir to fill
rencontre *f.* meeting, encounter
 aller à la ... de to go to meet
rencontrer to meet
rendez-vous *m.* appointment, meeting-place, engagement
rendre to give back, to render
 se ... to betake oneself, to go
 se ... compte to realize
 se ... dans un lieu to betake oneself
renseignement *m.* information
renseigner, se inquire, to
rentrer to go back, to return
répandre to spread
réparer to repair
repas *m.* meal
repasser to iron
répertoire repertory
répéter to repeat
répondre to answer
repos *m.* rest
reposer to replace, to put again, to rest
 se ... to rest
représentant *m.* representative, agent
représenter to represent
représentation *f.* performance (of a play)
repriser to mend
répugner to be distasteful
réseau *m.* network
réservoir à essence *m.* gas tank
résidence *f.* residence
résoudre to resolve
 s ... to make up one's mind
respect *m.* respect
respirer to breathe
ressemblance *f.* resemblance
ressembler to resemble
ressort *m.* spring
restaurant *m.* restaurant
reste *m.* rest, remainder
rester to stay, to remain
restriction *f.* restriction
résumer to sum up
rétablir to reestablish
 se ... to regain one's health
retard *m.* delay
 en ... late
retarder to be slow, to delay
retenir to retain
retourner to return
 se ... to turn around

retrouver to find again,
 to meet
 réussir to succeed
 réveil *m.* alarm clock
 réveiller to waken
 se ... to wake up
 revenir to return, come back
 revenu *m.* income
 revoir to see again
 au ... good-bye, so long
 rez-de-chaussée *f.* ground
 floor
 rhume *m.* cold
 attraper un ... to catch cold
 rideau, -x *m.* curtain
 riche rich
 rien nothing
 rire to laugh
 rive *f.* bank (of a river)
 rivière *f.* river
 robe *f.* dress
 rognon *m.* kidney
 roi *m.* king
 rôle *m.* part (in a play)
 roman *m.* novel
 roman *adj.* romanesque
 romancier *m.* novelist
 romantique *m.* Romanticist
 romantisme *m.* Romanticism
 rompre to break
 rond, -e round
 rosbif *m.* roast beef
 rose *f.* rose
 rôti *m.* roast
 rôti, -e roasted
 rôtir to roast
 roue *f.* wheel
 rouge red
 ... à lèvres *m.* lipstick
 rouler to roll, to run
 route *f.* road, route
 ruban *m.* ribbon
 rubis *m.* ruby, jewel (watch)
 rudement deucedly, harshly
 rue *f.* street
 ruine *f.* ruin
 russe *m., f.* Russian
 Russie *f.* Russia
 rustique rustic

S

sable *m.* sand
 sac *m.* bag
 ... à main handbag
 saignant, -e raw
 saigner to bleed
 saisir to seize
 saison *f.* season
 salade *f.* salad
 sale dirty
 salé, -e salted
 salir to dirty
 salle *f.* hall, room
 ... à manger dining room
 ... de bain bathroom
 ... de théâtre playhouse,
 theater
 ... d'attente waiting room
 ... des bagages baggage
 room
 salon *m.* living-room
 salutation *f.* greeting
 samedi *m.* Saturday
 sandwich *m.* sandwich
 sans without
 ... que without
 santé *f.* constitution, health
 satisfaire to satisfy
 sauf except
 sauter to jump
 sauver to save
 se ... to go, to run along
 savoir to know
 savon *m.* soap
 ... à barbe *m.* shaving
 soap
 sceau *m.* seal
 scène *f.* stage, scene
 second, -e second
 seize sixteen
 séjour *m.* sojourn, stay
 sel *m.* salt
 selon according to
 semaine *f.* week
 sembler to seem
 semelle *f.* sole (of shoe)
 sens unique *m.* one-way street
 sentiment *m.* sentiment
 sentir to feel, to smell
 se ... to feel

sept seven
 septembre *m.* September
 sérieux,-euse serious
 serré,-e tight
 serrure *f.* lock
 serviette *f.* napkin, towel
 ... hygiénique sanitary
 napkin
 ... de bain bath towel
 service *m.* favor, service
 à votre ... at your service
 servir to serve
 se ... de to use, to make
 use of
 ses his, her
 seul,-e alone
 seulement only, solely
 short *m.* shorts
 siècle *m.* century
 si yes, so
 siège *m.* seat
 signe *m.* sign
 signer to sign
 s'il vous plaît if you please
 simplicité *f.* simplicity
 simplement simply
 sincère sincere
 sincèrement sincerely
 six six
 ski, faire du to ski
 ski *m.* ski
 smoking *m.* tuxedo
 soeur *f.* sister
 soie *f.* silk
 ... artificielle *f.* artificial
 silk
 soif *f.* thirst
 soir *m.* evening
 soirée *f.* evening party
 soixante-dix seventy
 soixante-quinze seventy-five
 soldat *m.* soldier
 soleil *m.* sun
 le lever du ... sunrise
 le coucher du ... sunset
 sombre dark
 somme *f.* sum
 en ... in short
 somptueux,-euse sumptuous
 son his, her, its
 sonder to feel out

sonner to sound, ring
 sonnette *f.* bell, buzzer
 sorte *f.* kind, type
 de ... que so that
 sortie *f.* exit
 sortir to go out
 souci *m.* worry
 soudain sudden
 souffle *m.* breath
 souffrir to suffer
 souhaiter to wish
 soulier *m.* shoe
 soupe *f.* soup
 souper *m.* supper
 souper to have supper
 sourd,-e deaf
 sourire *m.* smile
 sous under
 souscrire to subscribe
 soutien *m.* support
 soutien-gorge *m.* brassiere
 souvenir remembrance
 se ... de to remember
 souvent often
 spectacle *m.* spectacle, show
 spectateur *m.* spectator
 sport *m.* sport
 sportif,-ve sporting
 subordonner to subordinate
 subventionner to subsidize
 succursale *f.* branch
 (of a firm)
 sucre *m.* sugar
 sucré,-e sweet
 sucrier *m.* sugar bowl
 sud *m.* south
 suffire to suffice
 Suisse *f.* Switzerland
 suisse *adj.* Swiss
 suite *f.* continuation, suite
 tout de ... immediately,
 suivant,-e following
 suivre to follow
 ... un cours to attend a
 course
 sujet *m.* subject
 supérieur,-e superior
 supprimer to suppress
 sur on
 sûr, sûre sure

surhumain,-e superhuman
 sur-le-champ on the spot, right
 away; right there and then
 sur mesure custom made
 surprendre to surprise
 surprise *f.* surprise
 surtout above all, especially
 surveiller to supervise,
 to watch
 sympathie *f.* sympathy
 sympathique likable
 symptôme *m.* symptom
 syndicat *m.* syndicate,
 union (of workers)
 synonyme *m.* synonym
 système *m.* system

T

tabac *m.* tobacco
 bureau de ... tobacco store
 table *f.* table
 tableau *m.* picture, painting
 tablier *m.* apron
 tâcher to try
 taille *f.* waist, stature
 tailler to cut
 tailleur *m.* tailor
 costume ... woman's suit
 talent *m.* talent
 talon *m.* heel
 tandis que whereas
 tant so many, so much
 ... de so many, so much
 ... que as long as
 tante *f.* aunt
 tapis *m.* rug
 tard late (in the day)
 tarder to delay, to defer
 ... à to be late in, to delay,
 to put off
 ... de to be anxious to
 tarte *f.* pie
 tas *m.* pile, lot
 tasse *f.* cup
 taux *m.* rate
 ... de change rate of
 exchange
 taxe *f.* tax
 taxi *m.* taxi
 teindre to dye
 tel,-le such a

téléphone *m.* telephone
 coup de ... telephone call
 téléphoner to telephone
 téléphoniste *m., f.* telephone
 operator
 tellement so, so much
 témoin *m.* witness
 tempête *f.* storm
 temps *m.* time, weather,
 à ... on time
 de ... en ... once in a while
 en même ... at the same
 time
 tendance *f.* tendency
 tendancieux,-euse tendentious
 tendre tender
 tenir to hold
 ... à to be anxious to,
 to be fond of
 ... compte to take into
 account, to heed
 ... de to resemble, to take
 after
 tennis *m.* tennis
 tenter to tempt
 terminus *m.* terminal
 terrasse *f.* terrace, sidewalk
 café
 tête *f.* head
 avoir mal à la ... to have a
 headache
 thé *m.* tea
 théâtre *m.* theater
 thermomètre *m.* thermometer
 tiens well!, indeed!
 tiers *m.* third
 timbre *m.* stamp
 tirer to pull
 se ... d'affaire to get along,
 to manage
 se bien ... de to come off
 well
 ... d'un mauvais pas
 to get out of a bad fix
 tissu *m.* cloth
 toile *f.* linen
 toilette *f.* toilet
 faire sa ... to get dressed
 toit *m.* roof
 tomate *f.* tomato
 tombeau *m.* tomb

tomber to fall
torrent *m.* torrent
 à ... s pouring
tort *m.* wrong
 avoir ... to be wrong
torturer to torture
tôt soon, early
toucher to cash, to touch
toujours always, still
tour *f.* tower
tour *m.* tour, trip, turn
tourelle *f.* turret
tourne-vis *m.* screw-driver
tourner to turn
tournoi *m.* tournament
tout-e, tous, toutes all, every
 ... à coup suddenly
 ... à fait entirely
 ... d'un coup suddenly
 ... de même anyhow, just
 the same
toux *f.* cough
trac *m.* stage fright
trahir to betray
train *m.* train
 en ... de in the act of
traire to milk
trait *m.* trait
traite *f.* draft (commercial)
traiter to treat
trajet *m.* trip
tramway *m.* trolley
tranche *f.* slice
transaction *f.* transaction
transatlantique transatlantic
 un train ... a transatlantic
 boat train
transpiration *f.* perspiration
transporter to transport, carry
travail *m.* work
travailler to work
travers *m.* breadth
 à ... across, through
traversée *f.* crossing
traverser *f.* cross
trempé,-e soaked
très very
trêve *f.* truce
 ... de enough
triste sad
tristesse *f.* sadness

tromper to deceive
 se ... to be wrong
trop too, too much
trottoir *m.* sidewalk
trouver to find
 se ... to be (in a place)
tu you
tutelle *f.* tutelage
tutoyer to address familiarly,
 as tu

U

un,-e *m. f., a, an, one*
uniformité *f.* uniformity
uniquement exclusively
université *f.* university
urgence *f.* urgency
us *m. pl.* usages
 ... et coutumes ways and
 customs
usage *m.* use costum
usine *f.* factory, plant
utile useful
utiliser to use

V

vacances *f. pl.* vacation,
 cours de ... summer session
vaisselle *f.* the dishes
vaguement vaguely
valable valuable
valeurs *f.* valuables, securities
valise *f.* suitcase, valise
vallée *f.* valley
valoir to be worth
 ... mieux to be better
 ⁱ (preferable)
 ... la peine to be worth
 the trouble
vapeur *f.* steam
veau *m.* veal
véhicule *m.* vehicle
veine *f.* luck
 avoir de la ... to be lucky
velours *m.* velvet
vendeuse *f.* saleslady
vendre to sell
vendredi *m.* Friday
venger to avenge
venir to come
 ... de to have just

vente f. sale
vergogne f. shame
vérité f. truth
verre m. glass
vers about, toward
vert,-e green
vertige m. dizziness
veste f. jacket
vestiaire m. checkroom,
 cloakroom
veston m. sport coat
vêtement m. dress, garment,
 clothes
veuillez please
viande f. meat
 ... **frigorifiée** frozen meat
vie f. life, living
vieillesse f. old age
vieux, vieil, vieille old
vieux jeu old-fashioned
vif, vive alive
ville f. city, town
 en pleine ... in the center
 of the city
vin m. wine
vinaigre m. vinegar
vingt twenty
vingtaine f. about twenty
vis f. nut
visa m. visa
visage m. face
visière f. visor
visite f. visit
 ... **douanière f.** customs
 examination
visiter to visit
visiteur m. visitor
vite quickly, fast

vitrail,-aux m. stained glass
 window
voici here is, here are
voie f. way, track
voilà there is; well!, there you
 are!
voir to see
voisin,-e m. f., neighbor,
 neighboring
voiture f. automobile,
 carriage, railway car
voix f. voice
volant m. steering wheel
voler to fly, to steal
volontiers willingly
vos your
votre your
vôtre yours
vouloir to want
 ... **bien** to be willing
vous you
voyage m. trip
voyager to travel
voyageur,-euse m. traveler
vrai,-e true
vraiment truly, really
vue f. sight, view, eyesight

W X Z

wagon m. railroad car
wagon-lit m. sleeping-car
wagon-restaurant m. dining
 car
y there (place already
 mentioned)
y a-t-il? is there? are there?
zéro m. zero

ENGLISH-FRENCH DICTIONARY

A

- a un, une
able, to be pouvoir
about à peu près
above au-dessus, dessus
absent absent, e
absolutely absolument
absorbent cotton coton
hydrophile *m.*
accelerator accélérateur *m.*
accept accepter
accent accent *m.*
accident accident *m.*
accompany accompagner
according to selon
account compte *m.*
accuse, to accuser
accustomed, to be habituer
acquaintance connaissance *f.*
across à travers
across the street en face
act, to agir
act acte *m.*
activity activité *f.*
address adresse *f.*
address, to adresser
address familiarly, to tutoyer
admire admirer
advice, conseil *m.*
afraid, to be avoir peur
after après
afternoon après-midi *f.*
afterwards ensuite
again de nouveau
against contre
age âge *m.*
agent représentant *m.*
agree, to être d'accord
agreeable agréable
airplane avion *m.*
air line route aérienne *f.*
airplane avion *m.*
airport aérodrome *m.*
air mail par avion
air sickness mal de l'air *m.*
air valve soupape d'air *f.*
alarm clock réveil *m.*
alcohol alcool *m.*
alive vif, vive
all tout, tous
all aboard! en voiture!
almost presque
alone seul, e
already déjà
also aussi
always toujours
America Amérique *f.*
American américain, e
amiable aimable
among parmi, entre
amusing amusant, e
and et
angry fâché, e
announce annoncer
annoying ennuyeux, euse
answer réponse *f.*
answer, to répondre
any aucun, e
anyhow tout de même
apartment appartement *m.*
appear paraître
appearance air *m.*
appetite appétit *m.*

apple pomme *f.*
 appointment rendez-vous *m.*
 approach, to approcher
 approximately à peu près
 April avril *m.*
 argue discuter
 armchair fauteuil *m.*
 arrange arranger
 arrival arrivée *f.*
 arrive arriver
 art art *m.*
 artificial artificiel,-le
 as comme
 as for quant à
 as much autant
 as soon as aussitôt que,
 dès que
 as to quant à
 ask, to demander
 ask a question, to
 poser une question
 asparagus asperge *f.*
 aspirin aspirine *f.*
 at chez, à
 attach attacher
 attack, to attaquer
 August août *m.*
 aunt tante *f.*
 authentic authentique
 author auteur *m.*
 automatic automatique
 automobile voiture *f.*
 avenue avenue *f.*
 average moyen,-ne
 avoid éviter

B

bacon petit lard *m.*
 bad mauvais,-e
 badly mal
 bag sac *m.*
 baggage bagage *m.*
 ... check bulletin de
 bagage
 baker boulanger *m.*
 ball (dance) bal *m.*
 banana banane *f.*
 band-aid pansement *m.*
 bandage bandage *m.*
 bank banque *f.*

bank (of a river) rive *f.*
 bar bar *m.*
 barber coiffeur *m.*
 bargain, to marchander
 barometer baromètre *m.*
 barrel tonneau *m.*
 basin bassin *m.*
 basket corbeille *f.*
 bath bain *m.*
 bathe se baigner
 bathing suit
 costume de bain *m.*
 bathroom salle de bain *f.*
 bathtub baignoire *f.*
 be, to être
 beach plage *f.*
 beach umbrella ombrelle *f.*
 bean haricot *m.*
 beard barbe *f.*
 beautiful beau, bel, belle
 beauty beauté *f.*
 because parce que, à cause de
 become, to devenir
 bed lit *m.*
 bedroom chambre à coucher *f.*
 bedroom slippers pantoufles *f.*
 bee abeille *f.*
 beef boeuf *m.*
 beer bière *f.*
 before avant
 beg, to prier
 begin commencer
 beginning commencement *m.*
 beginning with à partir de
 behavior conduite *f.*
 behind derrière
 Belgian belge
 believe croire
 bell sonnette *f.*
 bell-boy chasseur *m.*
 belong appartenir
 berth couchette *f.*
 best, the le meilleur
 better *adv.* mieux
 better *adj.* meilleur,-e
 between entre
 beware *interj.* gare
 bicycle bicyclette, liécane *f.*
 big grand,-e
 bill addition *f.* (restaurant);
 facture (all else)

bill (cash) billet m.
bill-fold portefeuille m.
bird oiseau m.
birth naissance f.
birthday anniversaire m.
bite, to mordre
bitter amer,-ère
black noir,-e
blade lame f.
blanket couverture f.
bleach, to faire décolorer
bleed saigner
blouse blouse f.
blow coup m.
blow out, to crever
blue bleu,-e
blunder gaffe f.
boarding-house pension f.
boat bateau m.
body corps m.
boiled bouilli,-e
bolt boulon m.
bone os m.
book livre m.
bookstore librairie f.
border frontière f.
border, to border
bored, to be s'ennuyer
boric acid acide borique m.
boring rasant (slang)
boss patron m.
bother, to ennuyer
bottle bouteille f.
bottom fond m.
box boîte f.
box office guichet m.
boy garçon m.
bracelet bracelet m.
brake frein m.
branch (of tree) branche f.
branch (of a firm) succursale f.
brand marque f.
brandy cognac m.
brassiere soutien-gorge m.
breakfast petit déjeuner m.
bread pain m.
breadth travers m.
break, to casser
breakdown (of an automobile)
 panne f.
breath souffle m.

breathe respirer
bridge pont m.
bring apporter
bring back ramener
 rapporter
broken (out of order)
 détriqué,-e
brother frère m.
brush brosse f.
build, to construire
building bâtiment, édifice m.
bus autobus m.
business affaires f.pl.
business commercial,-e
business firm
 maison de commerce f.
busy occupé,-e
but mais
butter beurre m.
button bouton m.
buy, to acheter
buzzer sonnette f.
by par

C

cabaret cabaret m.
cabbage chou m.
cabin cabine f.
cablegram cable m.
cake gâteau,-x m.
call appeler
campaign campagne f.
cancel, to annuler
cap casquette f.
capital capital m.
car auto f.
car door portière f.
carbon carbone m.
carburetor carburateur m.
card carte f.
carpenter charpentier m.
carrot carotte f.
carry porter
carry off emporter
case cas m.
cash a check encaisser un
 chèque
castle château,-x m.
cat chat m.

362 THE CORTINA METHOD

catch attraper
 cathedral cathédrale *f.*
 cauliflower choux-fleur *m.*
 cause cause *f.*
 cave grotte *f.*
 caviar caviar *m.*
 ceiling plafond *m.*
 celebrate, to célébrer
 cellar cave *f.*
 cement ciment *m.*
 center centre *m.*
 central heating chauffage
 central *m.*
 century siècle *m.*
 cereals céréales *f. pl.*
 certainly certainement
 chair chaise *f.*
 chalk craie *f.*
 chambermaid femme de
 chambre *f.*
 change monnaie *f.*
 change, to changer
 change purse porte-monnaie
 m.
 chapel chapelle *f.*
 chapter chapitre *m.*
 character caractère,
 personnage *m.*
 characteristic caractéristique
 charm charme *m.*
 charmed enchanté,-e
 charming charmant,-e
 cheap bon marché
 cheaper moins cher
 check chèque *m.*
 check, to contrôler, voir
 checkroom consigne *f.*
 vestiaire *m.*
 cheese fromage *m.*
 chef chef *m.*
 chest caisse *f.*
 chicken fricassée poule au riz
 f.
 chief chef *m.*
 child enfant *m. f.*
 chin menton *m.*
 chocolate chocolat *m.*
 choice choix *m.*
 choose choisir
 chop côtelette *f.*
 church église *f.*

cigar cigarette *m.*
 cigarette cigarette *f.*
 city ville *f.*
 city hall hôtel de ville *m.*
 claim, to prétendre
 clarity clarté *f.*
 class classe *f.*
 classical classique
 climate climat *m.*
 clean, to nettoyer
 clean propre
 clear clair,-e, net,-te
 clear the table desservir
 climb monter
 clinic clinique *f.*
 cloakroom vestiaire *m.*
 clock horloge *f.*
 close, to fermer
 close fitting ajusté,-e
 closing fermeture *f.*
 cloth étoffe, tissue, toile *f.*
 clothes vêtements *f. pl.*
 toile *f.*
 clothing habillement *m.*
 cloud nuage *m.*
 coat manteau *m.*
 coffee café *m.*
 cold froid,-e
 cold (head) rhume *m.*
 collar col *m.*
 color couleur *f.*
 column colonne *f.*
 comb peigne *m.*
 comb (hair) coiffer
 (les cheveux)
 come venir
 comedy comédie *f.*
 comfort confort *m.*
 comfortable confortable
 commerce commerce *m.*
 commonly communément
 communicate, to
 communiquer
 communication
 communication *f.*
 company compagnie *f.*
 compare, to comparer
 comparison comparaison *f.*
 compartment compartiment
 m.

complete complet,-ète
 completely complètement
 complicated compliqué,-e
 compliment compliment *m.*
 concert concert *m.*
 conclude to conclure
 condition état *f.*
 congratulation félicitation *f.*
 conservatory conservatoire *m.*
 consider, to considérer
 consist, to consister
 constantly constamment
 consulate consulat *m.*
 consult, to consulter
 consultation consultation *f.*
 continental continental,-aux
 continuation suite *f.*
 continue, to continuer
 contract contrat *m.*
 contradict contredire
 contrary contraire *m.*
 contrast contraste *m.*
 convenient convenable
 conversation conversation *f.*
 converse, to causer
 cook cuisinier,-ère *m., f.*
 cook, to cuire
 cooked cuit,-e
 cool frais, fraîche
 copy copie *f.*
 copy (duplicate) exemplaire
m.
 cordially cordialement
 cork liège *m.*
 corner coin *m.*
 correct, to corriger
 corridor corridor, *m.*
 cost prix *m.*
 cost, to coûter
 cotton coton *m.*
 cough toux *f.*
 count compter
 countless innombrable
 country campagne *f.*
 pays *m.*
 course (in school) cours *m.*
 course plat *m.*
 court house palais de justice
m.
 courtier courtisan *m.*
 courtyard cour *f.*

cousir cousin *m., e f.*
 cover couvert *m.*
 cover, to couvrir
 cow vache *f.*
 cray-fish langouste *f.*
 crazy fou, folle
 cream crème *f.*
 cream one's face, to
 se pommader
 create, to créer
 credit crédit *m.*
 crisis crise *f.*
 critical critique
 cross, to traverser
 crossing traversée *f.*
 crowd foule *f.*
 cuff manchette *f.*
 cuff link bouton de manchette
m.
 cup tasse *f.*
 cure, to guérir
 curl boucle *f.*
 currency monnaie *f.*
 current courant
 curtain rideau *m.*
 custom coutume *f.*
 custom-house douane *f.*
 custom made sur mesure
 customer client *m.*
 customs douane *f.*
 customs examination
 visite douanière *f.*
 customs officer douanier *m.*
 cut, to couper, tailler
 cutlet côtelette *f.*
 cylinder cylindre *m.*

D

dainty coquet,-te
 damage dommage *m.*
 damn, to damner
 damp humide
 dance, to danser
 danger danger *m.*
 dangerous dangereux,-euse
 dare, to oser
 dark sombre, foncé,-e
 darkness obscurité *f.*
 darling chéri,-e
 date date *f.*
 daughter fille *f.*

dawn aube *f.*
 day jour *m.* journée *f.*
 dead mort,-e
 deaf sourd,-e
 dear cher, chère
 death mort *f.*
 debt dette *f.*
 decanter carafe *f.*
 deceive, to tromper
 December décembre *m.*
 deck-chair chaise-longue *f.*
 declare déclarer
 decorate décorer
 deed fait *f.*
 defend défendre
 degree degré, grade *m.*
 delay retard *m.*
 delay, to retarder
 delicacy délicatesse *f.*
 delicate délicat,-e
 delicious délicieux,-euse
 deliver livrer
 delivery livraison *f.*
 demolish, to démolir
 dentist dentiste *m.*
 depart, to partir
 departmental capital
 préfecture *f.*
 departure départ *m.*
 depend, to dépendre
 deposit, to déposer
 desire, to désirer
 desk bureau *m.*
 dessert dessert *m.*
 destination destination *f.*
 detailed détaillé,-e
 detective policier *m.*
 detest, to détester
 develop, to développer
 devote, to consacrer
 diamond diamant *m.*
 dictionary dictionnaire *m.*
 die, to mourir
 difference différence *f.*
 difference, make no être égal
 different différent,-e, divers,-e
 difficult difficile
 difficulty difficulté *f.*
 digestion digestion *f.*
 dine, to dîner

dining-car wagon-restaurant
 m.
 dining-room salle à manger
 dinner dîner *m.*
 diploma diplôme *m.*
 direct direct,-e
 directly directement
 dirty, to salir
 dirty sale
 disappear, to disparaître
 discover, to découvrir
 discuss, to discuter
 disembark débarquer
 disgust repulsion *f.*
 dish plat *m.*
 dishes vaisselle *f.*
 distance distance *f.*
 distant lointain,-e
 distinguished distingué,-e
 disturb déranger
 dive, to plonger
 divide diviser
 dizziness vertige *m.*
 do, to faire
 dock quai *m.*
 doctor médecin *m.*
 docteur *m.*
 door porte *f.*
 double double
 double to doubler
 double bed lit à deux places
 m.
 doubt doute *m.*
 doubt, to douter
 down à bas
 dozen douzaine *f.*
 draft courant d'air *m.*
 draft (commercial) traite *f.*
 dramatist dramaturge *m.*
 draw closer, to se rapprocher
 dress robe *f.*
 dress, to habiller
 dressmaker couturier *m.*
 dressed, to get faire sa toilette,
 s'habiller
 dresser commode *f.*
 dressing gown robe de
 chambre *f.*
 drink, to boire
 drink boisson *f.*
 drive, to conduire

driver chauffeur, conducteur
m.
driver's license permis de conduire *m.*
drugstore pharmacie *f.*
druggist pharmacien *m.*
dry clean, to faire nettoyer à sec
duck canard *m.*
during pendant
duty devoir *m.*
dwel, to habiter
dye, to faire teindre

E

each chacun,-e, chaque
ear oreille *f.*
early tôt
earn gagner
earring boucle d'oreille *f.*
easily facilement
east est *m.*
easy facile
eat manger
edge bord *m.*
effect effet *m.*
egg oeuf *m.*
 soft-boiled . . .oeuf à la coque
 fried . . . oeuf sur le plat
eight huit
eighteen dix-huit
eighth huitième
elbow coude *m.*
elect élire
electric électrique
electricity électricité *f.*
elegant élégant,-e, chic
elevator ascenseur *m.*
eleven onze
elsewhere ailleurs
embark s'embarquer
embroider, to broder
employee employé,-e *m., f.*
empty vide
end bout *m., fin f.*
engine moteur *m.*
engineer ingénieur *m.*
England Angleterre *f.*
English anglais,-e

enjoy jouir de
enormous énorme
enormously énormément
enough assez
enter, to entrer
enthusiasm enthousiasme *m.*
entire entier,-ère
entirely entièrement
entrance entrée *f.*
envelope enveloppe *f.*
epoch époque *f.*
equal égal,-e
equipment matériel *m.*
eraser gomme *f.*
error erreur *f.*
especially surtout
establish établir
evening soir *m.*
 soirée *f.*
event évènement *m.*
everybody tout le monde
everywhere partout
exact exact,-e, exactement
exactly au juste
examination examen *m.*
examine examiner
example exemple *m.*
 for . . . par exemple
excellent excellent,-e
except sauf,excepté
exception exception *f.*
excess luggage bagage en excédent *m.*
exchange échange *m.*
exchange, to échanger
exciting passionnant,-e
exclusively uniquement
excursion excursion *f.*
excuse excuser
excuse me pardonnez-moi
exercise exercice *m.*
exit sortie *f.*
expensive cher, chère
experience expérience *f.*
experience, to éprouver
experienced expérimenté
explain expliquer
explanation explication *f.*
export, to exporter
express, to exprimer
expression expression *f.*

extinguish éteindre
 extraordinary extraordinaire
 extreme extrême
 eye oeil *m.*
 eye glasses lunettes *f.*
 eyesight vue *f.*

F

face figure *f.*, visage *m.*
 face massage massage facial
 factory usine *f.*
 faint, to s'évanouir
 fall, to tomber
 Fall automne *f.*
 false faux, fausse
 family famille *f.*
 famous célèbre, fameux,-euse,
 illustre
 far loin
 fare prix du billet *m.*
 fashion mode *f.*
 fast vite, rapide
 fat gros,-se
 fat gras *m.*
 father père *m.*
 favor service *m.*
 favorable favorable
 favorite favori,-ite
 fear peur *f.*
 fear, to craindre
 February février *m.*
 fee honoraires *m., pl.*
 feel, to se sentir, sentir
 feel out, to sonder
 feel sick, to avoir mal au coeur
 felt hat feutre *m.*
 fertilize engrais *m.*
 festival fête *f.*
 fever fièvre *f.*
 fifteen quinze
 fifth cinquième
 fifty cinquante
 fill, to remplir
 fillet filet *m.*
 film rouleau *m.*
 film negative pellicule *f.*
 filter filtre *m.*
 finally enfin
 find trouver
 find again retrouver

find out (about) se renseigner
 finger doigt *m.*
 finger nail ongle *m.*
 finish finir
 fire feu *m.*
 first premier,-ère
 first (at) d'abord
 fish poisson *m.*
 fish, to pêcher
 fishing pêche *f.*
 five cinq
 flannel flanelle *f.*
 flat plat,-e
 flatter, to flatter
 flight vol *m.*
 float, to flotter
 floor étage *m.*, plancher *m.*
 floor, first rez-de-chaussée *m.*
 florist fleuriste *m., f.*
 flower fleur *f.*
 fluently couramment
 fly mouche *f.*
 fly, to voler
 foggy brumeux,-euse
 fortress château fort *m.*
 fold pli *m.*
 follow suivre
 following suivant,-e
 fond of, to be tenir à
 foot pied *m.*
 football football *m.*
 for car, pour
 forbid défendre
 forbidden interdit,-e
 force, to forcer
 foreign étranger,-ère
 foreigner étranger,-ère *m., f.*
 fork fourchette *f.*
 forget oublier
 form, to former
 form forme *f.*
 formality formalité *f.*
 formerly autrefois
 formula formule *f.*
 fortress château fort *m.*
 fortunately heureusement
 fountain fontaine *f.*
 fountain pen porte-plume *m.*
 four quatre
 fourteen quatorze

fourth quatrième
 franc franc *m.* (money)
 France France *f.*
 free libre
 freedom liberté *f.*
 freeze, to geler
 French français, -e
 fresh frais, fraîche
 Friday vendredi *m.*
 friend ami, -e *m., f.*
 frighten faire peur à
 frill chichi *m.*
 frost gelée *f.*
 fruit fruit *m.*
 fry, to frire
 function, to fonctionner
 funds fonds *m.pl.*
 funny drôle
 fur fourrure, *f.*
 furnish fournir, meubler
 furnished room chambre
 meublée *f.*
 furniture (piece of) meuble *m.*

G

gallery galerie *f.*
 game jeu *m.*
 gang plank passerelle *f.*
 garage garage *m.*
 garage man dépanneur *m.*
 garden jardin *m.*
 garlic ail *m.*
 garment vêtement *m.*
 garters jarretières *f.*
 gas gaz *m.*
 gasoline essence *f.*
 gas tank réservoir à essence
 m.
 gastronomy gastronomie *f.*
 gate barrière *f.*
 gauze bandage
 gaze hydrophile *f.*
 gay gai, -e
 general général, -e
 general delivery poste
 restante *f.*
 generally généralement
 gentlemen messieurs
 geometric géométrique
 get up, to se lever

gift cadeau *m.*
 girdle gaine *f.*
 girl jeune fille *f.*
 give, to donner
 give back rendre
 glass verre *m.*
 glory gloire *f.*
 glove gant *m.*
 go aller
 go down, to descendre
 go out, to sortir
 go up, to monter
 goat chèvre *f.*
 God Dieu
 gold or *m.*
 golf golf *m.*
 good bon, -ne
 good-bye au revoir
 good day bonjour
 good evening bonsoir
 good luck bonne chance
 good morning bonjour
 government gouvernement
 m.

graceful gracieux, -euse
 grape raisin *m.*
 grapefruit pamplemousse *m.*
 grateful reconnaissant, -e
 grass herbe *f.*
 gravy jus *m.*
 great grand, -e
 Greek grec, -que
 green vert, -e
 greeting salutation *f.*
 grocery store épicerie *f.*
 grow, to croître, pousser,
 grandir
 guarantee to garantir
 guardian gardien *m.*
 guest invité *m.* or *f.*
 guide, to guider
 guide guide *m.*

H

habit coutume *f.*
 haircut coupe *f.*
 hairdresser coiffeur *m.*
 half demi, -e, moitié *f.*
 hail, to héler
 hall porter garçon *m.*

halt halte *f.*
ham jambon *m.*
hamlet hameau *m.*
hand main *f.*
handbag sac à main *m.*
handkerchief mouchoir *m.*
handlebar guidon *m.*
hang up raccrocher
happy content,-e, heureux,
 -euse
harbor port *m.*
hard dur,-e
harmful, to be nuire à
harmonious harmonieux,-euse
harshly rudement
hat chapeau,-x
have, to avoir
have to, to devoir, falloir
he il
head tête *f.*
headache mal à la tête *m.*
health santé *f.*
healthy sain,-e
hear entendre
heart coeur *m.*
hearth foyer *m.*
heat chaleur *f.*
heat, to chauffer
heating chauffage *m.*
heavy lourd
heel talon *m.*
height hauteur *f.*
hell enfer *m.*
hello bonjour
help, to aider
helping portion *f.*
her elle, son, sa
here ici
here is, are voici
hesitate, to hésiter
hide, to cacher
high haut,-e, élevé,-e
high school collège *m.*,
 lycée *m.*
hill côte *f.*
hire, to louer
historical historique
history histoire *f.*
hit, to frapper
hitchhike, to faire de l'auto-
 stop

hold, to tenir
holiday jour de congé *m.*
holidays vacances *f.*
home domicile *m.*
honey miel *m.*
honeymoon lune de miel *f.*
honor, to honorer
honor honneur *m.*
hope, to espérer
horse cheval,-aux *m.*
horse-cab fiacre *m.*
hospital hôpital *m.*
hot chaud,-e
hotel hôtel *m.*
hour heure *f.*
house maison *f.*
how comment
how many combien
how much combien
however cependant, pourtant
human humain,-e
humidity humidité *f.*
humor humour *m.*
hundred cent *m.*
hunger faim *f.*
hungry, to be avoir faim
hungry affamé,-e
hunting chasse *f.*
hurry, to se dépêcher
hurt, to faire mal
husband mari *m.*

I

I je
ice glace *f.*
ice-cream glace *f.*
idea idée *f.*
identification card carte
 d'identité *f.*
identification paper pièce
 d'identité *f.*
identify, to identifier
identity identité *f.*
if si
ignition allumage *m.*
imagine, to se figurer,
 imaginer
immediate immédiat,-e
immediately tout de suite
 immédiatement
impatient impatient,-e

import importation f.
import, to importer
importance importance f.
impress impressioner
impression impression f.
impressive impressionant,-e
improve, to se perfectionner
in dans, en
in front of devant
in order to pour
income revenu m.
income tax impôt sur le
revenu m.
inconvenience, to déranger
increase augmenter
indicate, to indiquer
indirect indirect,-e
indirectly indirectement
individual individuel,-le
inferior inférieur
infinite infini,-e
infinitely infiniment
inform aviser
information renseignement m.
information f.
informed, to be être au cou-
rant de
inhabitant habitant m.
ink encre f.
inquire, to se renseigner
inscribe inscrire
insect repellent insecticide m.
inside dedans
insist, to insister
institute institut m.
insult injure f.
insurance assurance f.
intellectual intellectuel,-le
intelligence intelligence f.
intention intention f.
interest intérêt m.
interesting intéressant,-e
interior intérieur,-e
intermission entr'acte m.
interpreter interprète m.
intrepid intrépide
introduction introduction f.
intruder intrus m.
invitation invitation f.
invite inviter
invited invité,-e

iodine iode m.
iron fer m.
iron, to repasser
ironical ironique
island île f.
it il, elle
Italian italien,-ne
itinerary itinéraire m.

J

jack cric m.
jacket veste, jaquette f.
jam confiture f.
janitor concierge m., f.
January janvier m.
jewel bijou,-x m.
jeweler bijoutier m.
join rejoindre
joke plaisanterie f.
joke, to plaisanter
journal (personal) agenda m.
joy joie f.
July juillet m.
jump sauter
June juin m.
justice justice f.

K

keep garder
key clef f.
kidding (slang) blague,
plaisanterie f.
kidney rognon m.
kilogram kilo m.
kilometer kilomètre m.
kind gentil,-le
kind sorte, espèce f.,
genre m.
kindness bienveillance f.
king roi m.
kiss, to embrasser
kitchen cuisine f.
knee genou m.
knife couteau m.
knock cogner, frapper
know connaître, savoir
knowledge connaissance f.
known connu,-e

L

- labor main d'oeuvre *f.*
 lace dentelle *f.*
 lace, shoe lacet *m.*
 lack, to manquer de
 ladder échelle *f.*
 ladies mesdames *f.*
 lady dame *f.*
 lake lac *m.*
 lamb agneau *m.*
 lamp lampe *f.*
 lamp bulb ampoule *f.*
 land, to débarquer
 land (an airplane) atterrir
 language langue *f.*
 large grand,-e
 last, dernier,-ère
 last, to durer
 late tard,-e
 laugh rire
 laundry blanchisserie *f.*
 law loi *f.*
 laziness paresse *f.*
 lazy paresseux,-euse
 lead, to mener
 leaf feuille *f.*
 learn apprendre
 lease bail *m.*
 least moindre
 leather cuir *m.*
 leave quitter, laisser
 lecture conférence *f.*
 left gauche *f.*
 leg (meat) cuisse *f.*
 leg (limb) jambe *f.*
 lemon citron *m.*
 lemonade limonade *f.*
 lend, to prêter
 lengthen allonger
 less moins
 lesson leçon *f.*
 let, to laisser
 letter lettre *f.*
 letter of credit lettre de
 crédit *f.*
 lettuce laitue *f.*
 liaison liaison *f.*
 library bibliothèque *f.*
 lie mensonge *m.*
 life vie *f.*
 light clair,-e
 light lumière *f.*
 light, to allumer
 light up, to éclairer
 lighter briquet *m.*
 lightning éclairs *m.pl.*
 likable sympathique
 like, to aimer
 like comme
 line ligne *f.*
 linen toile *f.*
 lip lèvre *f.*
 lipstick rouge à lèvres *m.*
 liqueur liqueur *f.*
 listen écouter
 literary littéraire
 literature littérature *f.*
 little petit,-e, peu
 live demeurer, habiter
 liver foie *m.*
 living room salon *m.*
 loaf miche *f.*
 lobster homard *m.*
 lock serrure *f.*
 lodge, to loger
 long long,-ue
 long distance call interurbain
 long time longtemps
 look at regarder
 look for chercher
 look like, to avoir l'air de . . .
 lose, to perdre
 lost perdu,-e
 lot tas *m.*
 lounge foyer *m.*
 love, to aimer
 low bas,-se
 luck chance, veine *f.* (slang)
 lucky, to be avoir de la veine
 lunch, to déjeuner
 lunch déjeuner *m.*
 lung poumon *m.*

M

- machine machine *f.*
 magic magique *adj.*
 magnificent magnifique
 maid bonne *f.*
 ma¹ courrier *m.*
 ma a principal,-e

- majesty majesté *f.*
 majority plupart *f.*
 make faire
 man homme *m.*
 manage, to se tirer d'affaire
 se débrouiller
 management direction *f.*
 manager directeur,-trice,
 gérant,-e
 manicurist manucure *m.*
 manner façon *f.*
 manufacture, to fabriquer
 manufacturing fabrication *f.*
 map plan *m.*
 March mars *m.*
 mark marque *f.*
 market marché *m.*
 marriage, wedding mariage *m.*
 marvellous merveilleux-euse
 mashed potato purée de
 pomme de terre *f.*
 match allumette *f.*
 mattress matelas *m.*
 May mai *m.*
 me moi
 meal repas *m.*
 mean, to vouloir dire
 measure mesure *f.*
 meat viande *f.*
 medicine médicament *m.*
 meet rencontrer
 meeting assemblée, rencontre
 f.
 melon melon *m.*
 member membre *m.*
 memory mémoire *f.*
 mend, to repriser
 menu menu *m.*
 merchant marchand *m.*
 merchandise marchandise *f.*
 message message *m.*
 metal métal *m.*
 meter compteur *m.*
 middle milieu *m.*
 midnight minuit *m.*
 milliner modiste *f.*
 milk lait *m.*
 milk, to traire
 mind esprit *m.*
 mine mien, mienne
 mineral water eau minérale *f.*
 minute minute *f.*
 mirror glace *f.*, miroir *m.*
 misfortune malheur *m.*
 mislay égarer
 Miss mademoiselle
 miss, to manquer
 mistake erreur *m.*, faute *f.*
 mister monsieur *m.*
 misunderstanding malentendu
 m.
 mix, to mélanger
 mixture mélange *m.*
 mob foule *f.*
 mock moquer
 modern moderne
 moistness moiteur *f.*
 moment moment, instant *m.*
 Monday lundi *m.*
 money argent *m.*
 money order mandat-poste *m.*
 monkeywrench clef anglaise *f.*
 month mois *m.*
 monument monument *m.*
 moon lune *f.*
 more plus, davantage
 moreover puis, d'ailleurs
 morning matin *m.*, matinée *f.*
 mosquito moustique *m.*
 most plupart
 mother maman, mère *f.*
 motor moteur *m.*
 mountain montagne *f.*
 moustache moustache *f.*
 mouth bouche *f.*
 move, to déplacer
 move away, to déménager
 move in s'installer
 movement mouvement *m.*
 movie camera appareil ciné-
 matographique *m.*
 movie theatre cinéma *m.*
 moving picture film *m.*
 Mr. Monsieur, M.
 Mrs. Madame, Mme
 much beaucoup
 museum musée *m.*
 music musique *f.*
 music hall music hall *m.*
 musician musicien,-ne
 mustard moutarde *f.*

my mon, ma, mes
mysterious mystérieux,-ieuse

N

nail clou, ongle (finger) *m.*
name nom *m.*
napkin serviette *f.*
narrow étroit,-e
natural naturel,-le
naturally naturellement
nature nature *f.*
nave nef *f.*
near près
nearly presque
necessary nécessaire
neck cou *m.*
necktie cravate *f.*
need, to avoir besoin de
needle aiguille *f.*
neighbor voisine,-e *m.*
neighborhood alentours *m. pl.*
neither ni, non plus
... nor, ni ... ni
nephew neveu *m.*
network réseau *m.*
never jamais
nevertheless pourtant,
néanmoins
new neuf,-ve, nouveau,
nouvel,-le
news nouvelles *f. pl.*
newspaper journal,-aux *m.*
newsstand kiosque *m.*
next prochain-e
next day lendemain *m.*
night nuit *f.*
night club boîte de nuit *f.*
nightgown chemise de nuit *f.*
nine neuf
nineteen dix-neuf
no admittance! défense
d'entrer!
no trespassing accès interdit
noise bruit *m.*
no non
nobility noblesse *f.*
noise bruit *m.*
noon midi *m.*
north nord *m.*
not pas, ne ... pas

not ... anything ne ... rien
notably notamment
notary notaire *m.*
notebook cahier *m.*
nothing rien
notice avis *m.*
notice, to remarquer
novel roman *m.*
November novembre *m.*
now maintenant
nowadays actuellement
number numéro *m.*
nurse infirmière *f.*
nut noix *f.*

O

obelisk obélisque *m.*
object objet *m.*
objective objectif,-ive
oblige obliger
observation observation *f.*
observe, to constater
obtain obtenir
obviously évidemment
occupant occupant *m.*
'occupation occupation *f.*
occupy occuper
octagonal octogonal
October octobre *m.*
odor odeur *f.*
of de
of course bien entendu
offend, to offenser, froisser
offer, to offrir
offer offre *m.*
office bureau *m.*
official officiel,-le
often souvent
oil huile *f.*
ointment pommade *f.*
O.K. d'accord
old vieux, vieille, ancien,-ne
old age vieillesse *f.*
old-fashioned vieux jeu,
suranné,-e
omelet omelette *f.*
on sur, dessus
once une fois
one un,-e
one way street sens unique *m.*

onion *m.* oignon
 only seulement
 open ouvert, *e*
 open, to ouvrir
 opera opéra *m.*
 opinion opinion *f.*, avis *m.*
 oppose, to opposer
 or ou
 orange orange *f.*
 order ordre *m.*
 order, to commander
 organize organiser
 originality originalité *f.*
 other autre
 otherwise autrement
 our notre, nos
 ourselves nous-mêmes
 outside dehors
 over dessus, sur
 over there là bas
 overcoat pardessus *m.*
 overseas outre-mer
 overturn capotage *m.*
 owe, to devoir
 own propre
 oysters huîtres *f.*

P

pack, to emballer
 package paquet *m.*
 page page *f.*
 pain peine, douleur *f.*, mal *m.*
 paint, to peindre
 painting peinture *f.*,
 tableau *m.*
 pair paire *f.*
 palace palais *m.*
 palate palais *m.*
 pale pâle
 palm (of hand) paume *f.*
 panties culotte *f.*
 paper papier *m.*
 parcel colis *m.*
 parcel post colis postal *m.*
 pardon, to pardonner
 pardon pardon *m.*
 parent, *e m.*, *f.*
 Parisian parisien, *ne*
 park the car garer la voiture
 part part, partie *f.*

participate participer
 pass, to passer
 passport passeport *m.*
 pastry pâtisserie *f.*
 pastrymaker pâtissier, ère
 patriot patriote *m.*
 pattern patron *m.*
 pavillon kiosque *m.*
 pay payer, régler
 pay cash payer au comptant
 payment paiement *m.*
 peace paix *f.*
 peach pêche *f.*
 peanut cacahuète *f.*
 pear poire *f.*
 peas petits pois *m.*
 pedal pédale *f.*
 pedestrian piéton *m.*
 peer pair *m.*
 pen plume *f.*
 pencil crayon *m.*
 people monde, gens *m.*
 pepper poivre *m.*
 per par
 perceive apercevoir
 per cent pour cent
 perfect parfait, *e*
 perfectly parfaitement
 performance représentation *f*
 perfume parfum *m.*
 perhaps peut-être
 perish, to périr
 permanent wave permanente
 f.
 permit, to permettre
 person personne *f.*
 personal personnel, *le*
 perspiration transpiration *f.*
 persuade persuader
 petroleum pétrole *m.*
 petticoat jupon *m.*
 pharmacy pharmacie *f.*
 photograph photo *f.*
 physician médecin *m.*
 piano piano *m.*
 picture tableau *m.*
 picture postcard carte postale
 illustrée *f.*
 picturesque pittoresque
 pie tarte *f.*
 piece morceau *m.*

pier quai *m.*
 pile tas *m.*
 pill pilule *f.*
 pillow oreiller, coussin *m.*
 pilot pilote *m.*
 pin épingle *f.*
 pineapple ananas *m.*
 pipe pipe *f.*
 pity, to plaindre, avoir
 pitié de
 place endroit, lieu *m.*
 place, to placer, mettre
 plan projet *m.*
 plant plante *f.*
 plate assiette *f.*
 platform plate-forme *f.*
 quai *m.*
 play pièce *f.*
 play, to jouer
 player joueur *m.*
 playhouse salle de théâtre *f.*
 pleasant aimable
 please veuillez, s'il vous plaît
 please, to plaire à
 pleasure plaisir *m.*
 plum prune *f.*
 pocket poche *f.*
 poem poème *m.*
 poet poète *m.*
 poetic poétique
 poetry poésie *f.*
 point point *m.*
 police headquarters préfecture
 de police *f.*
 police station commissariat *m.*
 policeman gendarme, agent
 (de police) *m.*
 polite poli
 political politique
 politics politique *f.*
 poor pauvre
 pork porc *m.*
 port port *m.*
 porter porteur *m.*
 position position *f.*
 possess, to posséder
 possible possible
 postage affranchissement *m.*
 postman facteur *m.*
 post office poste *f.*
 postpone remettre

potato pomme de terre *f.*
 pound livre *f.*
 poverty misère *f.*
 powder poudre *f.*
 powder, to poudrer
 practical commode, pratique
 practice, to s'exercer
 praise, to louer
 pray prier
 precise précis,-e
 precisely justement
 prefer préférer
 prejudice préjugé *m.*
 prepare préparer
 prescription ordonnance *f.*
 present actuel,-le
 present, to présenter
 press, to appuyer
 presumptuous presomptueux,
 -euse
 pretend, to prétendre
 pretty poli,-e
 prevent empêcher
 previously auparavant
 price prix *m.*
 principal principal
 print épreuve *f.*
 private particulier,-ère,
 privé,-e
 prize prix *m.*
 probably probablement
 professional professionnel,-le
 procure procurer
 produce, to produire
 product produit *m.*
 professional professionnel,-le
 profitable profitable
 profound profond-e
 program programme *m.*
 promenade promenade *f.*
 promise, to promettre
 properly proprement
 propose, to proposer
 proscribe, to proscrire
 protest protestation *f.*
 prove prouver
 pull, to tirer
 pulse pouls *m.*
 pump pompe *f.*
 punctual ponctuel,-le
 puncture crevaison *f.*

purchase, to acheter
 purchase achat *m.*
 pure pur, e
 purpose intention *f.*
 purpose, on exprès
 pursue, to poursuivre
 push, to pousser
 put placer, mettre
 pyjamas pyjamas *m.*

Q

quality qualité *f.*
 quarter quart *m.*
 queen reine *f.*
 question question *f.*
 quickly vite
 quit quitter
 quote, to citer

R

rabbit lapin *m.*
 race course *f.*
 radiator radiateur *m.*
 radio radio *f.*
 radio station poste *m.*
 railroad chemin de fer *m.*
 railroad-car wagon *m.*
 voiture *f.*
 railroad station gare *f.*
 rain pluie *f.*
 rain, to pleuvoir
 raincoat imperméable *m.*
 raise lever
 rank rang *m.*
 rate taux *m.*
 rate of exchange taux de
 change
 rather plutôt
 raw saignant, e
 rayon rayonne *f.*
 razor rasoir *m.*
 razor blade lame à rasoir *f.*
 reach, to parvenir
 react réagir
 read lire
 reading lecture *f.*
 ready prêt, e
 real réel, le
 realistic réaliste
 really réellement, vraiment

rear arrière
 reason, to raisonner
 reason raison *f.*
 reasonable raisonnable
 reassure, to rassurer
 recall, to rappeler
 receipt reçu *m.*
 receive recevoir
 recently récemment
 reception réception *f.*
 recognize reconnaître
 recommend recommander
 recover récupérer
 red rouge
 reduce réduire
 refresh, to rafraîchir
 refreshment rafraîchissement
m.
 refrigerator glacière *f.*
 refuse refuser
 register se faire inscrire,
 enregistrer
 register a letter faire recom-
 mander une lettre
 registered letter lettre recom-
 mandée *f.*
 regret regret *m.*
 regret, to regretter
 reign règne *m.*
 relate raconter
 relation relation *f.*
 relative parent, e
 relish hors d'oeuvre *m.*
 remake refaire
 remain rester
 remember se souvenir de
 rent loyer *m.*
 rent, to louer
 repair réparer
 repeat répéter
 replace remplacer
 represent représenter
 resemblance ressemblance *f.*
 resemble, to ressembler
 reside demeurer
 residence résidence *f.*
 resolve résoudre
 respect respect *m.*
 rest (remainder) reste *m.*
 rest repos *m.*
 restaurant restaurant *m.*

restriction restriction *f.*
 retain retenir
 return retourner, rentrer,
 revenir
 ribbon ruban *m.*
 rice riz *m.*
 rich riche
 ride promenade en voiture *f.*
 right droit,-e
 right away sur-le-champ
 ring, to sonner
 ring bague *f.* (on finger)
 rise hausse *f.* (in prices)
 river fleuve *m.*
 road route *f.*, chemin *m.*
 roast rôti *m.*
 roast, to rôtir
 roast beef rosbif *m.*
 roasted rôti,-e
 roll petit pain *m.*
 roll, to rouler
 roof toit *m.*
 room chambre, pièce, salle *f.*
 rose rose *f.*
 rough rude
 round round,-e
 row rang *m.*
 rubber caoutchouc *m.*
 ruby rubis *m.*
 rug tapis *m.*
 ruin ruine *f.*
 ruler règle *f.*
 run courir
 run along, to se sauver
 runner coureur *m.*
 running water eau courante *f.*
 rush hour heure d'affluence *f.*
 Russia Russie *f.*
 Russian russe
 rustic rustique

S

sad triste
 sadness tristesse *f.*
 safe sauf, sauve
 sail, to s'embarquer
 salad salade *f.*
 sale vente *f.*
 saleslady vendeuse *f.*
 salesman vendeur *m.*

salmon saumon *m.*
 salt sel *m.*
 salted salé,-e
 same même
 sand sable *m.*
 sandwich sandwich *m.*
 sanitary napkin, serviette
 hygiénique *f.*
 satisfy, to contenter, satisfaire
 Saturday samedi *m.*
 save sauver
 say, to dire
 scarcely à peine
 scene scène *f.*
 scenery paysage *m.*
 school école *f.*
 scissors ciseaux *m.*
 scrape, to gratter
 scratch égratignure *f.*
 scratch, to gratter
 screw-driver tourne-vis *m.*
 sea mer *f.*
 seal sceau *m.*
 season saison *f.*
 seasickness mal de mer *m.*
 seasoning assaisonnement *m.*
 seat place *f.*, siège *m.*
 second (time) seconde *f.*
 second second,-e, deuxième
 section of a city quartier *m.*
 securities valeurs *f. pl.*
 see voir
 see again revoir
 seem, to sembler
 seize saisir
 sell vendre
 send envoyer
 ... for envoyer chercher
 sentence phrase *f.*
 sentiment sentiment *m.*
 September septembre *m.*
 serious sérieux,-euse
 seriously pour de bon
 servant domestique *m., f.*
 serve servir
 set décor *m.*
 set, to mettre
 setting décor *m.*
 seven sept
 seventeen dix-sept
 seventy soixante-dix

- several** plusieurs
sew, to coudre
sewing couture *f.*
shadow ombre *f.*
shake, to secouer
share part *f.*
shave, to raser
shaving brush blaireau *m.*
shaving cream crème à barbe *f.*
shaving soap savon à barbe *m.*
she elle
sheep mouton *m.*
sheet drap *m.*
sheet of paper feuille de papier *f.*
shell, egg coque *f.*
shellfish soup bisque *f.*
shine, to (shoes) cirer
ship bateau, navire *m.*
shipment livraison *f.*
shirt chemise *f.*
shoe soulier *m.*, chaussure *f.*
shoemaker cordonnier *m.*
shop boutique *f.*
shop, to faire des achats, faire les courses
short court, -e
short caleçon *m.* (underwear)
short, in en somme
shoulder épaule *f.*
shout, to crier
show spectacle *m.*
show, to montrer
shower douche *f.*
shut, to fermer
shut up enfermer
sick malade
sickness maladie *f.*
side côté *m.*
sidewalk trottoir *m.*
sidewalk café terrasse *f.*
sign signe, pancarte, écriteau *m.*
sign, to signer
silent silencieux, -euse
silk soie *f.*
silverware argenterie *f.*
similar pareil, -le
simplicity simplicité *f.*
simply simplement
- since** depuis
 (because) puisque
sincere sincère, franc, -che
sincerely sincèrement
sing chanter
sir monsieur *m.*
sister soeur *f.*
sit down s'asseoir
six six
sixteen seize
size grandeur *f.*
 (clothing) taille
 numero . . .
skate, to patiner
skating patinage *m.*
skating rink patinoire *f.*
ski ski *m.*
ski, to faire du ski
skid, to dérapier
skin peau *f.*
skirt jupe *f.*
sky ciel *m.*
skyscraper gratte-ciel *m.*
slander médisance *f.*
sleep, to dormir
sleep, go to s'endormir
sleeping-car wagon-lit *m.*
sleeve manche *f.*
slice tranche *f.*
slip, to glisser
slip combinaison *f.*
slipper pantoufle *f.*
slope pente *f.*
slowly lentement
small petit, -e
smell, to sentir
smile sourire *m.*
smoke fumée *f.*
smoking compartiment fumeur *m.*
snapshot instantané *m.*
snow neige *f.*
snow, to neiger
soaked trempé, -e
soap savon *m.*
sock chaussette *f.*
soda water eau gazeuse *f.*
sofa canapé *m.*
soft mou, molle
soldier soldat *m.*
sole semelle *f.*

some des, quelque, quelques-uns
 sometimes parfois, quelquefois
 somewhere quelque part
 so much tant, tellement
 son fils *m.*
 song chanson *f.*
 soon bientôt
 sore throat mal à la gorge *m.*
 sorrow peine, douleur *f.*
 sorry désolé,-e
 soul âme *f.*
 sound, to soner
 soup potage *m.*
 south sud *m.*
 Spanish espagnol,-e
 speak parler
 special delivery letter express, pneumatique *m.* (in Paris)
 specify préciser
 spectator spectateur *m.*
 speed vitesse *f.*
 spend, to dépenser
 spite of, in malgré
 splendid splendide
 split, to fendre
 spoil, to gâter
 sport sport *m.*
 sporting sportif,-ive
 spot endroit *m.*
 spread répandre
 spring ressort *m.*
 spring (season) printemps *m.*
 spirits of ammonia ammoniaïque
 sponge éponge *f.*
 spoon cuillère *f.*
 sport coat veston *m.*
 spring printemps *m.*
 square carré,-e
 square place *f.*
 stage scène *f.*
 stained glass window vitrail
 stairway escalier *m.*
 stamp timbre *m.*
 standing debout
 star étoile *f.*
 starch amidon *m.*
 starch, to empeser
 start, to commencer

state état *m.*
 statement déclaration *f.*
 stationary store papeterie *f.*
 stature taille *f.*
 stay séjour *m.*
 stay, to rester
 steal voler
 steam vapeur *f.*
 steering wheel volant *m.*
 stick bâton *m.*
 still encore
 stocking bas *m.*
 stomach estomac *m.*
 stomach ache mal au ventre *m.*
 stop, to arrêter
 stop arrêt *m.*
 stopover escale *f.*
 store magasin *m.*
 storm tempête *f.*, orage *m.*
 story (floor) étage *m.*
 strange curieux, étrange
 strawberry fraise *f.*
 street rue *f.*
 strike grève *f.*
 string ficelle *f.*
 strong fort,-e
 student étudiant,-e
 study, to étudier
 study étude *f.*
 subject propos, sujet *m.*
 subordinate, to subordonner
 subscribe s'abonner
 subsidize, to subventionner
 subtle difference nuance *f.*
 suburb banlieue *f.*
 subway métro *m.*
 succeed réussir
 such a tel,-le
 sudden soudain,-e
 suddenly tout à coup
 suffer souffrir
 suffice suffire
 suffocate étouffer
 sugar sucre *m.*
 sugar-bowl sucrier *m.*
 suit complet, costume *m.*
 suit (woman's) costume tailleur *m.*
 suitcase valise *f.*
 sum somme *f.*

summer session cours de vacances *f. pl.*
summer été *m.*
sumptuous somptueux, euse
sun soleil *m.*
sun bath bain de soleil *m.*
sun-burn coup de soleil *m.*
sun glasses lunettes de soleil *f.*
Sunday dimanche *m.*
sunrise lever du soleil *m.*
sunset coucher de soleil *m.*
superb superbe
superior supérieur, e
supervise surveiller
supper souper *m.*
supply, to munir
support soutien *m.*
supposed to censé, e
sure sûr, e
surely assurément
surprise surprise *f.*
surprise, to surprendre
surround entourer
suspect, to se douter de
suspenders bretelles *f.*
sweet sucré, e, doux, douce
swell épatant, e
swim, to nager
swimming nage *f.*
Switzerland Suisse *f.*
sympathy sympathie *f.*
symptom symptôme *m.*
syndicate syndicat *m.*
synonym synonyme *m.*
system système *m.*

T

table table *f.*
tablecloth nappe *f.*
tailor tailleur
take prendre
take advantage of, to profiter
take along emener
take care of s'occuper de
take off, (to aviation) décoller
talent talent *m.*
taste goût *m.*
taste, to goûter
tax impôt *m.* taxe *f.*
taxi taxi *m.*

tea thé *m.*
teach, to enseigner
teacher professeur *m.*
technique technique *f.*
telegram dépêche *f.*
telephone, to téléphoner
telephone téléphone *m.*
telephone book annuaire, bottin *m.*
telephone booth cabine téléphonique *f.*
telephone call coup de téléphone *m.*
telepone operator téléphoniste *m., f.*
tempest tempête *f.*
tempt tenter
ten dix
tendency tendance *f.*
tender tendre
tennis tennis *m.*
term terme *m.*
terminal terminus *m.*
terrace terrasse *f.*
terribly terriblement
thank, to remercier
thanks merci
that ça, cela, ce, cette
the le, la, les
theater théâtre *m.*
theirs le leur
them eux, elles
then puis
there là
there is, are voilà
therefore donc
thermometer thermomètre *m.*
these ces, ceux
they ils, elles
thing chose *f.*
think penser, croire, réfléchir
third troisième
third tiers *m.*
thirst soif *f.*
thirteen treize
thirty trente
thirty-seven trente-sept
this ça, celui, celle, ceci, ce, cet, cette
thought pensée *f.*
thousand mille

thread fil *m.*
 three trois
 throat gorge *f.*
 throw, to lancer
 thunder tonnerre *m.*
 Thursday jeudi *m.*
 thus ainsi
 ticket collector contrôleur *m.*
 ticket office guichet *m.*
 ticket window guichet *m.*
 tight étroit,-e, serré,-e
 time temps *m.*, fois *f.*
 time table horaire *m.*
 tip pourboire *m.*
 tire pneu *m.*
 tire, to fatiguer
 tired fatigué,-e
 to à
 toast toast *m.*
 tobacco tabac *m.*
 tobacco store bureau de
 tabac *m.*
 today aujourd'hui
 together ensemble
 toilet toilette *f.*, cabinet *m.*
 tomato tomate *f.*
 tomb tombeau *m.*
 tomorrow demain
 tongue langue *f.*
 too aussi
 too much trop
 tooth dent *f.*
 toothache mal aux dents *m.*
 toothbrush brosse à dents *f.*
 tooth paste pâte dentifrice *f.*
 toothpick cure-dent *m.*
 top haut *m.*
 torture, to torturer
 touch, to toucher
 tough dur,-e
 tour tour *m.*
 tournament tournoi *m.*
 toward vers, envers
 towel serviette *f.*
 tower tour *f.*
 town ville *f.*
 town hall mairie *f.*
 toy jouet *m.*
 track voie *f.*
 traffic circulation *f.*
 traffic jam embouteillage *m.*

tragedy tragédie *f.*
 train train *m.*
 trait trait *m.*
 transaction transaction *f.*
 transatlantic transatlantique
 travel, to voyager
 traveler voyageur,-euse
 travelers check travelers
 chèque, chèque de
 tourisme *m.*
 tray plateau *m.*
 treat, to traiter
 tree arbre *m.*
 trimming garniture *f.*
 trip voyage *m.*
 trolley tramway *m.*
 trouble peine *f.*
 trousers pantalon *m.*
 truck camion *m.*
 true vrai,-e
 trunk malle *f.*
 truth vérité *f.*
 try, to tâcher, essayer
 Tuesday mardi *m.*
 turn, to tourner
 turret tourelle *f.*
 tuxedo smoking *m.*
 twelve douze
 twenty vingt
 twenty, about vingtaine *f.*
 twice deux fois
 twin beds lits jumeaux *m.*
 two deux
 type sorte *f.*, genre *m.*
 typewriter machine à écrire *f.*

U

ugly laid,-e
 umbrella parapluie *m.*
 unaware of, to be ignorer
 uncle oncle *m.*
 under dessous, sous
 understand comprendre
 underwear linge de corps *m.*
 undo, to défaire
 undress, to se déshabiller
 unforeseen imprévu,-e
 unfortunate malheureux,-euse
 unfortunately
 malheureusement

unhealthy malsain,-e
 uniformity uniformité *f.*
 union, workers' syndicat *m.*
 United States Etats-Unis *m.pl.*
 university université *f.*
 unknown inconnu,-e
 unpacking déballage *m.*
 unpleasant désagréable
 until jusqu'à
 up there là haut
 upset contrarié,-e
 upstairs en haut
 urgency urgence *f.*
 urgent urgent,-e
 us nous
 usages usages *m. pl.*
 use (custom) usage *m.*
 use, to se servir de
 useful utile
 useless inutile
 usher, to annoncer
 utilize, to utiliser

V

vacancy vide *m.*, lacune *f.*
 vacant libre
 vacation vacances *f. pl.*
 vaguely vaguement
 valley vallée *f.*
 valuable précieux,-se
 value, to estimer
 veal veau *m.*
 vegetable légume *m.*
 vehicle véhicule *m.*
 velvet velours *m.*
 very très
 vest gilet *m.*
 vicinity environs *m. pl.*
 view vue *f.*
 vinegar vinaigre *m.*
 visa visa *m.*
 visit, to visiter
 visit visite *f.*
 visitor visiteur *m.*
 vizor visière *f.*
 voice voix *f.*

W

waist taille *f.*
 wait attendre

waiter garçon *m.*
 waiting room salle d'attente *f.*
 wake up se reveiller
 waken, to reveiller
 walk, to marcher
 walking marche *f.*
 wall mur *m.*
 wall clock pendule *f.*
 want, to vouloir
 war guerre *f.*
 wardrobe armoire *f.*
 warm chaud,-e
 warm, to chauffer
 warn, to prévenir
 wash, to laver
 wash basin (fixture) lavabo *m.*
 wash basin cuvette *f.*
 watch montre *f.*
 watchmaker horloger *m.*
 watch out gare à vous
 water eau *f.*
 wave onde *f.*
 wave hair, to faire onduler
 (les cheveux)
 we nous
 weak faible
 wear, to porter
 weather temps *m.*
 Wednesday mercredi *m.*
 week semaine *f.*
 weigh peser
 well! tiens!
 west ouest *m.*
 wet mouillé,-e
 what quoi, quel,-e
 wheat blé *m.*
 wheel roue *f.*
 when quand
 where où
 whereas tandis que
 which que, quel,-e
 white blanc, blanche
 who qui lequel, laquelle
 whom qui
 why pourquoi
 wicket (gate) portillon *m.*
 wide ample
 wife femme *f.*
 willingly volontiers
 win, to gagner
 window fenêtre *f.*

382 THE CORTINA METHOD

window display *étalage*
wine *vin m.*
wing *aile f.*
wish *souhaiter, désirer*
with *avec*
without *sans*
witness *témoin m.*
witty *spirituel, le*
wolf *loup m.*
woman *femme m.*
wonder, to se *demander*
wonderful *merveilleux, -euse*
wood *bois m.*
wool *laine f.*
word *mot m., parole f.*
work *ouvrage m., œuvre f.*
work, to *travailler (people)*
marcher (machines)
workshop *atelier m.*
world *monde m.*
worldly *mondain, -e*
worry *souci m.*
worse *pire, pis*
worth, to be *valoir*
worthy *digne*
wrap up, to *envelopper*
wrench *clef f.*
wrinkle, to *froisser*

wrist watch *bracelet-*
montre m.
write *écrire*
writer *écrivain m.*
writing paper *papier à*
lettres m.
written *écrit, -e*
wrong *tort m.*
wrong, to be *avoir tort,*
se tromper

Y

year *an m. année f.*
yellow *jaune*
yes *oui, si*
yesterday *hier*
yet *encore*
you *tu, vous*
young *jeune*
your *vos, votre*
yours *vôtre*
youth *jeunesse f.*

Z

zero *zéro m.*
zipper *fermeture éclair f.*